Volkswagen

Instruction manual
T-Cross



T-Cross Instruction Manual

Index

About this Handbook instructions 5

Meanings of the symbols 6

Instruction manual

Vehicle overview
- Front view 7
- Rear view 8
- Driver's door 9
- Driver's side 10
- Central console 11
- Front passenger side 12
- Symbols on the inner lining of the roof 12

Information for the driver
- Warning and control lights 13
- Combined instrument 15
- Instrument panel control 25
- Radio control and instructions 27

Security
- General guidelines 30
- Adjust the seating position 32
- Safety belts 34
- Airbag system 42
- Transport of children in the vehicle 50
- In case of emergency 59

Open and close
- Vehicle key 61
- Locking and starting system without Keyless Access" key 63
- Doors and central locking button 65
- Burglar alarm system 70
- Monitoring of the passenger compartment 70
- Tailgate 71
- Glass 73
- Panoramic sunroof 75

Steering wheel
- Adjust the position of the steering wheel 77

Seats and head restraints
- Front seat 78
- Rear seats 79
- Headrest 82
- Seat functions 83

Lighting
- Direction indicators 84
- Driving lights 85
- Interior lighting 90

Visibility
- Glass cleaners and window washers 91
- Rear-view mirrors 93
- Sun protection 96

Heating and air conditioning
- Heating, ventilating, cooling 98

Driving
- Guidance for driving 103
- Switching the engine on and off 112
- Start-Stop System 116
- Manual gearbox 118
- Automatic transmission 120
- Climb assist system 124
- Power steering 125
- Selection of the driving profile 126
- Off-road indicator 128

Driver assistance system
- Speed governor system (GRA) 130

Parking and manoeuvring
- Parking 131
- Parking brake 132
- Security guidelines for parking systems 133
- Parking aid (Park Pilot) 134
- Rear view camera 136
- Assistant Director for parking (Park Assist) 138
- Brake Assist Systems 142

Practical equipment
- Slides 146
- Beverage holder 148
- Cigarette lighter 149
- Power socket 149

Multimedia
- Subwoofer 151

COPIA

Radios
- Before first use 151
- General table of consumers of comfort 151
- Radio reception and antenna 151
- Places with special indications 152
- Security recommendations 152
- Indications for use 154
- Energy management 155
- Anti-theft code 155
- Equipment overview 156
- Basic command information 159

Connectivity
- App-Connect 162
- Apple CarPlay™ 163
- Android Auto™ 164
- Mirror Link™ 165

Composition Touch (R 340G)
- Radio operation 166
- Media 170
- Wired and wireless connections 174
- Telephone 177
- Configurations 186

Discover Media
- Radio 188
- Media 192
- Images 201
- Navigation 203
- Voice command 211
- Telephone 213
- Configurations 224

Transport
- Accommodating luggage volumes 226
- Boot 227
- roof boxes 230
- Driving with a trailer 232

Fuel
- Security guidelines for the fuel handling 237
- Fuel types and supply 238
- Engine control unit and exhaust gas emission control system exhaust 241
- Fuel quality 243

Self-help
- On-board tools 244
- Windscreen wiper blades 245
- Outdoor lighting 247
- Fuses 252
- Start-up aid 258
- Towing 260

Verification and replenishment
- In the engine compartment 263
- Fluids and resources 268
- Glasswashing water 268
- Engine oil 269
- Engine coolant 274
- Brake fluid 277
- Vehicle battery 278

Wheels and tyres
- Tyre control system 284
- Important information on wheels and tyres 286
- Wheel change 298

Maintenance
- Service 304
- Vehicle preservation 307
- Accessory, replacement of parts, repairs and modifications 316

Consumer information
- Volkswagen Warranty 322
- Additional service offers 323
- Stickers and labels 324
- Radio reception and antenna 324
- Installing the radio 325
- Volume of radio or navigation system 325
- Headphones 325
- Declaration of conformity 326
- Licence for the use of the key with remote control remote control and radios with Bluetooth connection 326

Technical data
- Notes on technical data 326
- Information on the consumption of fuel 327
- Vehicle identification data 328
- Vehicle identification number in the windscreen 329
- Air conditioning information 329
- Dimensions 330

COPIA

– Capacities 331
– Petrol engine 332
– Petrol engine 333
– TOTALFLEX engines 334

Abbreviations used 336

Alphabetical index 338

COPIA

About this Instruction Manual

This Owner's Manual is valid for all versions and models available for this vehicle. The Owner's Manual describes all equipment and models, without being identified as special equipment or model variations. In this way, equipment may be described which your vehicle does not have or which is only available in some markets. You will find the equipment for your vehicle in the sales documentation. For further information, please contact your Volkswagen dealer.

All information in these operating instructions refers to the information available at the time of going to press. Due to the continuous development of the vehicle, there may be differences between the vehicle and the information in these operating instructions. No claims can be asserted with regard to the various information, illustrations or descriptions in these operating instructions.

When selling or lending the vehicle, make sure that all on-board documentation is always in the vehicle. .

- You will find an index at the end of the handbook.
- An index of abbreviations at the end of the manual lists abbreviations and technical designations.
- Directional indications such as left, right, front and rear generally refer to the direction of travel of the vehicle, unless otherwise indicated.
- The Illustrations are for guidance and should be understood as schematic representations.
- Brief definitions are highlighted by colour and placed before some sections of this manual, and summarise the functions and use of a system or equipment. More information about the systems and equipment, as well as their characteristics, commands and system limits, can be found in the corresponding sections.
- Technical modifications to the vehicle made after this manual went to press can be found in a supplement to the on-board documentation.

Fixed components of on-board literature:

- Instruction manual
- Service Verification Brochure (for markets without a digital service plan) (*may not be available in some countries)*

Additional on-board literature components (optional):

- Supplement

COPIA

21A.5L1.TCR.60

Meanings of the symbols

Refers to a section of the text with important information and safety guidance within a chapter. This reference should always be noted.

This arrow indicates that the section continues on the next page.

This arrow indicates the end of the section.

The symbol identifies situations in which the vehicle must be stopped as quickly as possible.

® The symbol identifies a registered trademark. The absence of this symbol does not guarantee that the terms can be used freely.

→⚠ Symbols of this type refer to warnings within the same paragraph or on the
→⚠ page indicated, about possible risks of accidents and injuries and how to proceed.
→⚠ to avoid them.

→ⓘ Cross-reference, within the same section or on the page indicated, to possible material damage.

⚠ DANGER

Texts with this symbol warn of extremely dangerous situations which, if ignored, could result in death or serious injury.

⚠ WARNING

Texts with this symbol warn of dangerous situations which, if ignored, could result in death or serious injury.

⚠ ATTENTION

Texts with this symbol warn of dangerous situations which, if ignored, could result in minor or serious injury.

NOTICE

Texts with this symbol warn of dangerous situations which, if ignored, could result in damage to the vehicle.

Texts with this symbol contain recommendations on how to protect the environment.

Texts with this symbol contain additional information.

COPIA

Vehicle overview

Front view

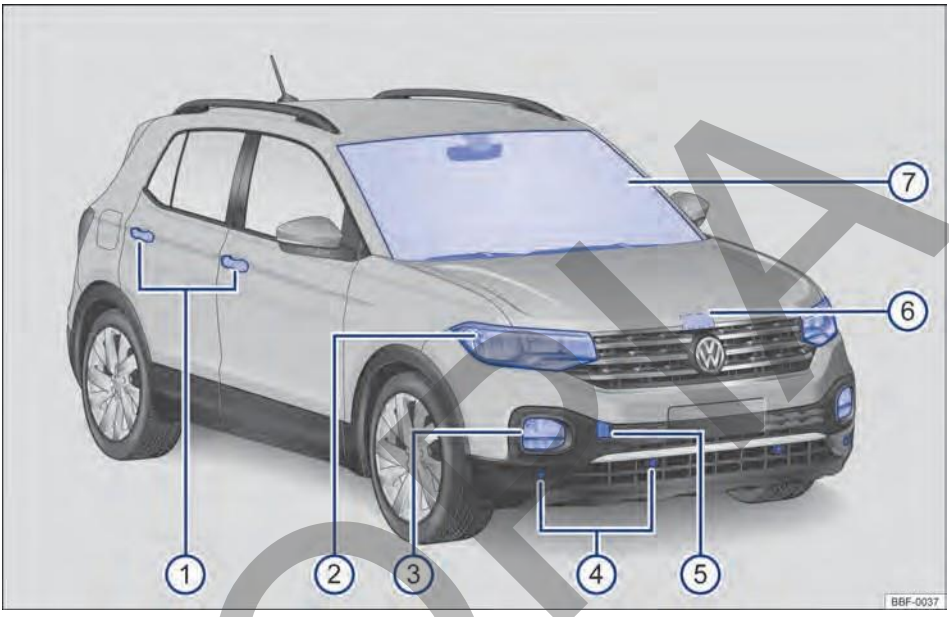


Fig. 2 Front view of the vehicle.

Legend for→ fig. 2:

① External door handles 65
② Front lighthouse 84
③ Mist lantern 85, 247
④ Front parking aid sensors 134
⑤ Front towing eye mounting behind a deck 260
⑥ Engine compartment cover release lever 266
⑦ Windscreen
– Windscreen wipers 91
– Rain and light sensor in the interior mirror area 92

COPIA

Rear view

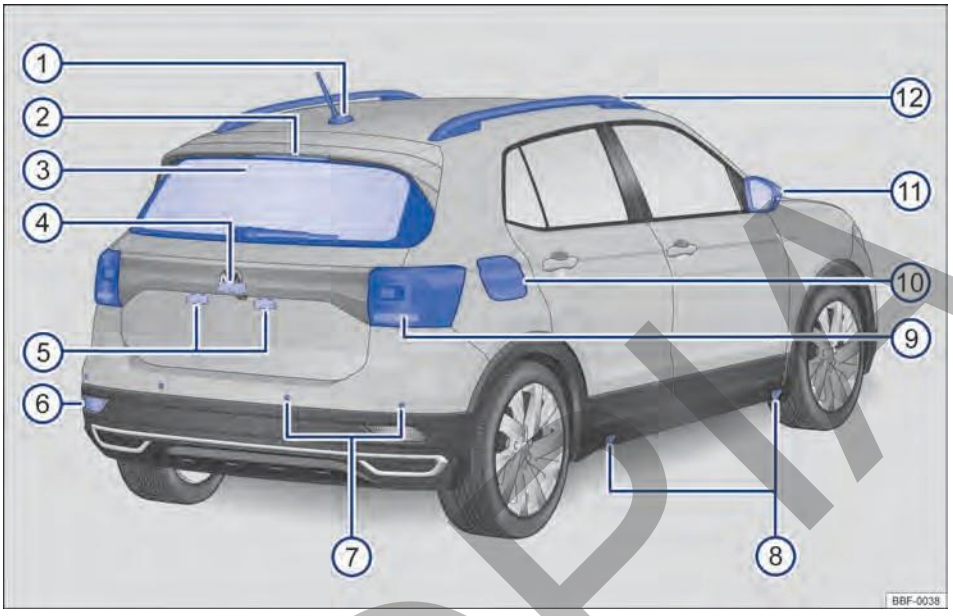


Fig. 3 Rear view of the vehicle.

Legend for→ fig. 3:

1. Roof antenna 322
2. Raised brake lantern Steady
3. rest
   - Windscreen defroster 98
   - Wiper blade cleaner 91
4. Zone for:
   - Rear cover opening 71
   - Rear view camera 136
5. Rear licence plate illumination 247
6. Fog lamp (left side only) and illumination reflector on right and left side (depending on version)
7. Rear parking aid sensors 134
8. Cat support points 302
9. Tail lamp 85, 247
10. Fuel tank porthole 240
11. Exterior mirrors 93
12. Roof rack carrier rail 230

COPY

Driver's door

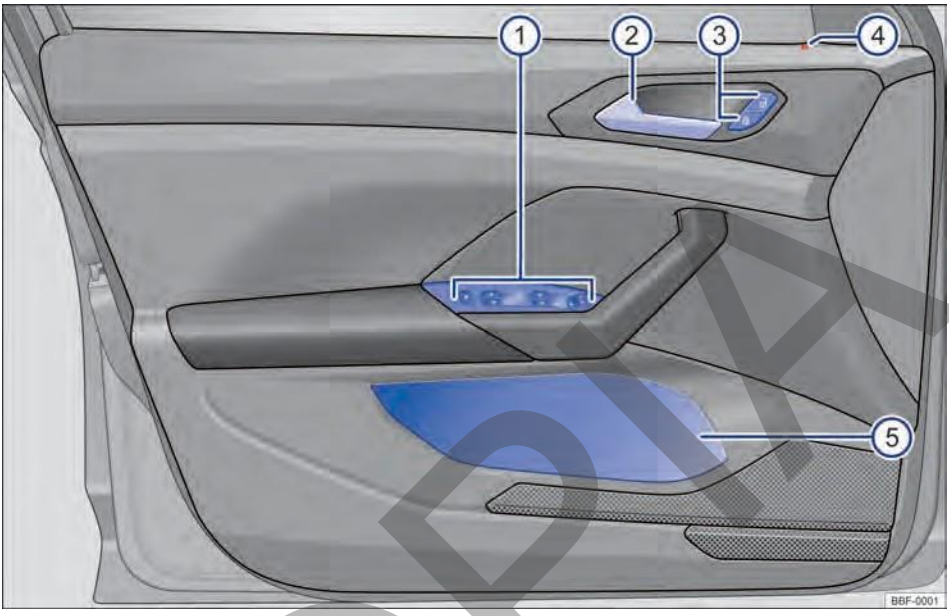


Fig. 4 Overview of the commands on the driver's door.

Legend for → fig. 4: Area

(1) for:
– Electric exterior rear-view mirror rotary switch 93
- Buttons for operating the electric windows 73

(2) Internal door handle 65

(3) Central locking button for locking and unlocking the vehicle 65

(4) Central locking control light 66

(5) Slides 146

COPIA

Driver's side

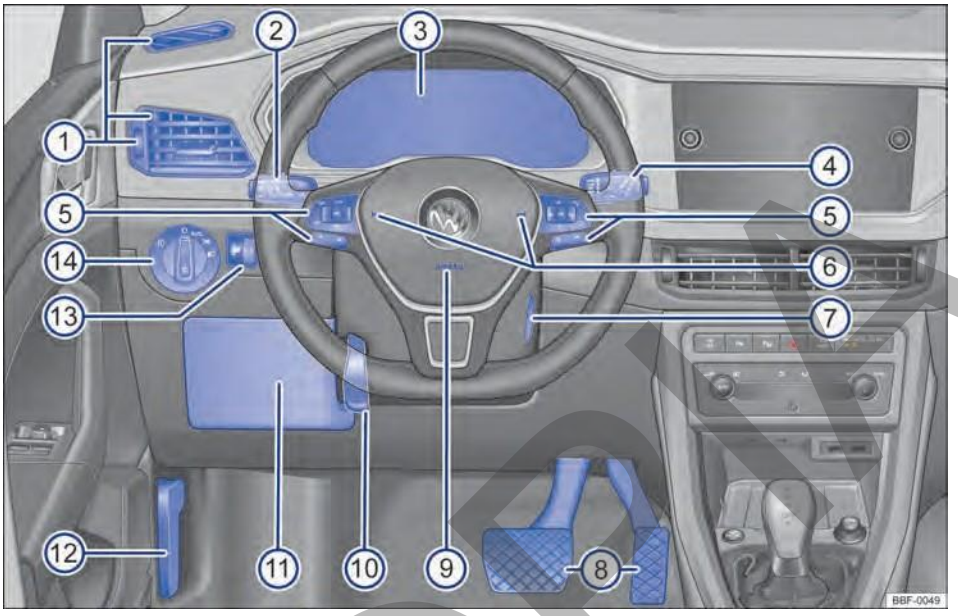


Fig. 5 Overview of the driver's side.

Legend for → fig. 5:

1 Air diffusers 98
2 Lever for direction indicator and headlamp indicators high 84
3 Combined instrument 15
– with warning and control lights 13
4 Lever for window wiper and washer 91
– with keys to operate the menus , ... 25
5 Multi-function steering wheel controls:
– Audio, navigation
– Command driver assistance systems , , , , ... 130
– Adjusting the volume ,
– Operate the menu selection , , ... 26
– Voice command activation
– Enter phone menu or answer a phone call Horn (works only
6 with engine running)
7 Ignition lock 112
8 Pedals 103
9 Driver's frontal airbag installation location 46
10 Lever for adjusting the steering column 77
11 Fuse box access cover 252
12 Handle for unlocking the engine compartment cover 266

COPY

⑬ Switch for headlamp range adjustment 89
⑭ Light switch 85

Central console

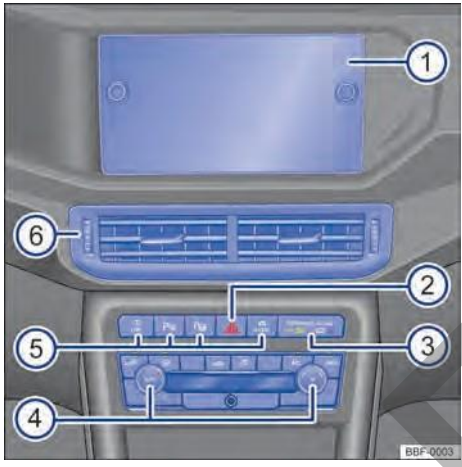


Fig. 6 General view of the upper part of the central console.

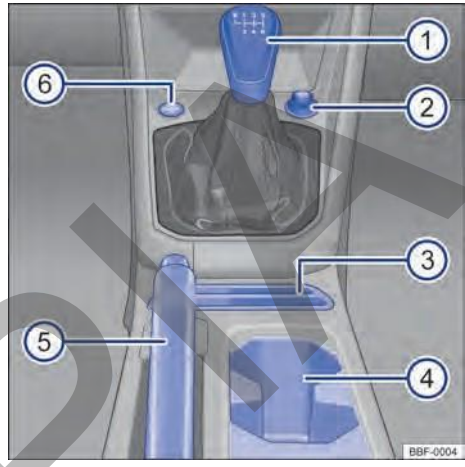


Fig. 7 Overview of the lower part of the centre console.

Legend for → fig. 6: Radius 151
① Key for switching the warning lights on and off 59
② Front passenger front airbag deactivation control light 43
③ Air conditioning or Climatronic controls 98
④ Controls for assistance systems 103
⑤ Air diffusers 98
⑥ – *Depending on the vehicle version*, there may be air diffusers for rear seat passengers.

Legend for → fig. 7: Lever
① for:
– Manual transmission 118
– Automatic transmission 120
② 12 V socket 149
③ Cardholder 146
④ Storage compartment with beverage holder in the centre console 148
⑤ Parking brake lever 132
6 Engine start button (Press & Drive) 113

COPY

Front passenger side

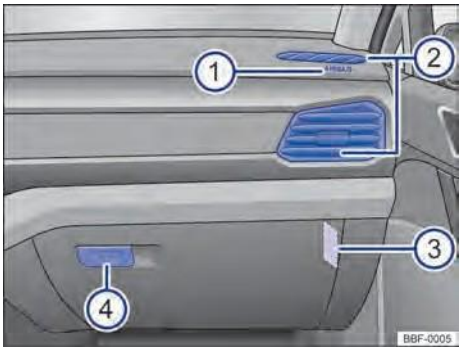


Fig. 8 Overview of the front passenger side.

Legend for → fig. 8:

①	Installation location of the front passenger frontal airbag in the instrument panel	42
②	Air diffusers	98
③	Key-operated switch to deactivate the front passenger frontal airbag of the front passenger airbag. lantero	47
◯	4 Glovebox opening lever	146

Symbols on the inner lining of the roof

Symbol	Meaning
, ' ,	Keys for internal and reading lamps → p. 84.
	Sunroof switch → p. 75.
	Sun protection curtain buttons → page 97

COPIA

Information for the driver

Warning and control lights

Warning and indicator lights indicate warnings →⚠ , malfunctions →ⓘ or specific functions. Some warning and control lights come on when the ignition is switched on, and must be switched off when the engine is running or while driving.

Depending on the version, the display of the combined instrument may show additional text messages with more detailed information or requests for information → p. 15.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, a symbol may be shown on the combined instrument display instead of a warning light.

When some warning and control lights are illuminated, acoustic warnings are also emitted.

Symbol	Meaning → ⚠
	Central warning light. Observe the additional information on the display of the combined instrument.
	Do not continue! Handbrake on. → p. 132
	Do not continue! Brake fluid level too low or brake system defective. → p. 277
	Do **not continue!** Engine coolant temperature too high or engine coolant level too low. → p. 274
	Do not continue! Engine oil pressure too low. → p. 269
	If flashing: **Do not continue!** Faulty di- rection. → p. 125
	Ignition: electromechanical steering does not work. → p. 125
	Seat belt not fitted by driver or front passenger. → p. 34
	Alternator faulty. → p. 278
	Central warning light. Observe the additional information on the display of the combined instrument.
	If it comes on: ESC faulty or apa- gned by the system. → p. 142
	If flashing: ESC or ASR activated and running. → p. 142
	Traction control (ASR) manually switched off. → p. 142
	ABS faulty or not functioning. → p. 142
	Mist lantern on. → p. 86
	The driving lights are partially or completely inoperative. → p. 247
	Deficiency in the pollutant emission control system. → p. 241
	Deficiency in electronic engine power control. → p. 241
	Reduced electromechanical steering. → p. 125
	Tyre pressure too low or faulty tyre control system. → p. 284
	Fuel tank almost empty. → p. 17
	Ignition: engine oil level too low. → p. 269

SOKA

Symbol	Meaning → ⚠
	If flashing: engine oil system faulty. → p. 269
	Airbag or front seat-belt pretensioner system defective. → p. 42
	Automatic transmission: automatic transmission failure. → p. 120
	Left or right direction indicators. → p. 84
	Warning lights switched on. → p. 59
	Emergency brake lights in operation. → p. 59
	Ignition: press the brake pedal (start the engine). → p. 120
	If flashing: the selector lever locking button is not engaged. → p. 120
	Speed governor system (GRA) engaged. → p. 130
	High beam on or blast on. → p. 84
	Active Start-Stop System → p. 116.
	The Start-Stop system is not available → page 116.
	Fuel-efficient driving → p. 19
	Service reminder or service due. → p. 24
	Charge level of the mobile phone battery. Only when activated by the factory-installed mobile phone interface → p. 151.
	Outside temperature below +4 °C. → p. 19
	Guidance for information in the on-board documentation.

⚠ WARNING

Observing warning lights and text messages is essential for the safety of the driver and passengers, avoiding possible vehicle stoppages as well as possible accidents.

- Never ignore warning lights or text messages.
- Stop the vehicle as soon as possible in a place that is safe for all passengers in the vehicle and other drivers.
- Park the vehicle at a safe distance from the runway so that no parts of the exhaust system come into contact with flammable materials, e.g. dry grass, fuel, oil, etc.
- A stationary vehicle without proper signalling poses a great risk of accident to itself and others. Always activate the warning lights and use the safety triangle to alert other vehicles.
- Before opening the engine compartment cover, switch off the engine and wait until the engine temperature has dropped sufficiently.
- The engine compartment of any vehicle is a hazardous area and can cause serious injuries → p. 263, *Safety Guidelines for Working in the Engine Compartment* → p. 264, *Safety Guidelines for Working in the Engine Compartment* → p. 264, Safety Guidelines for Working *in the Engine*

NOTICE

Always keep in mind the control lights on and text messages to avoid damage to the vehicle

SOPIA

Combined instrument

Introduction to the topic

Depending on the vehicle version, it may be equipped with a combined analogue or digital instrument (Active Info Display).

After starting the engine with the vehicle's battery fully discharged or with a battery-operated bat-
system configurations (co-ordination of the system, etc.). The settings (e.g. time, comfort settings and programs) can be deprogrammed or deleted. The settings should be tested and corrected after the vehicle's battery has been sufficiently recharged.

⚠ WARNING

Driver distraction can lead to accidents and injuries.

- Never operate the buttons of the combined instrument while driving.
- Make all settings of the display indicators of the combined instrument display and the display on the radio system only when the vehicle is stationary in order to reduce the risk of accidents and injuries.

Analogue combined instrument

Please note⚠ at the beginning of this chapter on page 15.

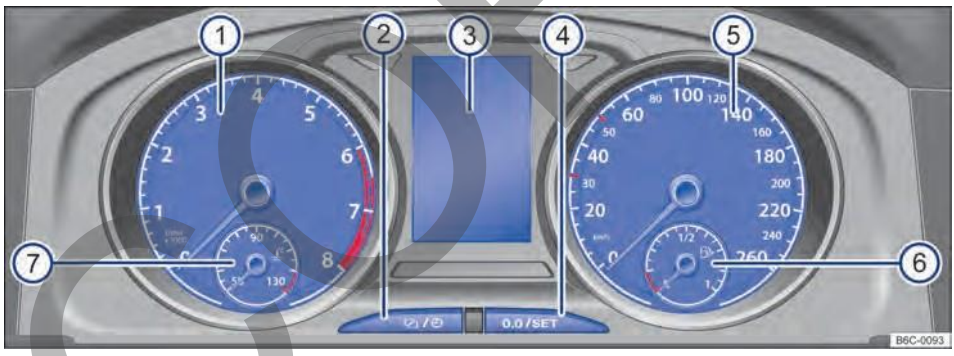


Fig. 9 Analogue combined instrument on the instrument panel.

Some of the controls and functions depicted here pertain to specific models and versions or are optional.

Explanations of the instruments and → fig. 9:

(1) **Tachometer (**revolutions x 1000 per minute of the running engine) → page 17.

(2) **Clock setting key1)** [ ] → p. 23.

(3) **Display indicators** → p. 19.

(4) **Button** for **zeroing** or **trip** odometer display.

- Press the key [ ] *for approximately* The odometer shall be reset to zero *within 2 seconds*.

(5) **Speedometer** (speedometer).

(6) **Fuel level indicator** → p. 17.

(7) **Coolant temperature indicator engine's engine** → p. 18

[1)] Depending on the vehicle version, the clock can also be set via the settings menu in the radio display.

COPIA

Digital combined instrument (Active Info Display)

Please note⚠ at the beginning of this chapter on page 15.

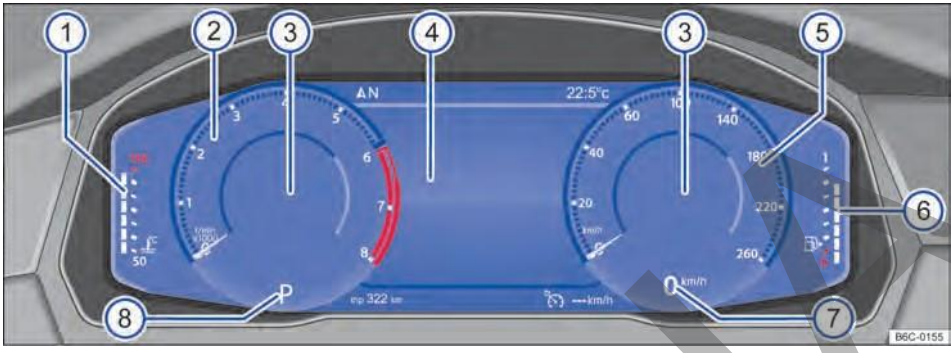


Fig. 10 Active Info Display on the instrument panel.

The Active Info Display is a digital combination instrument with a colourful, high-resolution TFT display. With the selection of different information profiles, other classic round instruments such as tachometer or speedometer can be displayed.

Depending on the vehicle version, the digital combined instrument and trip data indicator functions may not be available.

Explanations on instruments→ fig. 10:

① **Engine coolant temperature indicator** → page 18

② **Tachometer** (revolutions x 1,000 per minute of the running engine) → page 17.

③ **Indicator of the information profiles**. The content displayed varies according to the information profile selected.

④ **Display indicators** → p. 19.

⑤ **Speedometer** (speedometer). **Fuel**

⑥ **level indicator** → p. 17.

⑦ **Digital speed indicator**.

⑧ **Gear currently engaged or selector lever position** → p. 120.

Information profiles

Different subject-specific in-training profiles can be selected through the button button in the radio system, on the selection function , select Active Info Display

Depending on the selected information profile, the Active Info Display shows additional information in the centre of the displayed instruments → fig. 10 3 . The following information profiles can be selected:

– **Classic**: without additional indicators.

– **Consumption and range**: digital display of average consumption and graphic display of current consumption on the rev counter. Digital range indicator on the speedometer.

– **Efficiency**: digital display of average fuel consumption and graphical display of average fuel consumption on the tachometer.

– **Navigation**: When driving to destination *active*, remaining distance to destination and arrival time on the tachometer and arrow navigation on the speedometer. When driving to the destination *inactive*, height indicator on the tachometer and compass indicator on the speedometer.

– **Driver assistance**: graphical representation of different driver assistance systems or digital travel time display on the tachometer. Navigation by arrow or indicator of the compass in the speedometer.

COPY

Navigation map on the Active Info Display

Depending on the version, the Active Info Display can re-display a detailed map. To do this, select the **Navigation** menu item in the combined instrument → p. 25.

The navigation map is displayed in two sizes. When a larger map display is selected, the round instruments are hidden. To set the desired map size, proceed as follows:

– Press the button ▢ on the multifunction steering wheel → p. 26 to switch between map sizes.
– **Or**: press the arrow button ▢ o ▢ in the multi-function steering wheel, to select the desired map size. The selection is marked with a border.
– Confirm your selection by pressing the button ▢ on the multifunction steering wheel.

Depending on the version, the navigation is represented on a display. The navigation map can be shown on the Active Info Display or on the radio system. In the latter case, only the navigation arrows are shown on the Active Info Display.

Tachometer (rev counter)

Please note⚠ at the beginning of this chapter on page 15.

Tachometer

The beginning of the red area of the rev counter indicates the maximum possible engine revolutions for each of the gears. Before the display reaches the red line, shift to the next higher gear, move the selector lever to the **D/S** position or take your foot off the accelerator pedal.
→ⓘ.

NOTICE

- When the engine is cold, avoid very high engine speed, full throttle and high engine power.
- To avoid engine damage, the tachometer pointer (rev counter) may only remain in the red area of the scale for a short period of time.

The early engagement of a higher gear helps to save fuel and to re-engage the engine.
to reduce operating noise.

Fuel level indicator

Please note⚠ at the beginning of this chapter on page 15.



Fig. 11 On the combined analogue instrument: fuel level indicator

COPIA

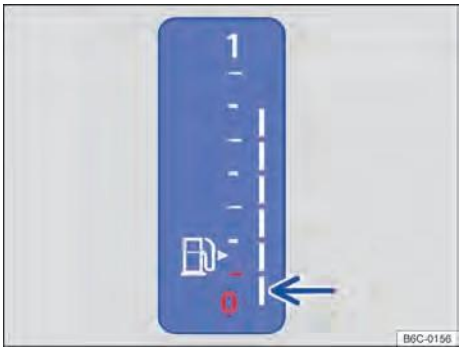


Fig. 12 On the digital combined instrument: fuel level display .

The fuel level indicator may be different depending on the vehicle model→ fig. 11 or → fig. 12.

Depósito fuel almost empty

The control lamp lights up yellow. The can-
The reserve capacity, red mark, will be consumed →⚠ .

– Reposte as soon as possible →ⓘ .

When the ignition is switched on, some warning and control lights come on quickly as a check. These go out after a few seconds.

⚠

WARNING

Driving with very low fuel levels can cause vehicle stoppages in traffic, accidents and serious injuries.

- A very low fuel level can cause irregular engine fuelling, especially on uphill or downhill journeys.
- The steering and all driver assistance and braking systems do not function when the engine stops running due to lack of fuel or irregular fuel load.
- Always refuel when the fuel level indicator is close to 1/4 to avoid fuel starvation.

NOTICE

- Always observe that the control lights are switched on.
  The vehicle must be equipped with the appropriate equipment and its descriptions
- Never drive until the fuel tank is completely empty. Irregular fuelling can cause misfiring and build-up of unburnt fuel in the exhaust system. This can damage the catalytic converter!

The small arrow next to the fuel pump symbol → fig. 11 or → fig. 12 indicates the side of the vehicle on which the fuel pump is located.
fuel tank door.

Engine coolant temperature gauge

Please note⚠ at the beginning of this chapter on page 15.

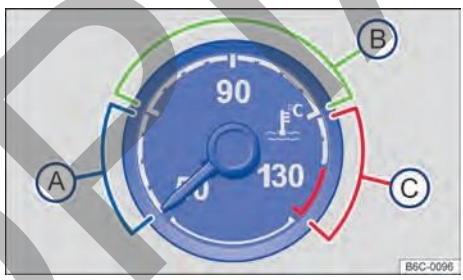
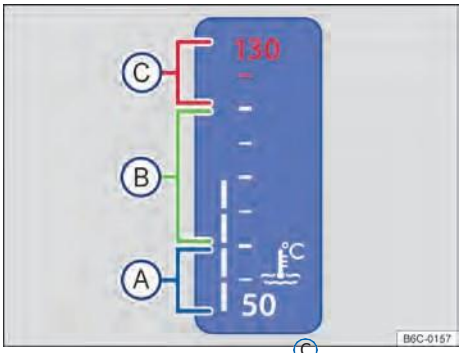


Fig. 13 Engine coolant temperature indicator on the combined analyser and engine coolant temperature indicator on the combined analyser and engine coolant temperature indicator on the combined analyser and engine coolant temperature indicator on the combined analyser.
gico: Ⓐ cold Ⓑ normal zone; Ⓒ aler-
ta. zone;



Ⓒ

Fig. 14 Engine coolant temperature indicator on the combined digital instrumentation.

Ⓐ Ⓑ
an guidan prevent to the vehicle.
d ce to damage

COPIA

such:

cold zone;

normal zone;

alert zone.

Ⓐ **Cold zone.** The engine is not yet warm at operating temperature. Avoid high engine speeds and do not subject the engine to high stresses while the engine is not yet warm.

Ⓑ **Normal zone.**

Ⓒ **Warning zone.** Engine coolant temperature too high.

and Engine coolant

The red central warning light is on.
In addition, a text message appears on the display of the combined instrument.

The engine coolant is not correct or the coolant system is faulty.

Do not continue!

– Stop the vehicle, switch off the engine and let it cool down.
– Check the engine coolant level and if the level is low, top up with engine coolant → page 275.
– If the warning light does not go out, even though the engine coolant level is co-right, there is a fault. Find a Dealer

The Volkswagen dealer or a specialised company da.

Display indicators

Please note⚠ at the beginning of this chapter on page 15.

On the display of the combined instrument: various information can be shown depending on the vehicle version:

– Doors, engine compartment lid and boot lid open.
– Warning and information notices → p. 21
– Mileage indicators
– Timetable
– Outdoor temperature
– Selector lever positions (automatic transmission) → p. 120
– Recommendation → p. 104
– Driving data display (multifunction display) and menus for various settings → page 25
– Service interval indicator → page 24
– Fuel level indicator → page 17
– Engine coolant temperature gauge → page 18
– Low-consumption driving status .

Doors, engine compartment lid and boot lid open.

After unlocking the vehicle and while driving, the display of the combined instrument panel shows open doors as well as the engine compartment or trunk lid and audible alerts. Depending on the version of the combined instrument panel, the display of the symbols may vary.

Mileage indicators

The *total odometer* records the total distance travelled by the vehicle.

The **trip** *odometer* shows the number of kilometres travelled since the odometer was last reset. The last digit indicates 100 metres.

– *Vehicles with combined analytical instrument* Press briefly the ▭ in the combined instrument → p. 15 to reset the trip odometer to 0.
– *Vehicles with digital combined instrument:* use the button on the multifunction steering wheel o , select the **Trip Data** menu, select the **trip** indicator and briefly press the key. ▢ on the multifunction steering wheel.

Outdoor temperature indicator

When the outside temperature is below +4 °C, a "snowflake symbol" appears on the outdoor temperature display (ice on the runway warning). This symbol remains illuminated until the outside temperature exceeds +6 °C →⚠.

When the vehicle is stationary or at low speeds, the displayed temperature may be higher than the actual outside temperature due to the heat released by the engine.

The measuring range is from -40 °C to +50 °C.

Selector lever positions (automatic transmission)

The position of the selector lever is indicated both on the side of the selector lever and on the instrument panel display. The position of

COPY

the **D/S** selector lever as well as with Tiptronic, the corresponding gear can be shown on the display of the combined instrument panel. → p. 120.

Walking recommendation

Depending on the vehicle version, a recommendation for selecting a fuel-saving gear may be shown in the display of the combined instrument panel during driving → page 104.

Radio

In some versions, some functions of the radio appear on the display of the combined instrument only when the ignition is switched on.

Engine codes (CDM)

Vehicles with analogue combined instrument.

– Switch on the ignition, but do not start the engine.
– Press and hold down the on the combined instrument for about fifteen seconds, so that the letters of the engine identification are displayed.

Vehicles with digital combined instrument.

– In the **Trip data** menu, select the **Autonomy** indicator on the combined instrument.
– Press and hold down the OK on the steering wheel
The multi-functional button for about five seconds, when released, the **Services** menu will appear.
→ p. 24.
– Access the menu item **Engine code**

WARNING

Even with outside temperatures above freezing, frost may form on roads and bridges.

- It is possible to have frost on the runway even if the outside temperature is higher than
+4 °C and that the "snowflake symbol" does not appear on the display.
- Never rely on the outside temperature display alone!

Trip data display (multifunction display)

Please note ⚠ at the beginning of this chapter on page 15.

The trip data display (multi-function display) shows the different consumption and consumption values.

Switching between indicators

– *Vehicles without multifunction steering wheel:* press the key of the windscreen wiper lever.
→ p. 26.
– *Vehicles with multifunction steering wheel:* Press the or key. → page 26.

Swapping between memories

With the ignition switched on and the memory displayed, press the button on the windscreen wiper lever or the button on the multi-function steering wheel.

Memory "From the start".

Display and storage of driving and consumption values collected from switching on until the ignition is switched off. In a driving interruption of more than 2 hours, the memory shall be switched off automatically.

Report "From supply".

Display and storage of collected driving and consumption values. The memory is deleted after delivery or when the vehicle is driven.

Long-term memory

The memory stores driving values up to 19 hours and 59 minutes or 99 hours and 59 minutes of driving time or 1999.9 km or 9999.9 km of distance travelled. When one of these maximum marks1) is exceeded, the memory is cleared.

Manually erase the data memory of travel

– Select the memory to be deleted.
– Press and hold down the button on the windscreen wiper lever or the button on the multi-functional steering wheel for approx. 2 seconds.

1) Depending on the version of the combined instrument.

COPIA

Select indicators

Depending on the vehicle version and the radio version, the possible trip data indications to be displayed on the dashboard and the combined instrument can be displayed in the radio system via the keypad.
the ◯ → p. 27.

Autonomy" indicator

The approximate distance in km that can still be driven with the amount of fuel in the tank, following the same driving style.

Average consumption" indicator

The average fuel consumption is displayed in km/l only after 300 metres have been driven, after the engine has been started. Up to this point parts are displayed. The current value displayed
is updated every 5 seconds.

Consumption" indicator

The indication of the current fuel consumption is shown in km/l during driving with the engine running. The current displayed value is calculated in 30-metre intervals and is updated approximately every 1 second.

Oil temperature" indicator

Depending on the vehicle version, the oil temperature on the combined instrument display may not be available.

Current engine oil temperature as digital display.

Warning at --- km/h" indicator

Valid for the combined analogue instrument.

When the recorded speed (in the range between 30 km/h and 150 km/h) is exceeded, a visual and audible warning is given.

Digital speed indicator

Current driving speed as a digital display.

Average speed" indicator

The average speed is only displayed after 300 metres driven, after the ignition has been switched on. Up to this point, parts are displayed. The current displayed value is updated every 5 seconds.

Distance" indicator

Distance travelled in km since the ignition was switched on.

Travel time" indicator

Journey time in hours (h) and minutes (min) re- after the ignition has been switched on.

Store speed for speed warning

Valid for the combined analogue instrument.

– Select the indicator **Warning at --- km/h**.
– Press the key on the windscreen wiper lever or the key on the multi-function steering wheel to store the current speed and activate the warning.
– Set the desired speed with the button on the windscreen wiper lever or with the keys ◯ ◯
o of the multifunction steering wheel within the
5 seconds. Press the o nou-
The speed is stored and the alert is activated. The speed is stored and the alert is activated.
– *To deactivate*, press the key again.
◯ o The stored speed is deleted.

Warning and information texts

Please note⚠ at the beginning of this chapter on page 15.

When starting the engine or during driving, some vehicle functions and vehicle components have been checked. Malfunctions are indicated by red or yellow warning symbols with text messages on the display of the combined instrument panel (→ p. 13) and, if necessary, also by audible warnings. Depending on the version of the combination instrument, the display of texts and symbols may vary.

In addition, the current operating modes can be called up manually. To do this, access the **Vehicle status** selection menu → page 25.

Priority 1 warning message

The red central warning light flashes or is flashing. on, partly together with additional sound alerts or symbols. **Do not continue!** Situation

COPIA

Check the faulty function and eliminate the cause. Check the faulty function and eliminate the cause. If necessary, contact a Volkswagen dealership or a specialist company.

Priority warning message 2

The yellow central warning lamp flashes or is illuminated, partly together with additional sound alerts or symbols. Faulty functions or a lack of fluids can damage or cause the vehicle to stop. Check the damaged function as soon as possible. If necessary, seek out a Volkswagen Dealer or a specialist company.

Orientación about the information in te instruction manual

Further guidance on this warning message can be found in the operating instructions.

Depending on the version some settings and displays may also occur in the radio system.

If there are several warning messages, the symbols will appear in sequence for some time. seconds. These symbols are displayed until that the cause be removed.

Fatigue recognition system (recommendation of interval)

Please note ⚠ at the beginning of this chapter on page 15.



The fatigue recognition system warns the driver when his steering behaviour indicates fatigue.

Depending on the vehicle version, the fatigue recognition system may not be available.

Operation and command

The fatigue recognition system warns the driver when his or her driving behaviour indicates fatigue.

The fatigue recognition system detects the driver's steering behaviour at the start of a drive and then carries out a fatigue assessment. This is constantly compared with the current steering behaviour. If the system recognises driver fatigue, it emits an audible warning with a "gong" and displays a visual warning with a symbol → fig. 15 on the instrument display combined with a supplementary text message. The message on the display of the combi-trument is shown for approx. 5 seconds and, if necessary, is repeated once. The last message is stored by the system.

The message on the display of the combined instrument panel can be switched off by pressing the button on the windscreen wiper lever or the button on the multi-function steering wheel → page 25. The message on the display of the combined instrument panel can be accessed again via the multi-function display → page 21.

Operating conditions

Steering behaviour is only assessed at speeds above 60 km/h up to approx. 200 km/h.

Switching on and off

Depending on the vehicle version and the radio version, the fatigue recognition system can be activated or deactivated in the radio system by pressing the button → p. 27.

Operational limitations

The fatigue recognition system has system-conditional limits. The following conditions may lead the fatigue recognition system to operate only to a limited extent or not at all way:

COPIA

– Speeds below approximately 60 km/h.
– Speeds above approximately 200 km/h.
– Winding roads.
– Roads in poor condition.
– Unfavourable weather conditions.
– If the driver is very distracted.

Under the following conditions, the fatigue recognition system is restored:

– The ignition is switched off.
– The driver's seat belt is loose and the driver's door is open.
– The vehicle is stationary for more than 15 minutes.

In the event of longer driving at low speeds (below approx. 60 km/h), the system automatically restarts the evaluation. In the event of subsequent faster driving, the steering behaviour is recalculated.

WARNING

Intelligent fatigue recognition technology cannot go beyond the physical limits and operates only within the limits of the system. The increased comfort offered by the fatigue recognition system must not encourage the driver to take risks. On longer journeys, make the intervals regular and sufficiently long.

- The responsibility for driving ability always rests with the driver.
- Never drive a vehicle if you are tired.
- The system does not recognise driver fatigue under all circumstances. Observe the information in the section "Limitations of operation" → page 22.
- In some situations, the system may incorrectly interpret an intentional steering manoeuvre as driver fatigue.
- No critical alert is issued during the so-called "micro-sleep (falling asleep in flight)"!
- Pay attention to the indications on the display of the combined instrument and follow the corresponding instructions.

The fatigue recognition system was developed for driving only.
on roads and well-surfaced roads.

In the event of a malfunction, seek out a Volkswagen dealer or a specialist company and
send to check the system.

Timetable

Please note ⚠ at the beginning of this chapter on page 15.

Adjusting the timetable via the radio system

Depending on vehicle version and radio version.

– Press the radio button .
– Tap on the function button to open the **Vehicle settings** menu.
– Select the menu item **Time and date** to set the time → p. 27.

Setting the timetable via the analogue combination instrument

– Switch on the ignition.
– To set the clock, press the at the combined instrument → p. 15 to set the hour display.
– To set the correct time, press the key briefly. The numbers will be changed in increasing order. Press and hold the key for fast forward.
– Briefly press the key and press for selec- the minute display.
– To set the correct minutes, press the button button for a few seconds. The numbers will be changed in increasing order. Keep the key key pressed for fast forward.
– Press the clock setting to conclude key again.

Setting the timetable via the digital combination instrument (Active Info Display)

– In the **Trip data** menu, select the **Autonomy** indicator.
– Press and hold down the OK on the steering wheel
The service menu appears on the display of the digital combination instrument when you release the multifunctional button for approx. five seconds. → p. 24.

COPIA

– Select the **Time** menu.
– Setting the clock with the arrow keys ▢ o ▢.

Services Menu

Please note⚠ at the beginning of this chapter on page 15.

In the **Service** menu in the digital combined instrument cluster (Active Info Display), settings can be made depending on the vehicle version.

Enter the Services menu

In the **Travel data** menu, select the indicator **Autonomy** in the combined instrument and maintenance of the instrument. Press and hold down the OK on the multi-function steering wheel After about five seconds, the **Service** menu will appear when the function is released. You can now navigate in the menu using the buttons on the multifunction steering wheel.

Restart inspection service

Select the **Service menu** and follow the instructions on the display of the combined instrument.

Restart inspection service

Select the menu **Zero inspection** and follow the instructions on the display of the digital combined instrument.

Reset driving data

Select the **Reset counter** menu and follow the instructions on the display of the digital combined instrument to reset to the desired value.

Engine codes (CDM)

Select the menu **Engine code**. The engine code is shown on the display of the digital combination instrument.

Adjusting the timetable

the **Time** menu and set the correct time with the arrow keys ▢ ▢

Copyright

Select the **Copyright** menu to access copyright information.

Service interval indicator

Please note⚠ at the beginning of this chapter on page 15.



Fig. 16 On the display of the combination instrument: example of a display for a service event that is about to expire (schematic representation).

The service interval indicators appear on the display of the combined instrument. → fig. 16 or on the radio system display.

Due to the existence of different versions of the combination units and the radio system, the indications on the display may vary.

Service Notice

When a service is about to expire, a service warning will appear when the ignition is switched on.

The mileage or time specified corresponds to the mileage or the period until the next service.

Performance of the service

When a **service is about to expire**, when the ignition is switched on, an audible signal sounds and for a short time the symbol of the fixed key may appear on the display of the combined instrument panel together with other indications → fig. 16.

Consult the service period

With the ignition switched on, the engine switched off and the vehicle stationary, it is possible to access the current service:

COPY

Query the service period in the system at radio, depending on the vehicle version and radio version.

– Press the radio button .
– Tap on the function button to open the **Vehicle settings** menu.
– Select the **Service** menu item to view service information.

Vehicles with analogue combined instrument.

– Press and hold down the on the combined instrument until **Service** appears on the display.
– Release the key and wait approximately two seconds or press the key . The current service time is shown on the display.

Vehicles with digital combined instrument (Active Info Display).

– The deadline can be viewed via the **Services** menu → page 24.

Reset the service interval indicator

If the service was not carried out at a Volkswagen Dealer, the display on the instrument panel can be reset as follows: :

Vehicles with analogue combined instrument.

– Switch off the ignition.
– Press and hold the key on the combined instrument.
– Switch the ignition back on.
– Release the key .
– Confirm the question to restart the service on the instrument panel by pressing the key. .

Vehicles with digital combined instrument (Active Info Display).

– The service interval indicator can only be reset via the **Service** menu. → p. 24.

Do not reset the service interval indicator between service intervals. This may result in incorrect indications.

The service message goes off after a few seconds with the engine running. or after pressing the o on the combined instrument, or even the OK button on the multifunction steering wheel

Instrument panel control

Introduction to the topic

Some menu items are only available when the vehicle is stationary.

In some vehicles with multifunction steering wheel, the buttons on the wiper lever are not available. The multi-function display is therefore operated exclusively via the buttons on the multi-function steering wheel.

Driver distraction while driving can cause accidents and injuries.

- Never enter the instrument panel menus while driving.

Menus in the combined instrument

Please note⚠ at the beginning of this chapter on page 25.

The coverage of the menus and information displays depends on the vehicle's electronic components and the range of the vehicle version.

Some menu items can only be accessed when the vehicle is switched on.

Travel data → p. 20 Audio → p. 151 Navigation → p. 151

Telephone → p. 151

Vehicle condition → p. 25

COPIA

Control via the windscreen wiper lever

Please note⚠ at the beginning of this chapter on page 25.



Fig. 17 For vehicles without multi-function steering ① wheel: button on the wiper lever to confirm menu items and key ② to switch between the menus.

As long as there is a warning message with priority 1, no menu can be displayed. All warning messages disappear automatically after a few seconds. In addition, some warning messages can be acknowledged and hidden by pressing .

Select menu or information display

– Switch on the ignition.
– If a message or a picture of the vehicle is displayed, press button → fig. 17 1 , if necessary, press it several times.
– To view the menus → p. 25 or to return to the menu selection from a menu or from an information display, just keep the selector → fig. 17 pressed. ②
– Press the selector up or down to scroll through the menu.
– To access the menu or the information screen that appears, press the → key fig. 17. ① and wait until the menu or information screen opens automatically after a few seconds.

Make the settings in the menu

- In the menu that appears, press the selector switch. → fig. 17 ② upwards or downwards until that the desired menu item is selected.
- Press the → key fig. 17 ① to take over the desired change. A "tick" identifies the activation of the function or system.

Back to main menu

To exit the menu, select the **Back** item in the menu.

Control via multifunction steering wheel

Please note⚠ at the beginning of this chapter. See the title on page 25.



Fig. 18 Right side of the multi-function steering wheel: buttons for operating the menus and information displays of the combined instrument.

As long as there is a warning message with priority 1, no menu can be displayed. All warning messages disappear automatically after a few seconds. In addition, some warning messagesacknowledged and hidden using the OK butt ononmultifunction steering wheel.

Select menu or information display

– Switch on the ignition.
– If a message or a drawing of the vehicle is displayed Press the key OK → fig. 18, if necessary. If necessary, press it several times.

COPIA

- To display a menu and to navigate through the menu, press the ▢ o ▢ → fig. 18.
- To access the menu or information screen, press the system key. The information that appears, press the key (OK).
  → fig. 18 or wait until the menu or the information panel opens by itself after a few seconds.

Navigate in the menu

- In the menu that appears, press the arrow keys ▢ or ▢ → fig. 18, until the desired menu item is selected.

Back to main menu

Press the key ▢ select the menu item **Back**.

Control and instructions on radio

Introduction to the topic

The radio brings together important vehicle systems in a central control unit, e.g. the configuration menu, the radio function or the navigation system.

Basic command information

The following text excerpt contains information relevant to the configuration of the **vehicle settings** menu. The basic information on the radio system control as well as the warning and safety instructions to be observed are described on → page 151.

System configuration and display of the vehicle information

After pressing the system key of the radio ▢ information can be displayed or settings can be adjusted by touching the corresponding function button. For example, by touching the select function button in ▢ the **Vehicle Status** menu, the current status of the systems can be queried or the system error can be displayed.

– Vehicle settings → p. 27.
– Think Blue training. → p. 107.
– Selection of the radio station.
– Active media.
– Condition of the vehicle.
– Travel information.
– Comfort element.

⚠

Driver distraction can lead to accidents and injuries. The control of the radio system can distract you from what is happening in traffic.

- Always drive responsibly and pay the utmost attention to traffic.

ℹ After starting the engine with the vehicle's 12 V battery fully discharged or
With a changed battery, system settings (such as time, date, comfort settings and programming) may be dis- played or erased. Check and correct the settings after the vehicle's battery has been replaced.
12 V has been sufficiently recharged.

Vehicle settings menu

Please note ⚠ at the beginning of this chapter on page 27.

Access the Vehicle Settings menu

– Switch on the ignition.
– If necessary, turn on the radio system.
– Press the radio button . ▢
– Touch the function button in ▢ to open the the **Vehicle settings** menu.
– In the **Vehicle settings** menu to access other menus or to configure menu items, touch the corresponding function areas.

COPIA

If the checkbox on the function button is activated , the corresponding function is switched on.

Changes in the configuration menus are automatically assumed immediately after insertion.

Touching the ☐ function button returns to the previous menu.

Menu overview

The following menu overview shows an example of the menu configuration of the radio system. The coverage of the menus and information displays depends on the vehicle's electronic components and the range of the vehicle version.

Some menus and functions are not available in all countries for all vehicles.

Menu	Submenu	Configuration possibilities
ESC system:	-	Activate or deactivate ASR
Tyres	**Tyre Control Ind.**	Save tyre pressures **SET**
	Winter tyres	Enable or disable speed warning Set speed warning value
Light	**Light assistance**	– Dynamic directional headlamp – Automatic running light (in rainy weather) – Comfort flasher
	Vehicle interior lighting	– Instrument and key illumination – Front ambient light – Footwell light
	Coming / Leaving home" function	– Duration of the Coming home function – Duration of the Leaving home function
Driver assistance	**Fatigue detection**	Activate or deactivate the fatigue recognition system.
Parking and manoeuvring	**Park Pilot**	Activate or deactivate automatic activation of parking assistance – Front and rear volume – Front and rear sound – Audio dropout
	Manoeuvring brake function	Activate or deactivate
Mirror and cleaner	**Mirrors**	– Lowering the exterior rear-view mirror in reverse gear – Rebolt the fastening clamp
	Window cleaner	– Automatic windscreen wipers in the rain – Reversing window wiper
Open and close	**Operation of the windows**	Setting of the comfort opening of the windows Activate or deactivate automatic locking of the windows when locking the vehicle
	Central locking	Door unlocking configuration – Activate or deactivate automatic locking – Activate or deactivate audible confirmation for central locking – Enable or disable vehicle interior monitoring
Combined instrument	**Active Info Display**	Configurations

COPIA

Menu	Submenu	Configuration possibilities
	Multi-function indicator.	– Momentary consumption – Average consumption – Travel time – Tour – Average speed – Comfort item – Eco Suggestions – Digital speed indication – Speed alert – Oil temperature – Redefine data "From start-up". – Redefine "Long term" data – Reset counter in the combined instrument
Time and date	-	– Reference source (manual, GPS) – Time – Automatically set daylight saving time – Time zone – Time format (12h, 24h) – Date – Date format
Units	-	– Distance – Speed – Temperature – Volumes – Fuel consumption – Pressure
Service	-	– Vehicle identification number – Deadline for the next inspection – Deadline for next oil change service
Factory configurations	-	– Redefine all settings – Light – Driver assistance – Parking and manoeuvring – Mirror and cleaner – Open and close – Combined instrument

COPIA

Security

General guidelines

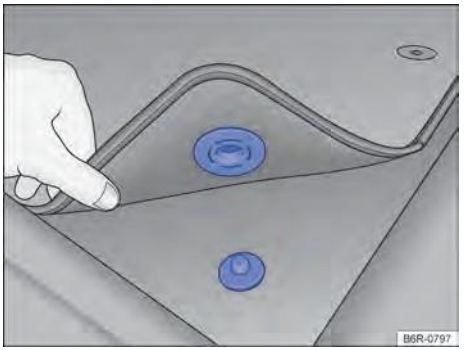


Fig. 19 Driver's side front carpet with fastening to the carpet bolt.

Travel preparations and driving safety

The following points must be observed before and during driving to ensure the safety of the driver, all passengers and other drivers →⚠ :

Check that the lighting system and direction indicators are working properly.

Check the tyre pressure (→ page 290) and fuel level (→ page 15).

Provide perfect visibility through all windows.

The air supply to the engine must not be impeded and the engine must not be covered with covers or insulating materials→ ⚠in *Safety guidelines for working in the engine compartment* on p. 265.

Secure all luggage securely in the luggage compartments, in the luggage compartment and, if necessary, in the roof → page 226.

The activation of the pedals must be free at all times.

Protect children in the vehicle with an age-appropriate restraint system → p. 50.

Adjust the front seats, head restraints and rearview mirrors correctly for your height → page 32.

Wear suitable footwear that provides good support for pedal operation.

Position the carpet in the driver's side footwell so that it does not obstruct the pedal area. Depending on the vehicle version, the floor mat on the driver's side may be attached to the carpet pin → Fig. 19.

Adopt the correct seating position before and while driving. This also applies to all passengers → p. 32.

Adjust the seat belt correctly before driving and do not change the belt adjustment while driving. This also applies to all passengers → page 34.

Do not carry more passengers than the number of seats and safety belts available.

Never drive with impaired driving ability due to the influence of medication, alcohol or drugs, among other substances capable of influencing the level of perception and reaction.

Do not be distracted from traffic, e.g. by adjusting or accessing menus on the dashboard, with passengers or talking on the phone.

Always adapt your speed and driving style to the visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions, respecting the speed limits on the road where you are driving.

Observe traffic rules and posted speeds.

On long journeys, take regular breaks and do not exceed the 2-hour limit.

Loading animals into the vehicle with an approved restraint system suitable for its weight and size.

COPIA

Driving outdoors

Some countries have special safety standards and emission-relevant regulations that may differ from the structural condition of the vehicle. Volkswagen recommends that before embarking on an international journey, you should ask your Volkswagen Dealer about the legal regulations and the following issues in the country of destination:

Does the vehicle have to be technically prepared for the trip abroad, e.g. masking or converting the headlight?

Are the necessary tools, diagnostic equipment and spare parts available for maintenance and repair services?

Is there a Volkswagen Dealer in the country of destination?

Are unleaded petrol or other metal additives (e.g. manganese) with satisfactory octane available?

Recommended engine oil (→ p. 269) and other fluids according to Volkswagen specifications are available in the country of destination?

Are special tyres required for driving in the country of destination?

Controls on supply

Never carry out work on the engine or engine compartment without knowledge of the necessary actions and safety precautions, as well as the appropriate resources, fluids and tools available → p. 263! In this case, have the work carried out by a Volkswagen dealer or a specialised company. Check the following points regularly, preferably when loading:

Water level in the window washer → p. 268

Engine oil level → page 269

Engine coolant level → p. 274

Brake fluid level → p. 277

Tyre pressure → page 290

Vehicle lighting, necessary for traffic safety:

- Direction indicators
- Position light, low-beam headlamp and high-beam headlamp
- Rear torch
- Brake light
- Haze lantern
- Licence plate light

Information on changing light bulbs → p. 247.

DANGER

Observe the important safety instructions regarding the front passenger frontal airbag → p. 52, *Installation and use of child seats in the vehicle*.

WARNING

Driving under the influence of alcohol, drugs, medicines and/or narcotics can lead to serious accidents and fatal injuries.

- Alcohol, drugs, medicines and/or narcotics can significantly impair perception, reaction times and driving safety, which can lead to loss of control of the vehicle.

WARNING

Always observe current traffic rules and speed limits and drive in a precautionary manner. Correct assessment of the driving situation can make the difference between reaching the journey destination safely and having an accident with serious injuries.

NOTICE

Volkswagen accepts no liability for damage caused to the vehicle as a result of poor fuel quality, insufficient or incorrect maintenance and the use of non-original parts.

Regular in-vehicle maintenance services are not only for the preservation of the vehicle, but also to ensure that the vehicle is in good condition.

They also contribute to the vehicle's operational and traffic safety. For this reason, maintenance services should always be carried out in accordance with Volkswagen's specifications. Under adverse conditions, it may be necessary to perform certain services before the next scheduled maintenance is due. Further information on adverse conditions can be found on → p. 304 and should be read beforehand. For further information,
Please ask a Volkswagen Dealer.

COPIA

Adjust the seating position

Introduction to the topic

Number of seats

The vehicle has a total of **5** seats: 2 front seats and 3 rear seats. Each seat is equipped with a seat belt.

⚠

Incorrect seating position in the vehicle can increase the risk of serious or fatal injuries in sudden steering and braking manoeuvres, in a collision or accident and in the deployment of airbags.

- Before setting off, all occupants should adopt a correct seating posture and maintain this posture for the entire journey. This also applies to the use of seat belts.
- Never transport more persons than the number of seats with seat belts available in the vehicle.
- Always protect children in the vehicle with an approved restraint system suitable for their height and weight → p. 50, *Transporting children in the vehicle*, → p. 42, *Airbag system*.
- Always keep your feet in the footwell when driving. Never place your feet, for example, on the seat or on the instrument panel and never keep them facing away from the vehicle. Otherwise, the airbag and seat belt may fail to protect you, increasing the risk of injury in an accident.

Danger of incorrect seating position

Please note⚠ at the beginning of this chapter on page 32.

When seat-belts are not worn or are worn incorrectly, the risk of serious or fatal injury increases. Seat-belts can only do their job if they are worn properly.
ideal protective effect with the correct position of the belt strap. Sit in a sitting posture

The consequences can be serious or even fatal injuries. The consequences can be serious or even fatal injuries. The risk of serious or fatal injury is increased primarily when an airbag is deployed and impacts the occupant who is in the wrong seating position. The driver is responsible for all occupants and especially for children in the vehicle.

The following list contains examples of seating positions which may be hazardous to all occupants.

Whenever the vehicle is in motion:

- Never stand in the vehicle.
- Never stand on the seats.
- Never kneel on the seats.
- Never tilt the seat back too far back.
- Never lean on the instrument panel.
- Never lie down in the back seat.
- Never sit only on the front edge of the seat.
- Never sit leaning to one side.
- Never lean away from the vehicle.
- Never put your feet out of the vehicle.
- Never place your feet on the instrument panel.
- Never place your feet on the seat padding or on the seat backrest.
- Never ride in the footwell.
- Never ride in the seat without a seat belt.
- Never remain in the luggage compartment.

⚠ WARNING

Incorrect vehicle posture increases the risk of serious or fatal injuries in the event of accidents or sudden abrupt and frequent manoeuvres.

- All vehicle occupants must always maintain the correct seating position and have their seat belts properly fastened while driving.
- Due to incorrect seating position, or non-use of seat belts, or too close to the airbag, occupants are exposed to injury hazards.

COPIA

fatal, especially when the airbags deploy and impact an occupant who has adopted an incorrect seating position.

Correct sitting posture

Please note ⚠ at the beginning of this chapter on page 32.

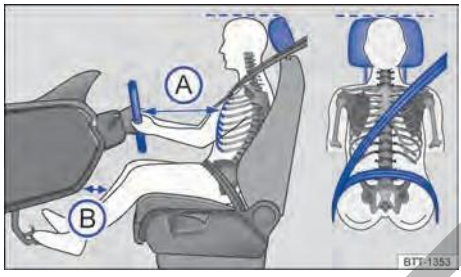


Fig. 20 Correct distance of the driver from the steering wheel, correct position of the seat belt webbing and correct adjustment of the head restraint.

The correct seating positions for the driver and passengers are given below.

Persons who are unable to sit in the correct position due to their physical constitution should contact a specialised company for information on special mounting options. Only with the correct seating position can the seat belts and airbags be ideally protected. Volkswagen recommends the Volkswagen Dealers for this.

For your own safety and to reduce injuries in the event of a sudden braking manoeuvre or accident, Volkswagen recommends the following seating positions:

For the driver it works:

– Place the backrest of the seat in an upright position, so that the back rests fully on it.
– Adjust the seat so that the distance between the steering wheel and the thorax is at least 25 cm → Fig. 20 Ⓐ and that the driver can hold the handwheel on the outer rim with the two hands and arms slightly bent.
– The adjusted steering wheel should always point in the direction of the chest and never towards the face.
– Adjust the driver's seat longitudinally so that the pedals can be operated with the legs slightly bent and the distance from the knee area to the instrument panel is at least 10 cm.
→ fig. 20 Ⓑ.
– Adjust the height of the driver's seat so that it reaches the highest point of the steering wheel.
– Always leave both feet in the footrest area to maintain control of the vehicle at all times.
– Correctly fasten the seat belts → page 34.

For the front passenger it works:

– Place the backrest of the seat in an upright position, so that the back rests fully on it.
– Move the front passenger seat as far back as possible so that the airbag achieves its full protection in the event of a deployment.
– Keep both feet in the footrest area when driving.
– Correctly fasten the seat belts → page 34.

For occupants in the rear of the vehicle this applies:

– Adjust the head restraint so that its upper edge is preferably on the same line as the top of the head.
→ fig. 20 - but not below eye level. Position the back of the head as close as possible to the head restraint.
– In the case of short persons, push the head restraint down as far as it will go, even if the head is below the upper edge of the head restraint.
– In the case of tall persons, push the head restraint upwards as far as it will go.
– Keep both feet in the footrest area when driving.
– Adjust and position the seat belts correctly → page 34.

COPIA

Safety belts

Introduction to the topic

Check the condition of all seat belts regularly. In the event of faults in the seat belt webbing, connections, automatic rewinder or seat belt cassette, the seat belt must be replaced immediately by a Volkswagen Dealer →⚠ . Specialist companies must use the correct replacement parts that are compatible with the vehicle, version and model year. Volkswagen recommends Volkswagen Dealers for this.

⚠ WARNING

Unfastened or incorrectly fastened seat-belts pose a risk of serious or fatal injury. Ideal seat-belt protection is only obtained when seat-belts are correctly positioned and used.

- Seat-belts are the most efficient means of reducing the risk of serious and fatal injuries in the event of an accident. For the protection of the driver and all vehicle occupants, seat-belts should always be securely fastened when the vehicle is in motion.
- All vehicle occupants must always ensure that they are in the correct seating position, that the seatbelt is correctly fitted before the journey and that the seatbelt remains in place for the duration of the journey. This applies to all passengers in all vehicle traffic conditions.
- Protect children in the vehicle while driving with an age-appropriate restraint system and correctly fitted seat belts → p. 50, *Transporting children in the vehicle*.
- Only drive the vehicle when all passengers are wearing their seat belts correctly.
- The locking tab of the safety belt must only be inserted into the seat belt buckle of the seat concerned and must be firmly fixed. The use of a seat belt buckle which does not belong to the respective seat reduces protection and can cause serious injury.
- Never allow foreign objects or liquids to enter the seat belt latches. This may limit the functionality and locking of the seat belt locks.
- Never pull on the seat belt while driving the vehicle.
- Always wear only one safety belt per person.
- Never carry children or infants on the bar.
- Do not travel in loose fitting clothing, e.g. a blazer, as this will restrict the correct seating and functionality of the seat belt.

⚠

Damaged seat belts are a major hazard and can cause serious or fatal injuries.

- Never damage the seat belt by pressing it against the door or seat mechanism.
- If the seat belt webbing or other belt parts are damaged, the seat belts may break in an accident or sudden braking manoeuvre.
- Replace damaged seat belts immediately with new seat belts at a Volkswagen Dealer. Seat belts that were used during an accident and have been stretched or the pretensioner has been triggered for this reason must be replaced at a Volkswagen Dealer. Replacement may be necessary even if there is no obvious damage. In addition, the seat belt anchorages must be checked.
- Never attempt to repair, modify or remove the seat belts yourself. Repairs to the seat belts, the automatic belt winder and the belt attachment parts may only be carried out by a Volkswagen dealer.

COPIA

Warning light

Please note⚠ at the beginning of this chapter on page 34.



Fig. 21 Warning light on the display of the combined instrument.

If the seat belts are not fitted prior to driving and at speeds above approx. 25 km/h or when the seat belts are removed while driving, an audible warning is emitted for a few seconds. In addition, the warning light flashes .

The warning light only goes out when, with the ignition on, the driver and front passenger are wearing their seat belts.

⚠

WARNING

Unfastened or incorrectly fastened seat-belts pose a risk of serious or fatal injury. Ideal seat-belt protection is obtained only when seat-belts are used correctly.

Head-on collisions and the laws of physics

Please note⚠ at the beginning of this chapter on page 34.

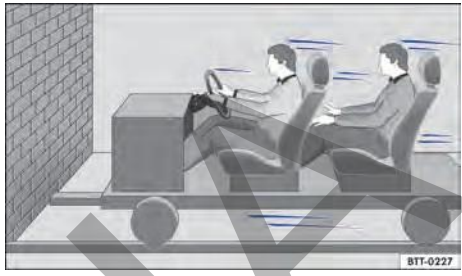


Fig. 22 A vehicle with occupants without seat-belts is on its way to crash into a wall.

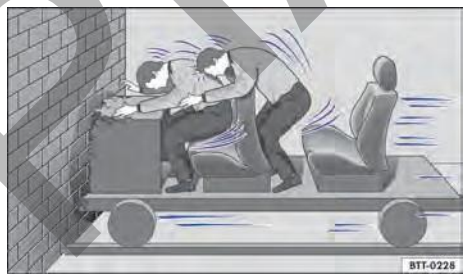


Fig. 23 A vehicle with the occupants of the vehicle without seat belts crashes into the wall.

The physical principle of a head-on collision can be easily explained. As soon as the vehicle is in motion → fig. 22, an energy of motion acts on both the vehicle and its occupants. This energy is called "kinetic energy".

The higher the speed and weight of the vehicle, the more energy must be damped in the event of an accident.

The speed of the vehicle is therefore the most significant factor. When, for example, the speed doubles from 25 km/h to approximately 50 km/h, the kinetic energy quadruples!

The intensity of the "kinetic energy" depends largely on the speed and weight of the vehicle and its occupants. The higher the speed and weight, the more energy must be dissipated in the event of a crash.
an accident.

COPY

Therefore, vehicle occupants who do not wear their seat-belts are not 'locked' into their vehicle. Consequently, these people will continue to move at the same speed as the vehicle before the impact, until they stop! If the vehicle occupants are not wearing seat-belts in our example, the total kinetic energy of the vehicle occupants, in the event of a collision, is only dissipated by the impact against the wall → fig. 23.

At a speed of approximately 50 km/h in an accident, forces act on the body that can easily exceed one tonne (1,000 kg). The forces acting on the body increase even more at higher speeds.

This example applies not only to head-on collisions, but also to all types of accidents and collisions

What happens to the occupants of vehicle without a seat belt?

Please note⚠ at the beginning of this chapter on page 34.



Fig. 24 Unbelted driver is thrown forward.



Fig. 25 The unbelted rear seat passenger is thrown forward over the belted driver.

Many people believe that they can stop their own body with their hands in a le- ve accident. This is not possible!

Even at low impact speeds, the body is subjected to forces that can no longer be absorbed by the arms and hands. In a frontal collision, unbelted vehicle occupants are thrown forward and crash uncontrollably into parts of the vehicle interior, e.g. the steering wheel, instrument panel and windscreen → Fig. 24.

The airbag system is not a substitute for a seat belt. Activation of the airbags provides additional protection only.
Airbags are not deployed in all types of crashes. Even if the vehicle is equipped with an airbag system, all vehicle occupants, including the driver, should wear seat-belts throughout the journey. In this way, the risk of serious or fatal injury in the event of an accident is reduced, regardless of whether or not an airbag is fitted.

An airbag is deployed only once. For the best possible protection, the seat belts must always be correctly positioned to ensure protection even without airbag deployment. Unbelted occupants can be thrown out of the vehicle and thus suffer even more serious or fatal injuries.

It is also essential that rear seat occupants of the vehicle wear their seat belts correctly, as

COPIA

The seat belts are thrown uncontrolled into the vehicle interior in the event of an accident. A passenger in the rear seat without a seat belt endangers the safety of the driver, passengers and other occupants of the vehicle.
→ fig. 25.

Seat belts protect

Please note⚠ at the beginning of this chapter on page 34.



Fig. 26 Driver protected by correctly positioned seat-belt during sudden braking manoeuvre.

Correctly fitted seat-belts can make a big difference. Correctly positioned seat-belts keep vehicle occupants in the correct position in the seat, and greatly reduce the action of kinetic energy in the event of an accident. Seat belts also help to prevent uncontrolled movements that could result in serious injury. In addition, correctly positioned seat belts reduce the danger of being thrown out of the vehicle → fig. 26.

Vehicle occupants with properly fitted seat-belts benefit greatly from the fact that they absorb kinetic energy. The structure of the vehicle front end and other passive safety features of the vehicle, such as the airbag system, also contribute to reducing the action of kinetic energy. In this way, the resulting energy is reduced, reducing the risk of injury.

The examples illustrated describe frontal crashes. Correctly fitted seat-belts also greatly reduce the risk of injury in all other types of crashes. For this reason, seat-belts should be worn before driving, even if the intention is just to "drive around the block". Check that all passengers are wearing their seat-belts correctly.

Accident statistics have shown that the correct use of seat belts considerably reduces the risk of injury and increases the chance of survival in a serious accident. In addition, correctly fitted seat belts ensure the ideal functioning of the activated airbags in the event of an accident. For this reason, seat-belt wearing is the law in most countries.

Even if the vehicle is equipped with air bags, the seat belts must still be fitted. The front airbags, for example, are only triggered in some frontal crashes. The front airbags do not deploy in minor frontal collisions, side collisions, minor rear collisions, rollovers and in any accident in which the airbag trigger value in the control unit does not reach the minimum limit.

For this reason, always wear seat belts and make sure that all passengers in the vehicle are wearing their seat belts.
correctly before starting the march!

Seat belt management

Please note⚠ at the beginning of this chapter on page 34.

Checklist

Seat belt operation →⚠ :

Regularly check the condition of all seat belts.

Keep seat belts clean.

Keep foreign objects and liquids away from the belt webbing, the locking tab and the seat belt latch at all times.
rre of the belt.

COPIA

Checklist (continued)

Do not press on or damage the seat belt and the belt locking tab (e.g. when closing the door).

Never dismantle, alter or repair the safety belt and belt attachments .

Always wear the seat belt correctly before every journey and keep it fastened while driving.

Twisted safety belt

If a seat belt cannot be easily re-wound, it may be twisted inside the side trim if the seat belt has been wound up too quickly. In this case:

– Pull the seat belt all the way to out through the locking tab, slowly and carefully.

– Remove the twist of the safety belt and slowly lead it back, with the ma- not.

Even if the safety belt twist cannot be eliminated, the safety belt must still be worn. In this case, the twist must not be located in an area of the seat belt that lies directly on the body! Contact a Volkswagen Dealer as soon as possible to have the twist removed.

WARNING

Incorrect use of seat belts increases the risk of serious or fatal injury.

- Regularly check that the safety belts and integral parts are in perfect condition.
- Keep seat belts clean.
- Do not allow the safety belt webbing to be pressed, damaged or to come into contact with sharp surfaces.
- Keep the seat belt buckle and the latch of the seat belt locking tab free of foreign objects and liquids at all times.

Fitting or removing seat belts

Please note⚠ at the beginning of this chapter on page 34.

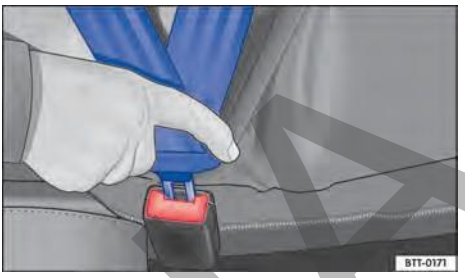


Fig. 27 Insert the locking tab of the safety belt into the belt buckle.



Fig. 28 Release the seat belt catch tab from the seat belt buckle.

Correctly fitted seat belts keep the occupants in a condition of maximum protection in free-floating manoeuvres or accidents →⚠ .

Fitting seat belts

Wear seat belts before every journey.

– Always adjust the front seats and head restraint correctly → page 32.

– Lock the rear seat backrest in the correct position →⚠ .

– Gently pull the belt webbing through its locking tab, across the chest and over the pelvic area. At the same time, **do not** twist the safety belt webbing →⚠.

COPY

– Insert the belt tongue firmly into the seat belt buckle of the seat → fig. 27.
– Perform a pull test to verify secure locking of the seat belt tongue.

Removing the seat belt

Only remove the seat belt when the vehicle is stationary →⚠ .

– Press the red button on the seat belt buckle → fig. 28. The locking tab of the seat belt slides out.
– Pull the belt along the tongue with your hand so that the belt webbing winds up more easily, the belt does not twist and the lining is not damaged.

⚠

Incorrect positioning of the seat belt webbing can cause serious or fatal injuries in the event of an accident.

- Ideal seat-belt protection is only achieved when the seat-back is in a suitable position and the seat-belt is correctly positioned according to the height of the occupant.
- Removing seat belts while driving can cause serious or fatal injuries in the event of accidents or braking manoeuvres!

Position of the belt webbing

Please note⚠ at the beginning of this chapter on page 34.

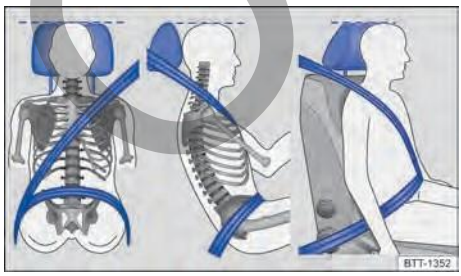


Fig. 29 Correct position of the belt webbing and correct adjustment of the head restraint.



Fig. 30 Correct position of the belt webbing for pregnant women.

Seat belts only provide ideal protection in an accident and reduce the risk of serious or fatal injury with the correct position of the belt webbing. In addition, correct positioning of the seat belt keeps the vehicle occupant in a position of maximum protection in the event of an airbag deployment. Therefore, wear the seat belt and observe the correct position of the belt webbing → Fig. 29.

Incorrect seat position can cause serious or fatal injuries → p. 32, *Adjust the seat position*.

Correct position of the seat belt webbing

– The upper strap of the safety belt must always be worn over the shoulder and never over the neck, over the arm, under the arm or behind the back.
– The lap belt lap belt should always be worn across the pelvic area and never over the abdomen.
– Always keep the seat belt flat and without the webbing twisted across the body. If necessary, stretch the safety belt webbing slightly→ fig. 29.

In the case of **pregnant women**, the seat belt should be worn over the chest and as low as possible in the pelvic area, so that there is no abdominal pressure, throughout the pregnancy. → fig. 30.

COPIA

Adapt the position of the seat belt webbing to the height.

The position of the safety-belt webbing can be adjusted as follows:

– Seat belt height adjustment for the front seats → page 40.
– Front seat with height adjustment → p. 78.

⚠

Incorrect positioning of the seat belt webbing can cause serious injury in the event of an accident or sudden braking or steering manoeuvres.

- Ideal seat-belt protection is only achieved when the seat-back is in the correct position and the seat-belt is correctly positioned.
- The upper strap of the seat belt should be across the centre of the shoulder and never under the arm or over the neck.
- The safety belt must be flat and without the belt twisted across the upper part of the body.
- The lap belt lap belt must always be worn across the pelvic area and never across the abdomen. The safety belt must lie flat and not be twisted across the pelvic area. If necessary, stretch the lap belt slightly.
- The lap strap of the safety belt should pass as low as possible in the pelvic area of pregnant women, around the "round" belly.
- Do not twist the seat belt webbing when fitting the seat belt.
- Never hold the seat belt away from the body by hand.
- Do not pass the seat belt webbing over solid or fragile objects, e.g. glasses, pens or keys.
- Never alter the position of the safety belt webbing by means of hooks, retaining eyelets or similar.

People who do not get the position ideal seat belt webbing

The Volkswagen dealer or a Volkswagen representative will be happy to provide you with more information.

The company's specialised company for special installations in order to achieve the ideal protection of seat belts and airbags in the event of an accident.
bags.

Seat belt height adjustment

Please note⚠ at the beginning of this chapter on page 34.

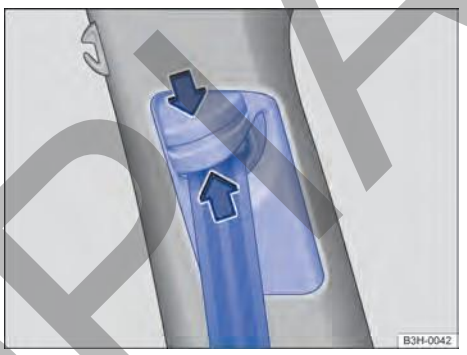


Fig. 31 By the front seats: seat belt height adjuster.

With the aid of the seat belt height adjustment for the front seats, the position of the belt webbing in the shoulder area can be adjusted according to height so that the seat belt can be correctly positioned:

– Press the regulating device in the direction of the arrow and hold it down. → fig. 31.
– Move the adjuster up or down until the seat belt is positioned over the middle of the shoulder → p. 39, *Positioning the belt webbing*.
– Release the regulating device.
– Verify that the control device has engaged by pulling on the seat belt several times.

⚠

Never adjust the height of the safety belt while driving.

COPIA

Automatic seat belt tensioner, seat belt pre-tensioner and seat belt anti-pinch function

Please note⚠ at the beginning of this chapter on page 34.

Seat belts are part of the vehicle safety system → p. 45 and have the following important functions:

Automatic seatbelt rewinder

The seat belts are equipped with an automatic belt winder which keeps the seat belt snug against the passenger's body. By pulling the seatbelt slowly or in normal contraction, full freedom of movement in the trunk area of the passenger is ensured. However, when the seat belt is pulled out quickly, during sudden braking, driving in the mountains, cornering and when accelerating the vehicle, the automatic seat belt retractor locks the seat belt.

Seat belt pre-tensioners

The front seat belts are equipped with pretensioners and an anti-traction function. The rear seat belts are not fitted with these devices.

Seat belt pre-tensioners are actuated by sensors and tension the belts in the opposite direction of extraction in more severe frontal, side and rear collisions. The seat-belt slack is eliminated when the pretensioner actuates and can thus reduce the forward movement of the vehicle occupants or the movement of the vehicle occupants in the direction of impact. The seat-belt pretensioner works in conjunction with the airbag system. The seat-belt pretensioner is not activated in minor frontal collisions, rollovers and other accidents where there are no significant forces.

When activated, a fine dust may be generated. This is perfectly normal and does not present a fire hazard to the vehicle.

Safety belt anti-trapping function

The front seat belts are equipped with force limiters.

A seat belt anti-trapping function minimises the force of the seat belt acting on the body in the event of an accident.

When disposing of the vehicle or of individual parts of the system, all the following must be observed

The Volkswagen Dealers are familiar with these regulations. Volkswagen dealers are familiar with these regulations.

Seat belt pretensioner removal service

Please note⚠ at the beginning of this chapter on page 34.

When working on the seat belt pretensioner, as well as when dismantling and installing other vehicle parts during repairs, the belt may be imperceptibly damaged. As a result, the seatbelt pretensioners may not function properly in the event of an accident or may not function at all.

To ensure that the effectiveness of the safety belt pretensioners is not impaired and that the removed parts do not cause injury or harm the environment, the instructions must be observed. These regulations are known to Volkswagen dealers.

⚠ WARNING

Incorrect treatment or even repairs to safety belts, automatic belt retractors and pretensioners may result in a risk of serious or fatal injury. In this case, the seat-belt pretensioner may not activate when necessary or may activate unnecessarily.

- Repairs and adjustments, as well as removal and installation of parts on the seatbelt pretensioners or seatbelts may only be carried out by a Volkswagen Dealer → p. 316, *Accessories, replacement of parts, repairs and modifications*.

COPIA

- Seat belt pre-tensioners and automatic belt retractors cannot be repaired and must be replaced.
- The seat belt pretensioners have a capacity of only one activation. Once activated, the seat-belt pretensioners must be replaced.

Airbag modules and seatbelt pre-tensioners can be fitted to the airbags and seatbelt pre-tensioners.
have toxic substances in them. It is therefore forbidden to dispose of them / dispose of them together with household waste. For your safety and comfort, Volkswagen recommends that you have your airbag modules and seatbelt pretensioners replaced only by a Volkswagen Dealer.
Volkswagen.

Airbag system

Introduction to the topic

The vehicle is equipped with one frontal airbag for the driver and one for the front passenger. The front airbags can provide additional protection for the driver's and front passenger's thorax and head when the seat, seat belts, head restraints and (in the case of the driver) steering wheel are adjusted and used correctly. Airbags were developed for additional protection. Airbags are not a substitute for seat belts, which must always be used, even when the vehicle is equipped with front airbags.

⚠ WARNING

Never rely on the airbag system alone for protection.

- Even when an airbag is activated, it has only an additional protective function.
- The airbag system only provides protection when the seatbelt is correctly positioned to minimise injuries.
→ p. 34, *Seat belts*.

- All occupants of the vehicle should always be in the correct seating position, and the seat belt should be correctly positioned before the vehicle is in motion and kept correctly positioned at all times.

⚠ WARNING

Objects between the vehicle occupants and the expansion radius of the airbags increase the risk of injury during airbag deployment. Thus, the area of action of the airbags would be altered and objects would be thrown against the occupants' bodies.

- Never hold objects in your hands or carry them on your lap while driving.
- Never carry objects on the front passenger seat. Objects can reach the expansion radius of the airbags during sudden braking or steering manoeuvres and be thrown dangerously out of the vehicle when the airbag is triggered.
- Persons, animals or objects must not be between the vehicle occupants in the front seats, on the side seats of the rear seat and between the airbag expansion zones. Ensure that this also applies to children and passengers.

⚠ WARNING

The airbag system is suitable for only one release of the airbags. If the airbags have deployed, the system must be replaced.

- The triggered airbags and the respective system parts must be replaced with new parts that are released for the vehicle by Volkswagen.
- Repairs and replacement of airbag system parts in the vehicle may only be carried out by a Volkswagen Dealer. Volkswagen dealers have the necessary tools, diagnostic equipment, repair information and qualified personnel for this purpose.
- Never install airbag parts removed from older vehicles or recycling processes in the vehicle.
- Never tamper with any component of the airbag system.

COPIA

⚠ WARNING

A fine (non-toxic) dust may be released when the airbags are triggered. This is perfectly normal and does not represent a fire hazard in the vehicle.

- Fine dust may irritate the skin and mucous membranes of the eyes and may cause breathing difficulties, especially in people who suffer or have suffered from asthma or other respiratory defi- ciencies. To reduce respiratory problems, get out of the vehicle or open windows or doors for fresh air.
- When in contact with dust, wash hands and face with mild soap and water before the next meal.
- Do not allow powder to come into contact with eyes or unhealed lesions.
- Rinse eyes with water in case of contact with dust.

⚠

The use of cleaning agents causes the surface of the airbag modules to become porous or brittle. In the event of activation, these parts may fragment, become loose and cause serious injury.

- Never use chemicals or cleaning agents on the surface of the airbag modules. For cleaning, use only a damp cloth with water.

Type of front front passenger frontal airbag system

Please note⚠ at the beginning of this chapter on page 42.

Airbag system with deactivation of front passenger frontal airbag

The front passenger frontal airbag is deactivated manually via a switch activated with the key → page 47.

Airbag system signals with front passenger frontal airbag deactivation:

– Front passenger front airbag in instrument panel.
– Warning light on the display of the combined instrument.
– PASSENGER AIR BAG control light on the top of the centre console.
– PASSENGER AIR BAG control light on the top of the centre console.
– Key-operated switch next to the instrument panel on the front passenger's side (visible only with the door open).

Control light

Please note⚠ at the beginning of this chapter on page 42.



Fig. 32 In the upper part of the centre console: control light for front passenger frontal airbag off or control light for the airbag front passenger front passenger on.

The yellow control lamp on the display of the combination instrument lights up briefly after switching on the ignition for the function test and goes out after a few seconds.

Front passenger frontal airbag de- activated. The warning light is
The yellow trolley in the centre console is permanently lit → fig. 32 .

Front passenger frontal airbag activated. The control light is on.
The indicator light in the centre console automatically switches off approximately 60 seconds after the ignition has been switched on or after the front passenger frontal airbag has been activated with the switch set at
via the key → fig. 32 .

COPIA

If, when the front passenger frontal airbag is **deactivated**, the PASSENGER AIR BAG indicator light will be illuminated.
in the upper part of the centre console **do light up permanently** or if it stays on together with the control light in the combined instrument panel , there may be a fault in the airbag system →⚠ .

When the airbag system warning lamp remains illuminated or there are malfunctions

⚠

have been activated imperfectly, may not have been activated, or may have been activated unexpectedly, which may result in serious or fatal injury.

- The airbag system should be checked immediately at a Volkswagen Dealer.
- Never mount a child seat on the front passenger seat when the airbag is activated! The front passenger frontal airbag can be triggered in an accident despite malfunctions.

Troubleshooting

Please note⚠ at the beginning of this chapter on page 42.

Airbag system or belt pretensioner defective

The yellow control lamp lights up continuously. In addition, a message can be displayed on the display of the combined instrument.

In at least one airbag or seat belt pretensioner a malfunction has been recognised.

– Visit a Volkswagen Dealer.
– Have airbag system and seatbelt pretensioner checked.

Front passenger front passenger frontal airbag deactivated

The yellow indicator lamp lights up continuously for the deactivated front passenger frontal airbag.

The front passenger frontal airbag was deactivated.

- Check whether the front passenger frontal airbag should remain deactivated, e.g. when using a child seat in the front passenger seat.

Front front passenger frontal airbag activated

The yellow indicator light comes on for the activated front passenger frontal airbag about 60 seconds after the ignition has been switched on or after the front passenger frontal airbag has been activated with the switch activated via the key.

The front passenger frontal airbag deployed.

- Check whether the front passenger frontal airbag should remain activated

Description and function of airbags

Please note⚠ at the beginning of this chapter on page 42.

The airbag can protect vehicle occupants in an accident by cushioning occupant movement in frontal and side collisions.

Every triggered airbag is inflated by a gas generator. In this way, the respective airbag covers are ruptured and the airbags open at high speed in milliseconds in their expansion areas. The inflated airbag, while cushioning the vehicle occupants, who must always wear their seat belts, releases the gas contained for cushioning through openings located outside the contact with the occupants. In this way, the risk of serious and fatal injuries can be reduced. The risk of other injuries such as swelling, contusions and skin flapping caused by the activated airbag must be taken into account. Frictional heat may also be released when the airbag inflates.

Airbags do not provide protection for the arms and lower body.

The most important factors for the triggering of the airbag are the type of accident, the impact area of the vehicle, the intensity of the impact, the vehicle structure and the characteristic of the obstacle with which the vehicle collides. Therefore, airbags do not deploy in all crash

si

tuations.

COPIA

The activation of the airbag system is dependent on the impact intensity recorded by an electronic control unit. If the accident characteristics do not fall within the parameters programmed into the control unit, the air bags will not be activated. Vehicle damage and repair costs are not necessarily an indicator that airbag deployment was necessary. Important factors for the activation of the airbags are, among other things, the type of object (rigid or soft) with which the vehicle is hit, the angle, the intensity of the impact and the crash area of the vehicle.

Air bags serve only as a supplement to seat belts in some accident situations where the intensity is high enough to trigger the air bags. The air bags are activated only once and under certain conditions. The safety belts are always ready to provide protection in situations where the air bags are not deployed or have already been deployed. For example, when the vehicle collides with another vehicle or is hit by another vehicle after the first collision.

The airbag system is part of the overall passive safety concept of the vehicle. The protection afforded by the airbag system can only be achieved through the combined action of correctly positioned seat belts and a correct seating position → p. 32.

Components of the safety concept of the vehicle

The following safety equipment together form the vehicle safety concept to reduce the risk of serious and fatal injuries. Depending on the vehicle version, some equipment may not be installed in the vehicle or may not be available in some markets.

- Optimised seat belts in all seats.
- Seat belt pretensioner for driver and front passenger.
- Safety belt anti-trapping function for driver and front passenger.
- Seat belt height adjustment for front seats.
- Seat belt warning light .
- Driver and front passenger frontal airbags.
- Driver's and front passenger's side airbags.
- Airbag control light .
- PASSENGER AIR BAG Control light at the top of the centre console.
- PASSENGER AIR BAG Control light at the top of the centre console.
- Control units and sensors.
- Head restraints optimised for high impact and height-adjustable.
- Adjustable steering column.
- If necessary, anchorage points for child seats, at the side of the rear seat and on the front passenger seat.
- If necessary, attachment points for the top tether belt for child seats.

Situations where the front and side airbags do not deploy:

- If the ignition is switched off in the event of a collision.
- If in collisions at the front of the vehicle, the intensity measured in the con- trol units would be very small.
- In minor side collisions.
- In rear-end collisions.
- In a dunk.
- If the impact intensity measured by the control unit is not sufficient for activation.

In case of triggering of airbags - Crash detection function

When the airbags are deployed in an accident, the collision detection function is activated and the following actions can be performed:

- Unlocking of vehicle doors (valid for vehicles with central locking system) → p. 65.
- Interruption of the fuel supply → page 238.
- Activation of vehicle interior lights → p. 90.
- Activation of warning lights → p. 59.

COPIA

21A.5L1.TCR.60

Warning lights can be switched off by the switch on the instrument panel.

Front airbags

Please note⚠ at the beginning of this chapter on page 42.

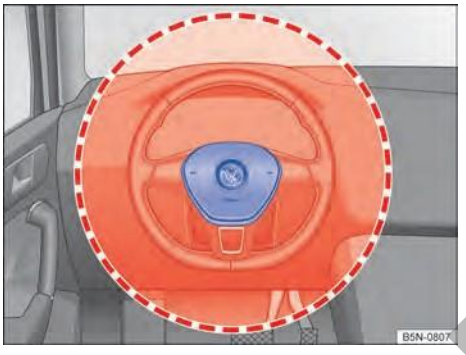


Fig. 33 Location and expansion radius of the driver's frontal airbag.

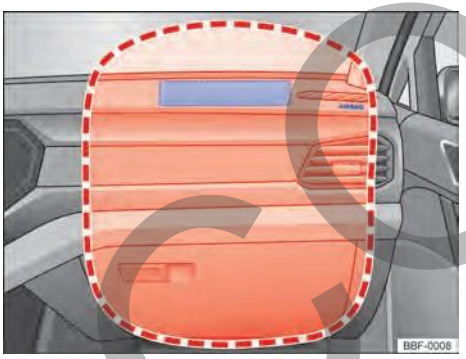


Fig. 34 Location and expansion radius of the front passenger frontal airbag.

The front airbag system, together with the seat belts, provides additional protection for the head and thorax area of the driver and front passenger in frontal collisions in more serious accidents. Always maintain the greatest possible distance from the front airbag, at least 25 cm→ p. 32. In this way, the front airbags can inflate fully in the event of activation and thus provide maximum protection.

The driver's frontal airbag is located in the steering wheel → fig. 33 and the front passenger frontal airbag in the instrument panel.
→ The locations of the airbags are identified by the "AIRBAG" label.

The areas highlighted in red → Fig. 33 and → Fig. 34 are covered by the active front airbags (expansion area). For this reason, no objects may ever be placed or attached in these areas →⚠ .

When the driver's and front passenger's front airbags inflate, the airbag covers fold out of the steering wheel.
→ fig. 33 or the instrument panel → fig. 34. The airbag covers remain attached to the steering wheel and instrument panel.

⚠ DANGER

An activated airbag inflates in a fraction of a second and at a very high speed.

- Always leave the airbag deployment areas clear of the front airbags.
- Never attach objects to the covers, e.g. drink holders, mobile phone holders, GPS, etc., in the area of the airbag modules.
- Persons, animals or objects must not be allowed to come between the occupants of the front seats and the airbag deployment area.
- Do not attach objects, e.g. mobile navigation devices, to the windscreen above the front passenger frontal airbag.
- Do not glue, coat, alter or place any material on the surface of the centre of the steering wheel (steering wheel actuator) and the surface of the front passenger frontal airbag module on the instrument panel.

⚠ WARNING

The front airbags inflate in front of the steering wheel → Fig. 33 and the instrument panel → Fig. 34.

- Always hold the steering wheel with both hands on the outside edge while driving: equivalent position at 9 o'clock and 3 o'clock.
- Adjust the driver's seat so that there is a minimum distance of 25 cm between the thorax and the centre of the steering wheel. If this requirement cannot be met due to physical constitution,

SEAT

it is essential to contact a Volkswagen dealer or a specialist company for any special installation work that may be required.

- Adjust the passenger seat so that there is as much distance as possible between the passenger and the instrument panel.

Parts of the airbag system must not be reused if the vehicle is scrapped.

The use of the product or some of its components must be ensured. In addition to complying with the applicable safety regulations, environmentally sound destination regulations must also be observed. Volkswagen

d

ealers are familiar with these regulations .

Deactivate and switch on the front passenger frontal airbag manually with the switch operated by the key.

Please note ⚠ at the beginning of this chapter on page 42.



Fig. 35 On the instrument panel on the front passenger side: key-operated switch for deactivating and activating the front passenger frontal airbag.

When attaching a child seat to the front passenger seat rearward, the front passenger frontal airbag must be deactivated at !

Connecting the front passenger front airbag

– Switch off the ignition.
– Open the door on the passenger's side of the vehicle.
– Tilt the vehicle key rod outwards → page 61.
– Insert the key blade into the key-operated switch → fig. 35 →① and turn it to the position .
– Remove the vehicle key from the key-operated switch and fold the paddle of the key inwards.
– The PASSENGER AIR BAG indicator light in the upper part of the centre console switches on and off after approx. 60 seconds → page 43.
– Close the door on the passenger side of the vehicle.
– check whether the PASSENGER AIR BAG indicator light on the top of the centre console is switched on when the ignition is switched on → page 43.

Deactivate the front passenger front airbag

– Switch off the ignition.
– Open the door on the passenger's side of the vehicle.
– Tilt the vehicle key rod outwards → page 61.
– Insert the key blade into the key-operated switch → fig. 35 →① and turn it to the position .
– Remove the vehicle key from the key-operated switch and fold the paddle of the key inwards.
– Close the door on the passenger side of the vehicle.
– The PASSENGER AIR BAG indicator light in the upper part of the centre console is permanently lit when the ignition is switched on → page 43.

Acknowledgement signal for front passenger frontal airbag off

A deactivated front passenger frontal airbag is **only** indicated by the permanently lit PASSENGER AIR BAG indicator light in the upper section of the centre console (permanently lit yellow) → page 43.

If the PASSENGER AIR BAG indicator light in the upper part of the centre console **is not permanently lit** or is lit together with the indicator light of the combined instrument, no child restraint system will be activated.
can be mounted on the passenger seat

COPIA

front passenger frontal airbag for safety reasons. The front passenger frontal airbag could be triggered in the event of an accident.

⚠ WARNING

The front passenger frontal airbag can only be deactivated in special cases.

- Only switch the front passenger airbag on and off when the ignition is switched off to prevent damage to the airbag system.
- The responsibility for the correct position of the key-operated switch lies with the driver.
- Switch off the front passenger frontal airbag only if, in special cases, a child seat is attached to the front passenger seat.
- Switch on the front passenger frontal airbag again when the child seat is no longer being used in the front passenger seat.

NOTICE

An insufficiently inserted key paddle can be damaged by turning it in the key-operated switch.

NOTICE

Do not leave the vehicle key inserted in the key-operated switch, as this may cause damage to the inner door lining, the instrument panel, the key-operated switch and the vehicle key when locking the front passenger door.

Side airbags

Please note⚠ at the beginning of this chapter on page 42.

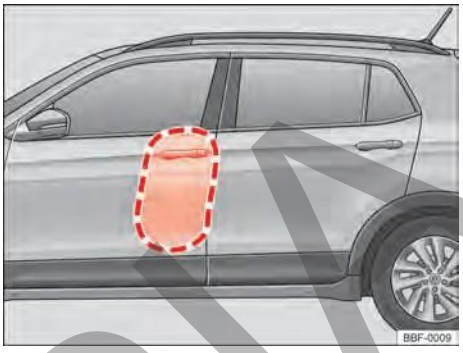


Fig. 36 On the left side of the vehicle: side airbag expansion areas.

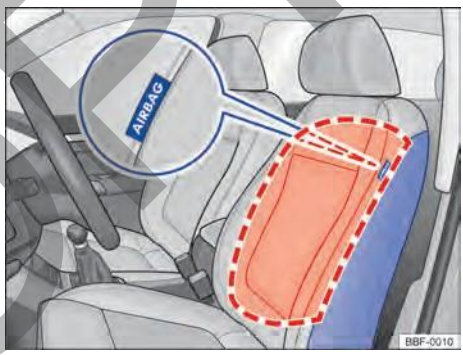


Fig. 37 Side of the front seat: installation location and expansion area of the side air bags.

The side airbags are located in the outer trim of the driver and front passenger seat backrests → fig. 37. The locations are identified by the label "AIRBAG".

The areas highlighted in red → Fig. 36 and → Fig. 37 are covered by the activated side airbags (expansion area). For this reason, no objects may ever be placed or attached in these areas → ⚠.

In the event of a side-on collision, the side airbags on the side of the collision are triggered and thus reduce the risk of injury to the vehicle occupants on the parts of the body facing the side of the collision.
the collision.

COPY

⚠ WARNING

The insufflation of a triggered airbag takes place in fractions of a second and at a very high speed.

- Always leave the expansion areas of the side airbags free.
- Persons, animals or objects must not be between the vehicle occupants in the front seats, on the side seats of the rear seat and between the airbag expansion zones. Ensure that this also applies to children and passengers.
- Hang only lightweight suits on the vehicle's clothes hook. Do not leave heavy or sharp-edged objects in pockets.
- Do not mount accessories on the doors.
- Only use seat or protective coverings that are expressly approved for use in the vehicle. Otherwise, the side airbag may not inflate in an actuation.

⚠ WARNING

Improper operation of the driver's seat and front passenger seat can prevent the side airbags from functioning properly and cause serious injury.

- Never remove the front seats from the vehicle or modify their parts.
- If excessively high forces are applied to the side bolsters of the seat backrest, the side airbags may not deploy properly, may not deploy at all or may deploy accidentally.
- Damage to the original seat covers or to the seams in the area of the side airbag module must be checked immediately by a Volkswagen Dealer.

Head airbags

Please note⚠ at the beginning of this chapter on page 42.

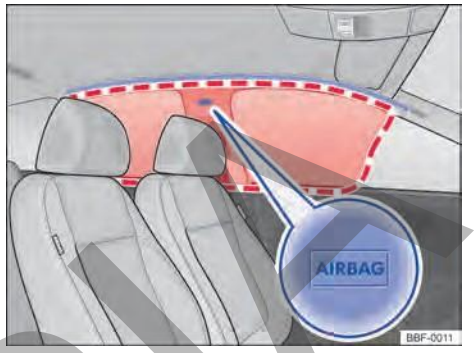


Fig. 38 On the left side of the vehicle: mounting location and expansion area of the head airbag.

The vehicle is equipped with head airbags on the driver's and front passenger's side of the vehicle above the doors → fig. 38.

The mounting locations of the head airbags are identified by the "AIR- BAG" label.

The area highlighted in red is covered by the powered head air bag (expansion area). → fig. 38. Therefore, no objects may ever be placed or fixed in this area →⚠ .

In the event of a side impact, the head airbag is triggered on the side of the collision.

In the event of a side impact, head restraint airbags reduce the risk of injury to the occupants of the vehicle in the front seats and in the side seats of the rear seat in the parts of the body facing the accident.

⚠ WARNING

The airbag inflates in milliseconds and at high speed.

- Always leave the expansion areas of the head airbags free.
- Never attach objects to the cover or expansion area of the head airbag.
- Persons, animals or objects must not be between the occupants of the vehicle in the front seats, in the side seats, or on the side

COPY

of the rear seat and between the airbag expansion zones. Ensure that children and passengers also comply with this requirement.

- Hang only lightweight suits on the vehicle's clothes hook. Do not leave heavy or sharp-edged objects in bags.
- Do not mount accessories on the doors.
- Do not install sunblinds on side windows that are not specifically released for use in the vehicle.
- Turn the sun visor towards the side windows only when no objects, e.g. pens or garage door opener controls, are attached to the sun visor.

Transport of children in the vehicle

Introduction to the topic

Child seats reduce the risk of injury in an accident. Always transport children in child seats, and always do so in compliance with the law!

Observe:

– Child seats are divided into groups according to the size, age and weight of the child.
– The child seats can be attached to the vehicle by means of different attachment systems.

For safety reasons, child seats should preferably be placed in the rear seats → p. 52, *Installation and use of child seats in the vehicle*.

Before transporting babies and children in a child seat in the front passenger seat, it is essential to read all the information about the airbag system and the possible injuries that can be caused to children in group 0 and 0+ when the airbag is deployed.

This information is very important for the safety of the driver and all passengers, especially babies and small children.

Volkswagen recommends the use of child seats from the Volkswagen Original Accessories Programme. These child seats have been designed and tested for use in Volkswagen vehicles.

⚠

Unprotected and improperly protected children can be seriously or fatally injured while driving.

- Never leave a child seat mounted with its back to the front passenger seat without deactivating the airbag because of possible injury due to airbag deployment.
- Volkswagen recommends that children under 12 years of age or under 1.50 m in height should preferably be transported in the back seat.
- Always protect children in the vehicle with an approved restraint system suitable for their height and weight.
- Always fasten seat belts to children or child seats, or attach all seats being transported to ISOFIX and position them correctly in the seats.
- Note the correct position of the seat belt webbing for each condition of use. If necessary, pull the seat belt across the child's body, making sure that the belt passes over the middle of the shoulder and never close to the child's neck.
- Never carry children or infants on the bar.
- Always place only one child in the child seat.
- Read and follow the child seat manufacturer's instructions for use, especially with regard to the correct fitting of the vehicle seat belt.
- After an accident, replace the child seat used, as imperceptible damage may have occurred.

⚠ WARNING

In a braking or steering manoeuvre or in an accident, a loose, unoccupied child seat can be thrown around in the interior of the vehicle and cause injury.

COPIA

- Always secure the child seat, even if it is unoccupied, when driving the vehicle, or place it securely in the luggage compartment.

Types of child seats

Please note ⚠ at the beginning of this chapter on page 50.



Fig. 39 Illustrations A , Ⓑ Ⓒ yshow the fixation of the child restraint system with the vehicle seat belt only.

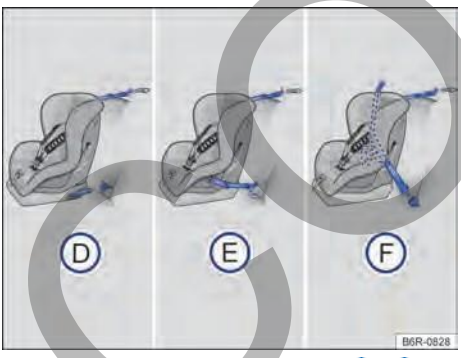


Fig. 40 In the rear seat: the figures Ⓓ y Ⓔ show the principle of attachment of the child restraint to the lower belt eyelets and to the upper belt. The figure shows the attachment of the Ⓕ child restraint to the vehicle seat belt and to the top tether belt.

Child seats must always be correctly and securely attached to the vehicle in accordance with the child seat manufacturer's installation instructions.

The mounted child seat must be properly secured with the vehicle seat belts or ISOFIX and Top Tether system and must not allow longitudinal or transverse movement.

Country-specific rules for transporting children in vehicles

Child seats must comply with ECE-R 441[1] (European). Further information can be obtained from a Volkswagen Dealer and on the Internet at www.volkswagen.com.

Country-specific fastening systems

Types of child seats → fig. 39:

Ⓐ Portable or baby comfort cot

Ⓑ Car seat

Ⓒ Safety Lift

The systems show the attachment of the rear seat child restraint system with a vehicle seat belt.

Fixing variants → fig. 40:

Ⓓ ISOFIX restraint eyelets and top tether belt, type "Top Tether".

Ⓔ Universal LATCH clip and top tether belt, "Top Tether" type.

Ⓕ Three-point automatic safety belt and top tether belt, type "Top Tether".

The systems show the attachment of the child restraint system with a top tether belt and the anchorage points on the seat.

[1] ECE Regulation: Economic Commission for Europe-Regelung (Economic Commission for Europe-Regelung).

SOFIA

Group subdivision of seats for children according to ECE-R 44 standard

Weight of the child so	Ye	Age
Group	0up to 10 kg	up to approx. mind 9 months
Group 0	+up to 13 kg	up to approx. 18 months
Group 1	from 9 to 18 kg	approximately 8 months to 31/2 years
Group 2	from 15 to 25 kg	approximately 3 to 7 years
Group 3	from 22 to 36 kg	approximately 6 to 12 years

In addition to age, other aspects such as the child's weight, height and general physical constitution should also be taken into account when selecting a suitable child seat, as the child's biotype may not correspond to that of the majority of the population in his or her age group. In case of doubt, always seek out a Volkswagen Dealer.

Child seats tested in accordance with ECE-R 44 have the ECE-R 44 test symbol firmly applied to the seat: E in a circle below the test number.

Installation and use of seats for children in the vehicle

Please note⚠ at the beginning of this chapter on page 50.

The laws of physics that affect the vehicle in a collision or other accident also apply to children → p. 34. Unlike adults and adolescents, children's muscles and bones are not yet fully developed. Children are at greater risk of serious injury in accidents than adults.

Because children's bodies are not yet fully developed, it is necessary to use child restraints that are specially adapted to their size, weight and physical structure.

Country-specific indications

Different regulations and legal provisions apply in different countries to the use of child seats and their attachment options. The transport of children in the front passenger seat is not permitted in all countries. The legal regulations and regulations take precedence over the descriptions in these operating instructions.

Guidance on child seat installation

When installing a child seat, observe the following general guidelines. This applies to all child seat attachment systems.

- Read and follow the instructions of the child seat manufacturer →⚠.
- Preferably mount the child seat in the rear seat, behind the front passenger seat, so that children can get off on the curb side.
- Fit the child seat only with the rear seat in the original position→ p. 81, *Rear seat backrest tilt adjustment*.
- To fit a rearward-facing child seat on the front passenger seat, deactivate the front passenger frontal airbag.
- If the front passenger seat is installed in the front passenger seat, the front passenger seat must be placed backwards in accordance with the installation instructions for the child seat.
  → p. 32.
- Always leave sufficient space around the child seat. If necessary, adjust the seat in front of the child seat. Always observe and follow the correct position of the driver's or front passenger seat → page 32.
- The backrest of the child seat must be fully supported by the vehicle seat backrest. Adjust the inclination of the vehicle's front seat backrest so that the child seat is fully supported. If the installed child seat touches the vehicle's head restraint, preventing it from resting correctly, push the head restraint upwards or remove it and store it in a safe place.
  safely in the vehicle → p. 82.

COPIA

Airbag sticker

In the vehicle there will be stickers with important information on the front passenger frontal airbag. The content depends on the country and may vary. Check the adhesive label affixed to the driver and/or front passenger sun visor.

Before installing a rearward-facing child seat, it is essential to observe the warnings →⚠ .

Hazards when transporting children in the front passenger seat

The carriage of children in the passenger seat is not permitted in all countries.

Exceptions for the carriage of children in the front seat →⚠ .

- When the number of children under 10 years of age exceeds the capacity of the vehicle seat. In this case, the tallest child shall be allowed to be carried in the front seat, using the vehicle seat belt or restraint system appropriate to the age of the child.

A triggering of the front passenger frontal airbag when using a **rear-facing child seat** can cause serious or fatal injuries →⚠ .

Rearward-facing child seats can only be used in the front passenger seat if the front passenger frontal airbag is deactivated. A deactivated front passenger frontal airbag is indicated by the PASSENGER indicator light.
AIR BAG permanently lit nthe centre console. Deactivate the front passenger frontal airbag → page 47.

Do not deactivate the front passenger frontal airbag when using a **forward-facing child seat**. When installing the child seat, ensure the greatest possible distance between the child seat and the front passenger frontal airbag in accordance with the child seat installation instructions. Disengagement of the front passenger frontal air bag can cause serious injuries →⚠ .

Not all child seats are approved for use on the front passenger seat. The child seat must be released by the manufacturer, especially for use on the front passenger seat of the vehicle.

The Volkswagen dealership has a current list of all child seats available. The Volkswagen dealership offers a current list with all child seats available.

Hazards related to side airbags

In a side airbag deployment, the child can be hit in the head with the airbag and can be seriously injured→⚠ .

⚠ DANGER

Never leave a child in a child seat mounted with its back to the front passenger seat if the front passenger frontal airbag is activated. Firing the front airbag can kill the child, as the child seat can impact with full force and be thrown against the seat backrest.

⚠ DANGER

Using a rearward-facing child seat in the front passenger seat increases the risk of serious or fatal injury to the child in the event of an accident.

- Deactivate the front passenger front airbag. If the front passenger frontal airbag cannot be deactivated, the use of a rearward-facing child seat is not permitted.
- Only use child seats released by the child seat manufacturer for use in the front passenger seat with front and side airbag.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of injury from incorrect installation of child seats.

- Observe and follow the child seat manufacturer's installation instructions and warnings.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of injury when using a forward-facing child seat in the front passenger seat.

- Position the front passenger seat as far back as possible, following the child seat installation instructions to ensure the greatest possible distance from the front passenger frontal airbag.

COPY

- Position the seat backrest in an upright position that best suits the child seat.
- In the case of seat belt height adjustment, set the seat belt to the position most suitable for the height of the child or child seat.
- Only use child seats released by the child seat manufacturer for use in the front passenger seat with front and side airbag.

⚠ WARNING

In a crash, the back seat is the safest place for children with the child seat in place.

- A suitable child seat, correctly mounted in one of the rear seating positions, offers maximum protection for children up to 12 years of age in most accident situations.

⚠ WARNING

To prevent injury when a head or side airbag is deployed:

- Make sure that the child is not in the airbag expansion area → p. 42, *Airbag system*.
- Do not place objects in the expansion area of the side airbag.

Child seat attachment with lower anchorage points (ISOFIX, LATCH)

Please note⚠ at the beginning of this chapter on page 50.



Fig. 41 On the vehicle seat: identification of child seat lower anchorage points.

The **2** retaining eyelets for each child seat with the ISOFIX system can be reached through the slots in the seat upholstery → fig. 41.

Installation overview with ISOFIX

According to the information of the European standard ECE-R [161)] and NBR 6091, the installation possibilities at the lower anchorage points of child seats with ISOFIX attachment system on the respective vehicle seats are listed in the following table.

	ISOFIX child seat group (weight rating)									
	Group 0: hasta 10 kg		Group 0: up to 10 kg Group 0+: up to 13 kg			Group 1: 9 to 18 kg				
Installation address	Backwards (opposite direction to di- rection)		Backwards (opposite direction to the direction)			Backwards (opposite direction to di- rection)		Forward (directional direction)		
Size class	F	G	C	D	E	C	D	A	B	B1

[1)] ECE: Economic Commission for Europe-Regelung (Economic Commission for Europe-Regelung).

	ISOFIX child seat group (weight rating)			
	Group 0: hasta 10 kg	Group 0: up to 10 kg Group 0+: up to 13 kg	Group 1: 9 to 18 kg	
Passenger seat mounting	Seat without anchorage points, without ISOFIX/LATCH attachment			
Rear seat mounting	IL-SU	IL-SU	IL-SU	IUF/IL-SU

IL-SU: seat suitable for mounting an ISOFIX child seat with "semi-universal" approval, see child seat manufacturer's vehicle list.

IUF: seat suitable for mounting a child seat with ISOFIX with "univer- sal" approval and fastening with the Top Tet- her fastening belt.

Child seat with rigid attachment (ISOFIX)

If supplied together with the child seat, guides can be used when fitting a rigidly attached child seat. The guides mounted before the attachment to the ISOFIX anchorage points facilitate the installation and protect the seat cover. The guides lock into the two ISOFIX anchorage points of the vehicle. →ⓘ.

– Observe and follow the guidelines → p. 52, *Installation and use of child seats in the vehicle*.
– When assembling or disassembling, follow the instructions of the child seat manufacturer →⚠.
– Insert the child seat into the retaining eyelets → Fig. 41 in the direction of the arrow. The child seat must engage securely and audibly (click).
– Push the head restraint all the way up or remove it to prevent it from interfering with the child seat → p. 82.
– Carry out a pull test on both sides of the child seat to check that both latches are engaged.

Child seat with adjustable seat belts (LATCH)

– Observe and follow the guidelines → p. 52, *Installation and use of child seats in the vehicle*.
– When assembling or disassembling, follow the instructions of the child seat manufacturer →⚠.
– Place the child seat on the seat surface and fasten the seat belts in the retaining eyelets → fig. 41, if the seat belts are supplied with the child seat.
– Push the head restraint all the way up or remove it to prevent it from interfering with the child seat → p. 82.
– Pull the seat belts evenly across the belt tensioning device. The child seat must be firmly seated in the vehicle seat.
– Carry out a pull test on both sides of the child seat to check that both latches are engaged.

⚠ WARNING

The lower anchorage points for child seats are not load securing eyelets. Only attach child seats suitable for this application to the lower anchorage points.

- Only the belts supplied with the child seat may be used to secure the child seat with adjustable belts (LATCH). Adapted or improvised belts may not be used to secure the child seat.

ⓘ *NOTICE*

- Some coupling guides for fixings ISOFIX can be supplied together with the child seat. To prevent permanent marks on the upholstery,

SOFIA

The guides must be removed from the anchorage points when the child seat is not mounted in the vehicle.

- To prevent damage to the fabrics or upholstery, the above-mentioned attachment guides must always be removed from the anchorage points before the rear seat is folded down.

go ahead.

Securing the child seat with the top tether belt (Top Tether)

Please note⚠ at the beginning of this chapter on page 50.



Fig. 42 Retaining eyelets for the top tether belt on the rear side of the rear seat.

In addition to the ISO FIX anchorage points, ISOFIX child seats with universal approval must also be secured with a top tether (Top Tether).

Only attach the seat belt to suitable retaining eyelets. The retaining eyelets suitable for Top Tether are marked with a symbol and, if applicable, with the lettering "TOP TETHER".

– Observe and follow the guidelines → p. 52, *Installation and use of child seats in the vehicle*.
– When assembling or disassembling, follow the instructions of the child seat manufacturer →⚠ .
– Push the head restraint all the way up or remove it to prevent it from interfering with the child seat → p. 82.
– Secure the child seat in the lower retaining eyelets or with the seat belt. The seat must click into place securely and audibly (click).
– Open the rear cover and remove the luggage compartment cover → page 228.
– If provided together with the child seat, attach the top tether belt (Top Tether) of the child seat between the backrest of the rear seat by attaching it to the hook terminal at the rear of the seat backrest → fig. 42.
– Stretch the top tether belt so that the child seat rests against the top of the seat backrest.
– Installing the luggage compartment cover → p. 228.

Refit the head restraint after the child seat has been removed.
→ p. 82.

⚠

Child seats with lower anchorage points and upper anchorage belts must be installed in accordance with the respective manufacturer's instructions. Failure to do so may result in serious injury.

- Always attach only *one* upper attachment belt of a child seat to a retaining eyelet in the luggage compartment.
- Always use the pre-seen retaining eyelets for the belt anchorage.
- Never fix the fastening strap in a lashing eyelet.
- For top tether fastening, only the belt provided with the child seat (if available) may be used. Adapted or improvised belts may not be used in this application.

COPIA

Securing the child seat with the vehicle's seat belt

Please note⚠ at the beginning of this chapter on page 50.

Child seats with the **universal** designation can be secured with the seat belt in the seats marked with a **u** in the table. Where this is not possible, the indication is an **x**.

Weight category	Direction of installation of the child seat	Passenger seat		Rear late seating	Central seat of the seat tra-sero
		Activated front passenger airbag	Deactivated front passenger airbag		
Group 0 up to 10 kg	Mounted in the opposite direction to the direction of travel	**X**	**u**	**u**	**X**
Group 0+ up to 13 kg	Mounted in the opposite direction to the direction of travel	**X**	**u**	**u**	**X**
Group 1 from 9 to 18 kg	Mounted in the opposite direction to the direction of travel	**X**	**u**	**u**	**X**
	Mounted in the direction of travel	**u**	**X**	**u**	**X**
Group 2 from 15 to 25 kg	Mounted in the direction of travel	**u**	**X**	**u**	**X**
Group 3 from 22 to 36 kg	Mounted in the direction of travel	**u**	**X**	**u**	**X**

Securing the child seat with the vehicle's seat belt

– Observe and follow the guidelines → p. 52, *Installation and use of child seats in the vehicle*.
– Read and follow the child seat manufacturer's instructions.
– If the child seat is mounted on the front passenger seat, push the front passenger seat all the way back and position the seat backrest in an upright position that best suits the child seat.
– In the case of seat belt height adjustment, set the seat belt to the most appropriate position for the height of the child or child seat.
– Place the child seat on the child seat and fasten the seat belt according to the child seat manufacturer's instructions.
– Push the head restraint all the way up or remove it to prevent it from interfering with the child seat → p. 82.
– Make sure that the seat belt is not twisted all the way through .

COPIA

– Insert the locking tab of the seat belt into the seat belt latch until the locking tab audibly engages (clicks).
– The seat belt webbing must be firmly and properly supported in the child seat or on the child.
– The child seat must never rest on the belt buckle.
– Perform a pull test to verify secure locking of the seat belt tongue.

Removing the child seat

Unfasten the seat belt only when the vehicle is stationary →⚠ .

– Press the red button on the seat belt lock. The locking tab of the seat belt must be pushed outwards.
– The seatbelt must be rewound with the belt so that the belt can be easily rolled up, the seatbelt is not twisted and the trim is not damaged.
– Remove the child seat from the vehicle according to the manufacturer's instructions.

WARNING

⚠

to serious or fatal injuries in the event of accidents or sudden steering and steering manoeuvres!

- Pull the seat belt only when the vehicle is stationary.

Child safety lock

Please note⚠ at the beginning of this chapter on page 50.

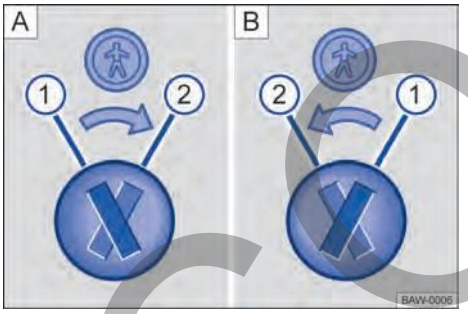


Fig. 43 Child safety lock: rear door left, rear door right.

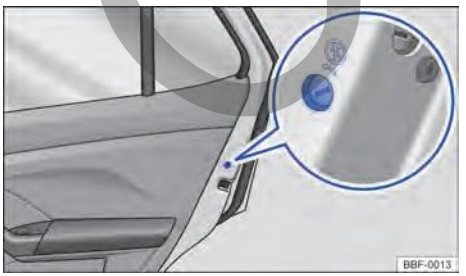


Fig. 44 On the rear door (right-hand side): location of the child safety lock.

Legend for → fig. 43:

① Child safety lock deactivated.
② Child safety lock activated.

The child safety lock prevents the rear doors from opening from the inside, so that children cannot open a door while driving.

With the child lock activated, the door can only be opened from the outside.

Activate or deactivate the child security lock

– Unlock the vehicle and open the respective tailgate.
– Tilt the key paddle outwards → p. 61.
– Insert the paddle of the key into the slot of the child safety lock to activate or deactivate it → fig. 43.

⚠ WARNING

When the child safety lock is activated, the corresponding door cannot be opened from the inside.

- Never leave children or persons with special needs alone inside the vehicle when the doors are locked. This may result in these persons being trapped inside the

COPIA

Trapped people can be exposed to very high or very low temperatures, or even lack of air.

- Depending on the season, very high or very low temperatures can occur inside an enclosed vehicle, which can cause serious injury and illness, mainly in young children, or death.

In case of emergency

Protect yourself and the vehicle



Fig. 45 At the top of the centre console: interruptor for the warning lights.

Observe the legal requirements for the protection of a stationary vehicle. In many countries there are regulations in this respect, e.g. the activation of warning lights.
→ p. 60.

Checklist

The following points must be complied with as often as necessary to ensure your own safety and the safety of passengers →⚠ :

1. Park the vehicle at a safe distance from the flow of traffic on a suitable surface → ⚠ .
2. Switch on the hazard warning lights with the con- mutator. → fig. 45.
3. Pull the parking brake → p. 131.
4. Shift the gear lever to neutral → p. 118 or the selector lever in position **P** → p. 120.
5. Switch off the engine and remove the vehicle key from the ignition lock → page 112.
6. Get all occupants out of the vehicle and carry them safely away from the flow of traffic, e.g. to the rear of the guardrail.
7. Take all vehicle keys with you when you leave the vehicle.
8. Position the safety triangle to make other drivers aware of the vehicle.
9. Allow the engine to cool down sufficiently and, if necessary, seek specialised technical assistance.

With the warning lights switched on, all direction indicators of the vehicle flash at the same time. The direction indicators and an indicator light on the switch flash at the same time. The warning lights also work with the ignition off.

If the warning lights are on, a change of direction or lane change during towing, for example, can be signalled by operating the direction indicator lever. The warning lights are interrupted momentarily.

Examples where warning lights must be switched on:

– If the car in front slows down suddenly or the end of a traffic jam is reached, to alert drivers behind.
– In the event of an emergency.
– If the vehicle breaks down.
– When being towed.

Always comply with regional regulations on the use of warning lights.

If the warning lights do not function, further drivers must be alerted in another way (in accordance with legal regulations) to the stationary vehicle.

Emergency brake lights - ESS (Emergency Stop Signal)

For vehicles with ESS function and anti-lock braking system (ABS), during continuous hard braking at speeds above 80 km/h, the brake light may flash to alert the driver of a sudden stop.
to drivers behind.

COPIA

If the braking was prolonged for a longer time, while maintaining the same deceleration, the warning lights come on automatically and will flash when the vehicle reaches a speed of less than approximately 10 km/h. When the vehicle restarts moving, the warning lamps go out of their own accord.

The warning lights can also be switched off by pressing the switch on the dashboard → fig. 45.

WARNING

A vehicle stopped without proper signalling represents a major accident risk to itself and to third parties in traffic.

- Stop the vehicle as soon as possible in a safe place.
- Park the vehicle at a safe distance from the flow of traffic to safely lock all doors in the event of an emergency.
- Switch on the warning lights and use the safety triangle to alert other drivers.
- Never leave children, handicapped persons or persons with special needs alone in the vehicle when the doors are locked. This may cause them to be locked inside the vehicle in an emergency. Locked-in persons may be exposed to very high or very low temperatures.

WARNING

Observing the checklist is essential for the safety of the driver, passengers and other drivers to avoid possible accidents.

- Always follow the actions in the checklist and observe the safety precautions described therein.

WARNING

Parts of the exhaust system become very hot. This can lead to fires and serious injuries.

- Never park the vehicle in such a way that parts of the exhaust system come into contact with easily ignitable materials underneath the vehicle, e.g. dry grass or fuel.

The vehicle's battery is discharged if the warning lights remain on for more than one hour.
a long period of time - even when the ignition is switched off.

When the airbags are triggered in an accident, the warning lights may be activated.
automatically → p. 45.

Emergency equipment

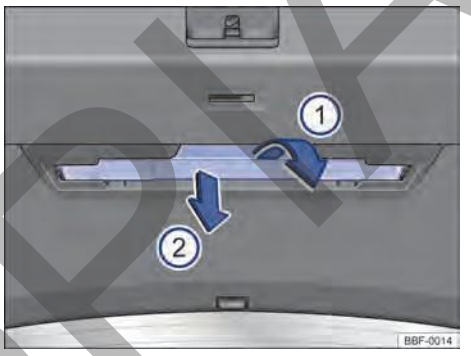


Fig. 46 On the luggage compartment lid: holder for the safety triangle.

Safety triangle

The security triangle may not be available for some countries.

With the luggage compartment lid open, unhook the bracket from the housing → fig. 46 (arrow) and remove
the safety triangle.

After use, fit the safety triangle back into the housing.

Fire extinguisher

The fire extinguisher may not be available for some countries.

Depending on the vehicle version, the fire extinguisher holder may be located in the footwell under the front passenger seat.

The fire extinguisher must correspond to the legal requirements, be ready for use at all times and be inspected regularly (see the inspection seal on the fire extinguisher).

COPIA

⚠ WARNING

Loose objects can be thrown from the inside of the vehicle by a sudden steering or braking manoeuvre, as well as in a accident, and cause serious injuries.

- Always secure the safety triangle securely in the appropriate brackets .

The safety triangle must comply with the current legal specifications for safety triangles.
da country.

Open and close

Vehicle key

Vehicle key functions

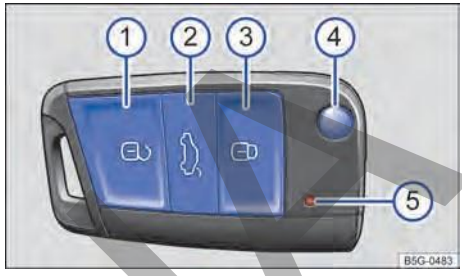


Fig. 47 Vehicle key.

Legend for → fig. 47:

1. Central locking button: Unlock the vehicle.
2. Unlock the boot lid separately.
3. Central locking button: lock the vehicle.
4. Tilt the key rod outwards and inwards.
5. Control light: flashes when the key is pressed.

Unlocking or locking the vehicle from the outside

– *Unlock*, press the key . Press and hold for comfort unlocking.
– *Lock*, press the key . Keep pressed for comfort locking.
– Pressing the key s → p. 72. The cover tra- unlocked.
– *Lock:* all lights flash *once* for confirmation purposes.
– *Unlock:* all lights flash *twice* for confirmation purposes.

Note: according to the configured function of the central locking in the radio system → p. 27, all doors and the tailgate will be unlocked only when the key is pre sione for the second time.

COPY

The audible signal (horn) can be enabled/disabled to confirm the activation and deactivation of the alarm. . *Depending on the vehicle version and the radio version*, in the system
of the radio by means of the ▢ button on the me-
For other vehicles, please contact a Volkswagen Dealer to enable/disable the beep → p. 27. For other vehicles, please contact a Volkswagen Dealer to enable/disable the beep.

WARNING

Inattentive or uncontrolled use of the vehicle keys can cause accidents and serious injuries.

- Always take all vehicle keys with you when leaving the vehicle. Children or unauthorised persons can lock the doors and tailgate, start the engine or switch on the ignition and thus activate electrical equipment such as electric windows.
- Never leave children or persons with special needs alone in the vehicle. In an emergency, they would not be able to leave the vehicle on their own or to help themselves. Depending on the season, very high or very low temperatures can occur in a closed vehicle, which can cause serious injuries and illnesses, especially in young children, or even death.
- Never remove the key from the ignition while the vehicle is in motion.

NOTICE

All vehicle keys contain electronic components. Protect the keys against damage, moisture and strong vibrations.

Only press the buttons on the vehicle key when the respective function is really necessary. Unintentional activation of the button may result in an unintentional unlocking or triggering of the vehicle's alarm. This also applies when we think that we are out of range.

Changing the battery

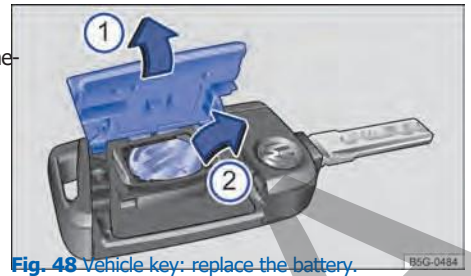


Fig. 48 Vehicle key: replace the battery.

Legend for → fig. 48:

(1) Remove the cover.

(2) Remove the battery.

Volkswagen recommends that the battery be replaced by a Volkswagen dealer or a specialised company.

– Tilt the key rod outwards.

– Removing the cover (1) in the direction of the arrow →ⓘ.

– Remove the battery from its housing with a suitable tool 2.

– Insert the new battery and press in the direction opposite to the arrow 2 into the battery housing → ⓘ.

– Press the cover in the opposite direction to the of the arrow (1) on the key housing of the vehicle until it fits.

If batteries with a diameter of 20 mm or other lithium batteries are swallowed, serious or even fatal injuries can occur within a short period of time.

- Always keep the vehicle key, as well as key rings with batteries, spare batteries, button batteries and other batteries, out of the reach of children.
- Seek medical help immediately if battery ingestion is suspected.

NOTICE

- Improper battery replacement can damage the vehicle's key

COPIA

- Unsuitable batteries may damage the vehicle key. Only replace a discharged battery with a new battery of the same voltage, size and specification.
- When installing the battery, observe the correct polarity.

Batteries contain toxic substances. It is therefore forbidden to discard / dispose of them.

The legislation determines specific procedures for discarding/disposal of used batteries. Legislation stipulates specific procedures for the disposal of used batteries. For your safety and convenience, Volkswagen recommends that the vehicle's battery should only be replaced by a Volkswagen Dealer or by a Volkswagen Service Centre.
a specialised company.

Synchronising the vehicle key

If it is not possible to unlock or lock the vehicle with the vehicle key, synchronise the vehicle key or replace the battery → p. 62.

– Tilt the key rod outwards.
– Remove the weatherstrip from the driver's door handle → page 68.
– Pressthe ▢ buttonon the vehicle keyWhile doing this, stay beside the vehicle.
– Unlock the vehicle within one minute with the key rod. Synchronisation is complete.
– Replace the weatherstrip on the driver's door handle

Troubleshooting

The vehicle cannot be locked or unlocked.

The operation of the vehicle key with remote control can be temporarily affected by obstacles, bad weather conditions, a weak battery or overlapping transmitters in the vicinity of the vehicle which operate in the same frequency band, e.g. a transmitter or mobile phone.

O: if the keys on the vehicle key or one of the central locking buttons are activated several times within a short period of time, the vehicle key or one of the central locking buttons is activated.

temporarily disengages the central locking system to protect against overload. The vehicle is then unlocked. Lock the vehicle if necessary.

Control light does not flash

When the control light on the vehicle key does not flash, this may indicate that the battery, or the key itself, needs to be replaced→ p. 62.

Replacement key

For the acquisition of a vehicle key, the vehicle chassis number is required.

Several vehicle keys can be valid for one vehicle.

The new vehicle keys can be obtained from a Volkswagen dealer or a specialist

c

ompany.

Keyless Access" keyless locking and starting system

Introduction to the topic

Depending on the vehicle version, the Keyless Access locking and starting system may not be available.

Keyless Access Keyless Access locking and starting system allows the vehicle to be unlocked and locked without the active use of the key. To do this, a valid vehicle key must be found at
the approach area of the vehicle.

COPIA

Unlocking or locking the vehicle with Keyless Access

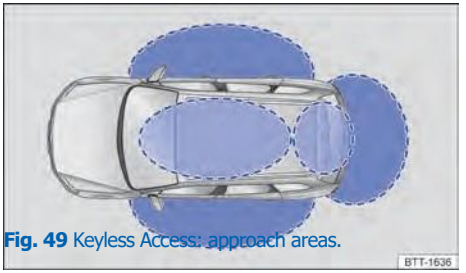


Fig. 49 Keyless Access: approach areas.

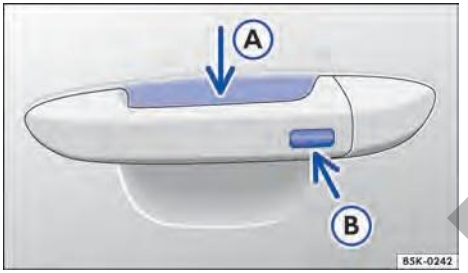


Fig. 50 Keyless Access: sensor surfaces.

Unlocking and locking the vehicle

Unblock:

– Touch the sensor → fig. 50 Ⓐ on the inside of the driver's door handle or front passenger door handle.

– Open the door.

Block:

– Switch off the ignition.

– Close the driver's or front passenger door.

– Touch the sensor surface → fig. 50 Ⓑ on the The driver's door handle or the passenger's door handle of the driver's door or the passenger's door of the driver's door shall be removed *once*.

Unlocking the vehicle is indicated by all direction indicators flashing *twice* and locking by flashing *only once*.

Unlocking and locking the back cover

If the vehicle is locked and a valid vehicle key is within the proxi- mity range → fig. 49 of the tailgate, the tailgate is automatically unlocked when it is opened.

The tailgate locks automatically after closing. If the vehicle is completely unlocked, then the tailgate does not lock automatically after closing.

Temporarily disable Keyless Access

- Lock the vehicle with the vehicle on the key key.

– In addition, within 5 seconds, tap once on the sensor on the outside of the door handle → fig. 50 B .

– Keyless Access is temporarily deactivated.

– To check deactivation, wait at least 10 seconds and pull the door handle again. The door cannot be opened.

The vehicle can only be unlocked with the vehicle key. After the next unlocking, Keyless Access is active again.

Comfort functions

For **comfort opening** of all electric windows and the sunroof, push the door handle and hold down the sensor on the inside of the door handle at the same time.
→ fig. 50 Ⓐ and the sensor surface B .

For the **comfort locking** of all electric windows and the sunroof, hold a finger on the surface of the sunroof for a few seconds.

Ⓑ
sor → fig. 50 on the outer side of the handle of The driver's or passenger's door of the driver's or front passenger's door.

NOTICE

For vehicles with the Keyless Access function, if the central locking system has already been activated and the vehicle key is left in the luggage compartment, the tailgate locks and then unlocks automatically when the tailgate is closed.

If the vehicle battery or the vehicle key battery is low or discharged, position the vehicle key in the vehicle's battery compartment.

The vehicle cannot be unlocked or locked by means of Keyless Access. The vehicle can be unlocked or locked by means of Keyless Access.
usually → p. 68.

COPIA

In order to be able to control an ex- tensive locking of the vehicle, deactivate the unlocking for a few seconds.

A vehicle with an automatic transmission can be locked only if the selector lever is in position **P**.

If the sensor surface is touched twice, the passenger compartment monitoring is disabled and door and lid

o

pening monitoring remain active.

Troubleshooting

Keyless Access does not work

The operation of the sensor surfaces may be restricted due to excessive dirt .

– Clean the sensor surface.

All direction indicators flash four times

– The vehicle key used last is still in the vehicle.

Automatic shutdown of the surfaces of sensor

Under the following conditions, the sensor surfaces are switched off:

– When the vehicle is not unlocked or is locked for a prolonged period of time.
– When a sensor surface is actuated too often.

The sensor surfaces are activated:

– Unlock the vehicle with ▢ the vehicle key.

NOTICE

A strong jet of water or steam can activate the sensor surfaces on the handles if, at the same time, a valid vehicle key is in the approach area. If at least one pane of glass is open and the sensor surface

→ fig. 50 Ⓑ on a door handle is activated permanently, all glass panes shall close. If the jet of water or steam is briefly moved away from the window, the glass shall be closed. of the sensor surface → fig. 50 Ⓐ from a door handle and turns to face the door. it, possibly all the windows will open.

If the message **Keyless with default appears** on the display of the combined instrument, you can malfunctions may occur in the Keyless Access. Find a Volkswagen dealer or a specialised company.

Si no se encuentra ninguna llave del vehículo válida en el interior del vehículo, o si no is recognised, a corresponding message will appear on the display of the combined instrument. This may be the case if the vehicle key is obstructed by another radio signal or if it is covered by an object, e.g. an accessory for mobile devices or an aluminium case. nio → p. 112.

Doors and central locking button

Introduction to the topic

The doors and the tailgate can be locked and partially unlocked manually, e.g. in the event of failure of the vehicle key or the central locking system.

The central locking system locks all doors and the vehicle's tailgate. When the driver's door is open, the vehicle *cannot* be locked.

The vehicle can only be locked if the ignition has been switched off or if the driver leaves the vehicle with the engine switched off.

A symbolic display → p. 13 on the display of the combined instrument indicates that one or more doors are not closed correctly. **Do not continue!** Open the relevant vehicle door and close it again.

The display is also visible when the ignition is switched off. The indicator goes out a few minutes after the vehicle is locked with the doors closed.

WARNING

An improperly closed door can open suddenly while driving and cause serious injury.

- Stop immediately and close the door.

COPIA

- When closing the door, make sure that it is securely and completely closed.
- The door shall only be opened or closed when there is no one or nothing in the

⚠ WARNING

A door that is held open by the door handle can close in strong winds and on slopes, causing injury.

- Always hold the doors by the handle when opening and closing.

⚠ WARNING

The door function button is dangerous and can cause injury.

- Open or close doors only when there is no one at their function button.

⚠ WARNING

Emergency closing or opening of doors without proper attention can lead to serious injuries.

- In a vehicle locked from the outside, it is not possible to open the doors and electric windows from the inside.
- Never leave children, animals or people with special needs alone in the vehicle. In an emergency, they would not be in a position to leave the vehicle on their own or to take care of themselves.
- In a closed vehicle, depending on the season, temperatures can be very high or very low, which can cause serious injury and illness, especially in young children, or death.

⚠ WARNING

Incorrect use of the central locking system can cause serious injury.

- The central locking system locks all doors. A vehicle that is locked from the inside can prevent unintentional opening of the doors and the entry of unauthorised persons. On the other hand, in the event of an emergency or accident, locked doors make it difficult for rescuers to access the interior of the vehicle to assist people.
- Never leave children or persons with special needs unattended inside the vehicle. Activating the central locking button may lock the vehicle doors from the inside, making it difficult or impossible to get out of the vehicle. Locked persons can be exposed to very high or very low temperatures.
- Depending on the season, very high or very low temperatures can occur inside an enclosed vehicle, which can cause serious injury and illness, mainly in young children, or death.
- Never leave people inside a locked vehicle. In an emergency, they may not be able to get out of the vehicle by themselves or to help themselves.
- Only open or close the doors and the tailgate when there is no one within its opening radius.

NOTICE

When executing a closing or opening of a pop-up parts must be carefully removed and reassembled correctly in order to ensure that they are not damaged.
avoid damage to the vehicle.

Control light in the driver's door

Please note ⚠ and at the beginning of this chapter on page 65.

The central locking control lamp is located on the driver's door → page 9.

The vehicle is locked: the red LED flashes for approx. two seconds in short intervals and then more slowly. The indicator light *does not* flash if the vehicle has been locked with the central locking button on the driver's door → p. 67.

COPIA

Automatic locking and unlocking

Please note⚠ and ⓘ at the beginning of this chapter on page 65.

The central locking system locks and unlocks all doors, the boot lid and the fuel tank door.

Depending on the vehicle version and radio version, the settings for central locking can be made in the central locking system.
The radio button is used to transmit the radio signal via the → p. 27.

Automatic locking (Auto Lock)

From a speed of approx. 20 km/h the vehicle locks automatically. If the vehicle is locked, the hazard warning light
on the central locking button will light up yellow.

Automatic Unlock (Auto Unlock)

When one of the following conditions occurs, all doors and the tailgate are automatically unlocked:

- The vehicle is stationary and the vehicle key has been removed *(only for vehicles without Key- less Access)*.
- **O:** the vehicle is stationary and the key has been pressed.
- **O:** the door opening handle is actuated.
- **O:** the airbags were triggered in an accident. → p. 45.

The automatic release allows the rescuer access to the interior of the vehicle.

A vehicle with automatic transmission can only be locked if the selector lever is in the **P** position.

Central locking button

Please note⚠ and ⓘ at the beginning of this chapter on page 65.



Fig. 51 On the driver's door: central locking button.

Legend for → fig. 51:

Unlock the vehicle.

Lock the vehicle.

The central locking button works both with the ignition on and off, only when all doors are closed.

If the vehicle has been locked with the vehicle key, the central locking buttons are deactivated.

If the vehicle is locked from the inside with the central locking key, then:

- The control light on the button lights up yellow, if all doors and the tailgate are closed.
- The burglar alarm system does **not** activate.

The doors can be opened from the inside by pulling the door handle. The control light on the button goes out. Doors that were not opened, such as the tailgate, remain locked.
The door can't be opened from the outside.

COPIA

Close or open the door of driver in case of emergency.

Please note⚠ and ⓘ at the beginning of this chapter on page 65.



Fig. 52 Driver's door handle: locking cylinder covered.

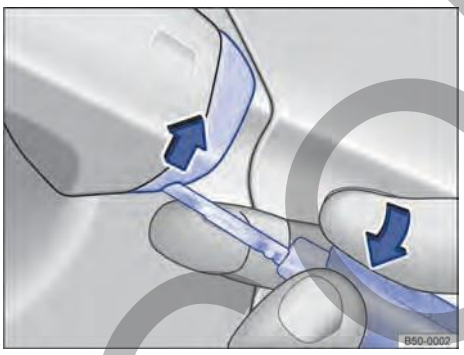


Fig. 53 Driver's door handle: lift the cover.

In manual locking, generally all doors are locked. In manual unlocking, only the driver's door is unlocked. Follow the instructions for the burglar alarm system → page 65.

– Tilt the vehicle key rod outwards → page 61.
– Insert the key blade from below into the cover opening → fig. 52 (arrow).
– Hold your index finger under the key paddle.
– Lift the cover with the vehicle key in the direction of the arrow → fig. 53.
– Insert the paddle of the key into the locking cylinder and unlock or lock the vehicle.
– Pull the door handle and replace the cover.

Special features in the manual release

– The anti-theft alarm system remains activated in the unlocked vehicle. However, no alarm is triggered.
→ p. 70.
– The alarm is triggered 15 seconds after opening the driver's door if there is no valid ignition activation within this period→ p. 70.
– After unlocking, an emergency start is necessary → p. 116.
– When the ignition is switched on, the electronic immobiliser recognises a valid vehicle key and deactivates the anti-theft alarm system.

ⓘ The anti-theft alarm system is activated in the manual locking of the vehicle by means of a manual locking device.
tion of the key→ p. 70.

Lock the front passenger door and the rear doors in case of emergency

Please note⚠ and ⓘ at the beginning of this chapter on page 65.



Fig. 54 At the rear door: emergency locking.

COPIA

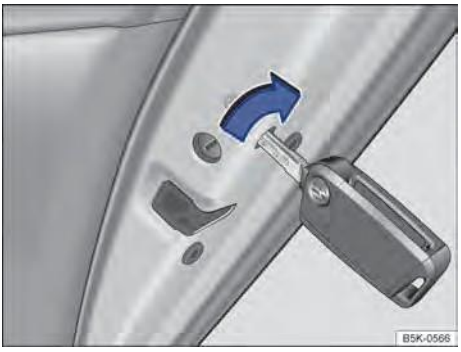


Fig. 55 Emergency locking of the vehicle with the vehicle's key ve.

The front passenger door and the rear doors can be locked manually. This **prevents** the anti-theft alarm system **from** being activated.

– Open the door.
– Insert the key blade into the key slot. → fig. 55 and turn it.
– Close the door.
– Check whether the door is locked.
– If necessary, perform the process on the other doors.
– The vehicle must be checked immediately by a Volkswagen dealer or a specialist company.

By unlocking the vehicle or opening the respective door from the side, the manually locked door can be unlocked again .

The doors can be locked and unlocked from the inside by operating the door handle.

Troubleshooting

Please note⚠ and(!) at the beginning of this chapter on page 65.

Driver's door control light is on permanently

The LED light in the driver's door flashes at short intervals and then stays on for about 30 seconds, then flashes again after this time has elapsed.

There is a deficiency in the locking system.

– Find a Volkswagen dealer or a specialist company.

The doors and the tailgate can be unlocked or locked manually if the vehicle key or central locking system fails → page 68 and → page 73.

Direction indicators do not flash

If the direction indicators *do not* flash to confirm when locking the vehicle:

– At least one of the doors or the back cover is not closed.

The vehicle locks automatically

If one of the following conditions applies, the vehicle locks again automatically after approximately 30 seconds.

– The vehicle was unlocked, but not opened.
– The ignition did not switch on.
– The back cover did not open.

Procedure when locking with a second vehicle key

Keyless Access: The vehicle key inside the vehicle is locked for engine start as soon as the vehicle is locked from the outside with a second vehicle key. Press the ▢ key on the vehicle key inside the vehicle to release it for engine start.
→ p. 112.

Locking the vehicle after an airbag deployment

If the airbags are triggered in an accident, the entire vehicle is unlocked. Depending on the extent of the damage, the vehicle may lock after the accident as follows:

– Switch off the ignition.
– Open and close one of the doors once.
– Remove the key from the vehicle and lock it. → p. 61.
– **Or:** press the central locking button on the driver's door → page 67. ▢

If the vehicle battery or the vehicle key battery is low or discharged, position the vehicle key in the vehicle's battery compartment.

The vehicle may not be unlocked .

COPIA

or locked using Keyless Access. The vehicle can be unlocked or locked manually → p. 68.

Si no se encuentra ninguna llave del vehícu- lo válida en el interior del vehículo, o si no

is recognised, a corresponding message will appear on the display of the combined instrument. This may be the case if the vehicle key is obstructed by another radio signal or if it is covered by an object, e.g. an accessory for mobile devices or an aluminium case.
nio.

Burglar alarm system

The anti-theft alarm system is automatically activated by locking the vehicle with the vehicle key or by touching the door sensor for vehicles with Keyless Access.

The anti-theft alarm system emits audible warning signals for approximately 25 seconds (per event) and visual warning signals for up to five minutes if the following unauthorised actions are performed on the locked vehicle. Depending on the source of the alarm activation and how this source behaves during the activation period, it may happen that the audible warning signals are activated for up to 10 consecutive cycles (per event), where each of these cycles consists of the audible warning signals for approximately 25 seconds, followed by a pause of 5 seconds.

When does the alarm go off?

- Approximately 15 seconds after opening a mechanically unlocked door with the vehicle key, if no valid ignition activation is made during this period.
- Opening of a door.
- Opening the engine compartment cover.
- Opening of the rear cover.
- Switch on the ignition with an invalid vehicle key.
- Opening, breaking or removal of one of the vials.
- Movement in the vehicle, in vehicles with passenger compartment surveillance → p. 70.

Switching off the alarm

- Unlock the vehicle with the unlocking button on the vehicle key.
- **Or:** switch on the ignition with a valid vehicle key. A short alarm may occur, lasting approximately one second:
- In vehicles with Keyless Access, the alarm can also be switched off by pressing the door handle → p. 63.

The alarm will be triggered again if a new alarm occurs after the alarm has been triggered.
encroachment into the same or another protected area.

The burglar alarm system is **not** activated by locking from the inside with the key.
central locking system.

If the driver's door is unlocked mechanically with the key, only the driver's door is unlocked.
The driver's door is unlocked and not the whole vehicle. Only when the ignition is switched on will the central locking button be enabled, after which all doors can be unlocked electrically.

If the vehicle's battery has little or no charge, the anti-theft alarm system will does not work properly.

Monitoring of the passenger compartment



Fig. 56 On the roof console: passenger compartment monitoring sensors (arrows).

COPIA

When movements are detected inside a locked vehicle, and with the alarm system activated, the passenger compartment monitoring will trigger the alarm → fig. 56.

Switching on passenger compartment monitoring

Lock the vehicle. When the anti-theft alarm system is activated, the passenger compartment surveillance is also activated.

Temporarily switch off the passenger compartment monitoring

– Switch on the ignition.
– Deactivate the passenger compartment monitoring in the radio system by means of the button
→ p. 27, *depending on the vehicle version and radio version*.
– Close all doors and the rear cover.
– Lock the vehicle with the vehicle key.

The passenger compartment surveillance is deactivated until the next time the vehicle is locked.

In the following situations, it is advisable to deactivate the passenger compartment monitoring:

– If animals or persons are inside the vehicle.
– If the vehicle needs to be loaded.
– If the vehicle is transported.
– If the vehicle needs to be towed with the axle suspended.
– If the vehicle needs to be placed in an automatic vehicle wash system.

Risks of alarm failure

The passenger compartment monitoring only works when the vehicle is completely closed. Observe the legal regulations. An alarm failure may occur in the following situations:

– When one or more panes of glass or the sunroof are open, in whole or in part.
– When easily movable objects, e.g. loose sheets of paper or ornaments on the mirror (aromatisers) remain in the vehicle.
– By means of the vibration alarm of a mobile phone in the vehicle.

Permanent deactivation of the passenger compartment monitoring is not possible:

If, when the burglar alarm system is activated, the doors or the back cover are still in place, the doors or the back cover are still

If the doors are open, only the burglar alarm system will be activated. Only after the doors or the tailgate have been closed will the anti-theft alarm system also be activated.
lancia from the passenger compartment.

Tailgate

Introduction to the topic

The rear lid is locked and unlocked together with the doors.

WARNING

Improper and inattentive unlocking, opening or closing of the back cover can lead to accidents and serious injuries.

- Only open or close the back cover when there is nothing or nobody within its opening radius.
- Under no circumstances should the rear cover be closed with your hand on the rear window. The window may splinter and cause injury.
- After closing the tailgate, check that it is properly closed and locked so that it cannot be opened while driving. The closed tailgate must be aligned with the body parts.
- Always keep the rear lid closed when driving to prevent toxic fumes from entering the vehicle.
- Never open the rear cover when there is cargo attached to it, e.g. bicycles. An open tailgate can be lowered by additional weight. If necessary, support the tailgate or remove the load beforehand.
- Close and lock the tailgate and all doors when the vehicle is not in use. Ensure that no one remains inside the vehicle.
- Never leave children unattended while playing in or near the vehicle, especially when the tailgate is open. Children can get into the luggage compartment, close the rear lid and become trapped. Depending on the season, it may be possible to have

COPIA

very high or very low temperatures inside an enclosed vehicle, which can cause serious injury and illness, mainly in young children, or death.

- Never leave children or persons with special needs unattended inside the vehicle. Activating the central locking button may lock the vehicle doors from the inside, making it difficult or impossible to get out. Locked persons can be exposed to very high or very low temperatures.

NOTICE

Before opening the rear cover, check whether there is enough space to open and close the cover.

NOTICE

Never use the rear window wiper or rear spoiler for securing load material or for fastening. This can cause damage and the rear window wiper or rear spoiler can be torn off as a result.

Opening and closing the back cover

Please note⚠ and ⓘ at the beginning of this chapter on page 71.



Fig. 57 On the rear cover: button for opening the rear cover.



Fig. 58 Rear cover open: cavities (arrows) for pull and close.

If, for example, a bicycle is mounted in the luggage compartment of the tailgate, the tailgate cannot be opened →⚠ . Before opening the tailgate, always remove luggage from the luggage compartment and support the open tailgate.

Open the back cover

– To unlock the tailgate, press the button on the vehicle key.
– To open the tailgate, press the key. → fig. 57 and raise the tailgate.

Close the back cover

– Pull the tailgate downwards firmly through the recess in the interior trim → fig. 58 so that it engages in the lock. →⚠ .

In case of locked doors, the rear flap is also locked.

A display on the combined instrument → p. 19 shows when the cover is not properly closed.

The tailgate locks automatically during driving.

⚠

WARNING

Incorrect or inattentive unlocking or opening of the back cover can cause serious injury.

- With a luggage compartment mounted on the lid plus the load, the rear lid may sometimes not be perceived as being unlocked. An unlocked tailgate can suddenly open during con- duction.

COPIA

⚠ WARNING

Incorrect or unattended closing of the back cover can cause serious injury.

- When closing the rear cover, move your hand away from the opening radius of the rear cover in good time.

If after unlocking, the back cover is not opened within a few minutes, it will lock. automatically.

Emergency opening of the rear tailgate

Please note⚠ and ⓘ at the beginning of this chapter on page 71.

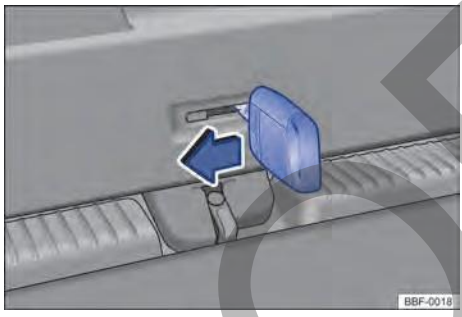


Fig. 59 In the luggage compartment: Unlock the rear lid.

– Fold the rear seat backrest forwards → page 79.
– Remove the luggage volumes to reach the back cover from the inside.
– Tilt the vehicle key rod outwards → page 61.
– Insert the key blade into the tailgate opening → fig. 59 and move the lever. in the direction of the arrow.

Troubleshooting

Please note⚠ and ⓘ at the beginning of this chapter on page 71.

Cannot open or close the back cover

Check if the back cover is blocked by an obstacle. The back cover can be moved by hand. To do this you will need to apply a force major.

Glass

Opening or closing the windows

The buttons are located on the doors → p. 9.

Open the glass: press the button. Close the glass: pull the button.

Press to deactivate the buttons on the rear door power windows.

After the engine has been switched off, the windows can still be opened or closed with the door buttons for a short time as long as the driver's door or front passenger door is not opened.

Automatic closing and opening function

The automatic close/open function allows the windows to be opened and closed completely. In this way, it is not necessary to hold down the corresponding button on the electric window.

Automatic closing function: press the corresponding window button upwards to the second position.

Automatic opening function: press the corresponding window button downwards to the second position.

To stop the automatic course: press or press the button of the corresponding window again.

Comfort opening and closing

With the ignition off, the windows can be opened and closed with the vehicle key :

COPIA

– Press and hold down the unlocking key ▢ or locking ▢ on the vehicle key. See open or close all electric windows.
– *Opening in vehicles with Keyless Access keyless locking and starting system:* push the door handle and press and hold the sensor on the inside of the door handle and the sensor surface at the same time. → p. 64.
– *Locking in vehicles with Keyless Access keyless locking system and start:* hold your finger on the sensor surface of the door handle → p. 64 for a few seconds to lock the door until the windows are blinded → p. 64 rren.
– To stop the functions, release the unlock key or the lock key **OR** remove your finger from the sensor surface.

For this purpose, a valid vehicle key must be present in the approach area. If all windows and the glass roof are closed, the direction indicator lights will flash *once* as confirmation.

Depending on the vehicle version and the radio version, different settings can be made in the radio system via the ▢ keypad for the window control. → p. 27.

⚠

Inattentive use of power-operated windows can cause serious injuries.

- Open or close the electric windows only when there is nothing or nobody at their function button.
- No one should remain inside the vehicle when the doors are locked, especially children and people with special needs.
- Always take all vehicle keys with you when leaving the vehicle. After the engine has been switched off, the windows can still be opened or closed with the door buttons for a short time as long as the driver's or front passenger door is not opened.
- When transporting children in the rear seat, always deactivate the electric rear windows with the safety button so that they cannot be opened or closed.

NOTICE

With the windows open, rain can wet the internal finish of the vehicle and cause damage to the vehicle.

When there is a malfunction of the electric glazing, the sub-automatic function shall be activated.

The automatic lowering and lowering and the anti-hurry function do not work properly. Please contact a Volkswagen dealer or a company that has specialised.

Anti-pinch function of glasses

The anti-trap function of the power windows can reduce the risk of injury due to trapping when closing the windows.

If the automatic closing process of a window is affected by the difficulty of movement or by an obstacle, the glass will open immediately →⚠ .

– Check why the window could not be closed.
– Try closing the window again.
– After repeated activation of the anti-trap function, the automatic window up function may become inoperative.
– If you are still unable to close the sale, please contact a Volkswagen dealer or a specialist company.

Closing the glass without a force limiter

– Try to close the glass again within a few seconds by holding down the button. **The force limiter is thus deactivated for a reduced function button of the closing course!**
– If the closing process takes longer than a few seconds, the anti-trapping function is reactivated. In the event of an obstruction or an obstacle, the glass is automatically opened again.
– If you are still unable to close the sale, please contact a Volkswagen dealer or a specialised company.

COPIA

⚠ WARNING

Closing the windows with the electric windows without the anti-trap function can cause serious injury.

- Always close the windows with the electric windows and pay attention.
- No one should ever remain at the function button of the electric windows, especially when they are closed without the anti-crushing function.
- The pinch-proof function does not prevent fingers or other body parts from being pinched against the window frame and thus causing injuries.

The anti-trap function also works with the comfort locking of the windows.
The vehicle's key is used to unlock the vehicle.

Troubleshooting

Reset the automatic closing and opening function of the windows.

If the vehicle's battery was disconnected or discharged with the windows not fully closed or, even after a few activations of the anti-trap function, the automatic locking/unlocking function is deactivated and must be reset:

– Switch on the ignition.
– Close all windows and doors.
– Press the appropriate window button upwards and hold it in this position for a few seconds.
– Release the button and pull it back up as far as it will go. The automatic closing and opening function is ready for use.

It is possible to reset the automatic electric windows individually or for several panes of glass if
multaneously.

Panoramic sunroof

Opening/closing the panoramic sunroof

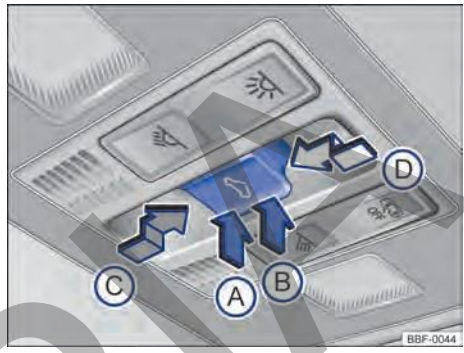


Fig. 60 On the roof lining: buttons for the sunroof and sun protection curtain.

Depending on the vehicle version, the panoramic sunroof may not be available.

The panoramic sunroof is a roof opening system consisting of two glass elements. The window element is fixed and has no opening function.

Parallel to the sunroof, the sunblind opens automatically if the sunblind is in front of the sunroof. The sunblind can only be opened and closed completely if the sunroof is closed.

Thekey ▢ has two levels. **First level:** raises, opens or closes the roof completely or partially. **Second level:** automatically moves the roof to the corresponding end position. The automatic travel can be interrupted by pressing the button again.

Raising, opening and closing the panoramic sunroof

– *Raise the sunroof:* press the key.

→ fig. 60 (B) to the first level. Tour automatic: press the second (B) to the se- level key.

– *To close the raised sunroof:* press the key (A) to the first level. Auto-travel Press the key until the second (A) key until the second level.

COPY

– *Open the sunroof*: press the key Ⓒ to the first level. Automatic travel to the comfort position: press the key the Ⓒ to second level.
– *Close the sunroof*: press the key Ⓓ to the first level. Automatic travel: press the key Ⓓ key to the second level.
– *To stop the automatic opening or closing procedure:* press again. the Ⓒ o Ⓓ. key

⚠ WARNING

Inattentive or uncontrolled use of the sunroof can lead to accidents and serious injuries.

- Open or close the sunroof only when no one is at the function button.
- Always take all vehicle keys with you when leaving the vehicle.
- Never leave children or persons with special needs inside the vehicle, especially when they have access to the vehicle key. Uncontrolled use of the vehicle key can lock the vehicle, start the engine, switch on the ignition and activate the sunroof.
- After switching off the ignition, the sunroof can still be opened or closed for some time, as long as the driver's or front passenger door is not opened.

NOTICE

- In order to avoid damage, at low temperatures, it is de-
  Ice and snow must be removed before opening or lifting the sunroof.
- Always close the sunroof before leaving the vehicle and when it rains. If the sunroof is open, rain can enter the interior of the vehicle and damage the electrical system. Other damage to the vehicle may also occur.
- To prevent damage to the sunroof, the roof should preferably be opened or closed when the vehicle is stationary.

Leaves and other loose objects must be removed from the sunroof rails in an orderly manner.
manually or with a hoover.

With a malfunction of the roof the anti-jamming function does not works properly. Find a specialised company.

Comfort opening/closing of the panoramic sunroof

Comfort opening and closing

The sunroof can be opened and closed from the outside using the vehicle key:

– Press and hold down the unlock or lock button on the vehicle key. The sunroof is raised or closed.
– *In vehicles with Keyless Access keyless locking and start system:* In vehicles with Keyless Access: hold your finger for a few seconds on the locking sensor surface of the door handle until the sunroof is closed → p. 64.
– Release the unlocking or locking button to interrupt the function.

In comfort locking mode, all door windows and the sunroof are closed. If all the windows and the sunroof are closed, the direction indicator lamps flash.
once, as confirmation.

Panoramic sunroof's anti-trap function

The anti-pinch function reduces the risk of crush injuries →⚠ . As soon as the sunroof is blocked during closing, the sunroof opens again immediately.

– Check that the sunroof does not close.
– Try closing it again.
– If you cannot close the sunroof, close the roof. solar cho without the anti-glare function.

COPIA

Close the sunroof without anti-trap function

– Press the key ▢ key until the second nivel → fig. 60Ⓓ, until the glass roof is completely closed.
– **Now the sunroof closes without the anti-trapping function!**
– If you still cannot close the sunroof, contact a specialist company.

If the switch is released during the closing procedure, the sunroof opens automatically.

WARNING

Closing the sunroof without the anti-curtain function can result in serious injury.

- Always close the sunroof carefully.
- No one should remain on the function button of the sunroof, especially if the blind is operated without the anti-rush function .
- The anti-pinch function does not prevent fingers or other body parts from getting trapped against the ceiling frame and thus causing injury.

The anti-pinch function also occurs in the comfort locking of the windows.
and of the sunroof with the vehicle key.

Troubleshooting

Sunroof does not close

– The sunroof operates only when the ignition is switched on. After switching off the ignition, the sunroof can still be opened or closed for some time as long as the driver's or front passenger door is not opened.
– If the sunroof cannot be closed electrically, the sunroof must be closed manually. Emergency closing of the sunroof is not possible without removing vehicle parts. Find a dealer Volkswagen or a specialised company.

Steering wheel

Adjust the position of the steering wheel

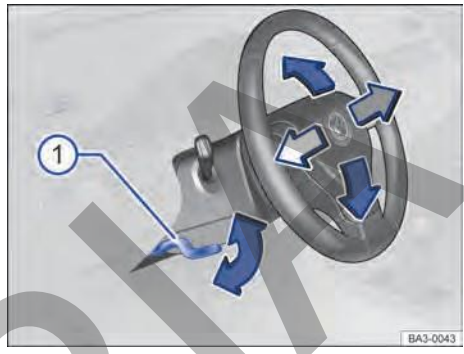


Fig. 61 Below and to the left of the steering wheel together with the steering column cover: steering wheel position adjustment lever.

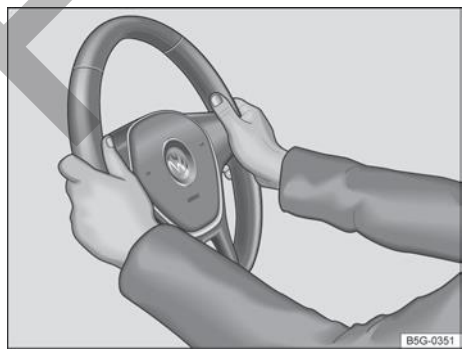


Fig. 62 On the handwheel: position 9 and 3 o'clock.

Adjust the steering wheel position before driving and only when the vehicle is stationary →⚠ .

– Push the lever down by holding it by its handle → fig. 61 1 .
– Set the correct distance between the driver and the steering wheel → page 33 using the driver's seat control → page 79.
– Adjust the position of the steering wheel so that you can hold it laterally at the outer edge *in the 9 o'clock and 3 o'clock positions* → fig. 62 with both hands and arms slightly bent.
– Push the lever firmly by holding it by its handle upwards until it is positioned in the "up" position.
The handwheel is locked →⚠ .

COPY

⚠ WARNING

- Always push lever (1) firmly upwards by its handle after adjustment to lock the position of the handwheel.
- Never adjust the steering wheel while driving. If it becomes apparent that adjustment is necessary while driving, stop the vehicle safely and then adjust the steering wheel position.
- Failure to comply with the above-mentioned precautions compromises the steering movement of the driver.
- The steering wheel should be positioned in the direction of the thorax (and not towards the face), in order to maximise the efficiency of the protection provided by the airbag in the event of an accident.
- When driving, always hold the steering wheel with both hands laterally at the *outer* edge in *the 9 o'clock and 3 o'clock position* → Fig. 62 to reduce injuries caused by the driver's front air bag being triggered.
- Never hold the steering wheel in the 12 o'clock position or other positions where the arms are over the airbag, as this can cause injury to the arms and hands in the event of an accident due to the airbag bursting.
- Ignoring the above-mentioned precautions has a direct influence on the protection of the driver in the event of a frontal collision of the vehicle.

Seats and head restraints

Front seat

Introduction to the topic

The adjustment options for the front seats are described below. Always check whether the seat position is correctly adjusted → page 32.

⚠ WARNING

Before every journey, always adjust the seat, seat belt and head restraints correctly, making sure that all passengers have their seat belts correctly positioned.

- Push the passenger seat as far back as possible.
- Adjust the driver's seat so that there is a minimum distance of 25 cm between the thorax and the centre of the steering wheel. Adjust the driver's seat longitudinally so that the pedals can be fully operated with the legs only slightly bent and the distance between the knee area and the instrument panel is at least 10 cm. If this requirement cannot be fulfilled due to physical conditions, special installations must be carried out by a Volkswagen dealer.
- Never drive with the seat backrest tilted too far back. The more the seat backrest is tilted backwards, the greater the risk of injury due to incorrect positioning of the seat belt webbing and incorrect posture.
- Never drive with the seatback tilted forward. An activated front airbag can throw the seatback backwards and injure rear seat passengers.
- Adopt and maintain the greatest possible distance from the steering wheel and instrument panel.
- Always sit upright with your back against the back of the seat in the front seat, in the front seats correctly

COPIA

fitted. Do not place any part of the body directly or in close proximity to the airbag location.

- For rear seat passengers, the risk of serious injury increases if they do not sit upright, as the seat belts would not be positioned correctly.

⚠ WARNING

Incorrect seat adjustment can cause accidents and serious injuries.

- Only adjust the seats when the vehicle is at a standstill, otherwise the seats may move out of place unexpectedly while driving, which could lead to loss of control of the vehicle. The incorrect seating position is also adopted during adjustment.
- Only adjust the height, tilt and longitudinal di- rection of the front seats when there is no one in the seat adjustment area.
- The adjustment area of the front seats must not be restricted by objects.

Mechanically adjust the front seat

Please note⚠ at the beginning of this chapter on page 78.



Fig. 63 On the front seat: commands.

All possible commands are described below. The number of commands may vary depending on the version of the seat.

Adjusting the seating position

Legend for → fig. 63:

1. Operate the lever to adjust the lumbar support.
2. Actuate the lever and adjust the backrest inclination until the desired position of the seat backrest is reached. Release the lever to fix the seat backrest.
3. *On the driver's seat only*, move the lever several times, if necessary, up or down, to adjust the seat height.
4. Pull the lever to move the driver's seat forwards or backwards until it reaches the desired position. Release the lever and make sure that the seat has locked.
5. *On the front passenger seat only*, lift the lever in the direction of the arrow. cha 5 and, move the backrest forward. When returning to the normal position, make sure that the seat backrest is correctly locked in this position.

The backrest of the front passenger seat can be folded down and locked in one position.

horizontal position. When transporting objects on the folded front passenger seat, the front passenger frontal airbag must be in a horizontal position.
be offline → p. 47.

Rear seats

Introduction to the topic

The adjustment possibilities of the rear seat are described below. Make sure that the seat position is correctly adjusted.
→ p. 32.

COPIA

Rear bench

There are fixing bushes on the rear bench seat which hold the bench seat correctly and securely in place. If the bench seat is removed, the fixing bushes may be damaged and must be replaced.

Volkswagen does not recommend that you dismantle the bench seat or replace the fastening sleeves. To do so, please contact a Volkswagen Dealer.

⚠ WARNING

The rear bench seat when not properly secured can cause serious injury.

- Make sure that the seat belt is not jammed or damaged on the rear bench seat.
- If the rear bench seat is not securely locked, persons or children must not be transported on it.

⚠ WARNING

Incorrect adjustment of the rear seat can cause accidents and serious injuries.

- Only adjust the rear seat when the vehicle is at a standstill, otherwise it may shift out of place unexpectedly while driving. Also, an incorrect posture is adopted during adjustment.
- Only adjust the rear seat if there is no one in the adjustment area of the rear seat.

NOTICE

When the rear seat is folded forward, objects can enter the space between the seat and the luggage compartment floor. Before folding the rear seat backwards, remove any objects from the space in between.

Fold the backrest of the rear seat forward or backward

Please note⚠ and ⓘ at the beginning of this chapter on page 80.

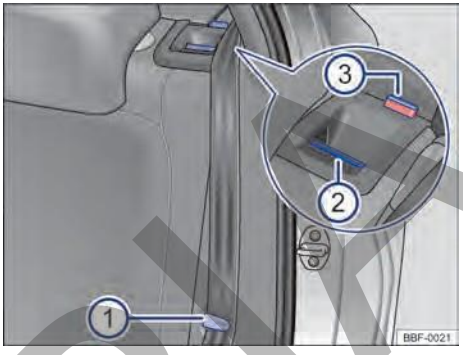


Fig. 64 On the rear seat backrest: unlocking button.

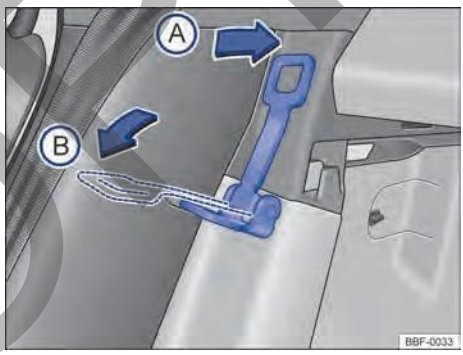


Fig. 65 Rear of the rear seat: Lever for adjusting the backrest inclination

The rear seat backrest is split. Each part of the rear seat backrest can be folded forward individually to enlarge the luggage compartment.

Fold the rear seat forward

– Fit the belt straps into the respective slots in the side trim.
→ fig. 64 ①
– Push the head restraint all the way towards the headrest. bottom → p. 82.

COPY

– Pull the unlocking button → fig. 64 (2) forwards and at the same time fold the rear seat backrest forwards.
– The backrest part of the rear seat is unlocked when the red marking → fig. 64 (3) is visible.

Fold the rear seat back

– Fold the rear seat backrest backwards and press the lock firmly until it engages securely →⚠.
– The red mark → fig. 64 (3) can no longer be visible.
– The rear seat backrest must be securely fitted to ensure protection of the seat belts in the rear seats.
– Loosen the belts of the positioner belts.

Rear seat backrest tilt adjustment

The rear seat backrest can be adjusted to extend the luggage compartment.

Before the rear seat backrest is folded back, the inclination can be adjusted.

– **Position** (A): move the lever → fig. 65 in the direction of arrow A (to) return the seat backrest to its original position.
– **Position** (B): move the lever → fig. 65 in the direction of arrow B , (to) extend the maletero.

⚠ WARNING

Folding the rear seatback forward or backward in an uncontrolled or inattentive manner can cause serious injury.

- When folding the rear seat backrest forward, always make sure that there are no persons or animals in the area of the rear seat backrest.
- Never fold the rear seat backrest forwards or backwards when the vehicle is in motion.
- Make sure that the seat belt is not caught or damaged when the rear seat backrest is folded back.
- Always keep hands, fingers, feet and other body parts at a distance when folding the rear seat backrest forwards or backwards.
- The rear seat backrest must be securely fitted to ensure that the seat belts in the rear seat are protected. This applies mainly to the centre position of the rear seat. If a seat is occupied and the corresponding rear seat backrest is not securely engaged, the occupant will be pushed forward with the rear seat backrest in the event of sudden steering and braking manoeuvres and in the event of an accident.
- Red marking 3 indicates a rear seat backrest that is not engaged. Always check that the (3) red mark is not visible when the rear seat backrest is in the upright position.
- If the backrest of the rear seat is folded forward or is not properly secured, neither adults nor children shall be allowed to ride in the corresponding seats.
- Only fit the child seat with the rear seat in the original position.

NOTICE

Uncontrolled or inattentive tipping of the rear seat backrest forwards or backwards can cause serious injury.

- Before folding the rear seat backrest forward, always adjust the front seats so that the head restraint or the upholstery of the rear seat backrest does not rest on the front seats.
- When folding the rear seat backrest forward, always make sure that there are no objects in the rear seat backrest folding area.

Volkswagen recommends not to mount the child seat in the rear seat of the vehicle in the position (B) → fig. 65.

BORA

Headrest

Introduction to the topic

The possibilities for adjustment and extension of the head restraints are described below. Try to ensure that the correct posture is adjusted. → p. 32.

All seats are equipped with the head restraint. The rear centre head restraint is only intended for the centre of the rear seat. Therefore, do not mount the head restraint in other positions.

Correct adjustment of the head restraint

Adjust the head restraint so that its upper edge is preferably in line with the top of the head - but not below eye level. Position the back of the head as close as possible to the headrest.

Head restraint adjustment for low persons

Push the head restraint down as far as it will go, even if the head is below the upper edge of the head restraint. In lower positions there may be a small gap between the head restraint and the seat backrest.

Adjustment of the head restraint for tall people

Push the head restraint up to the seat.

⚠ WARNING

Driving with head restraints removed or incorrectly adjusted increases the risk of serious or fatal injury in the event of accidents and sudden steering and braking manoeuvres.

- Always drive with the head restraints correctly installed and adjusted, if there is a person in the seat.
- Each occupant should adjust the head restraint correctly for his or her height in order to reduce the risk of neck injuries in the event of an accident. At the same time, the upper edge of the head restraint should preferably be in line with the top of the head - but not below the top of the head eye level. Position the rear part of the head as close as possible to the head restraint.
- Never adjust the head restraint while driving.

ⓘ NOTICE

When removing and fitting the head restraints, make sure that they do not hit the roof lining or the front seat backrest. Otherwise, the roof lining and other parts of the vehicle may be damaged .

Adjusting the head restraint

Please note⚠ and ⓘ at the beginning of this chapter on page 82.

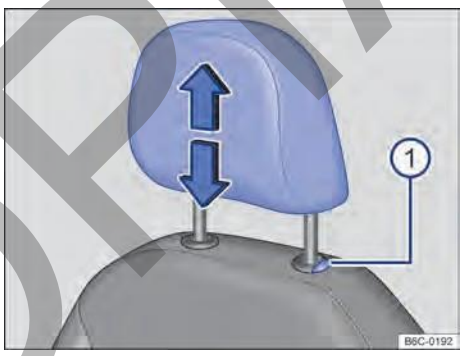


Fig. 66 Front head restraint: adjust.

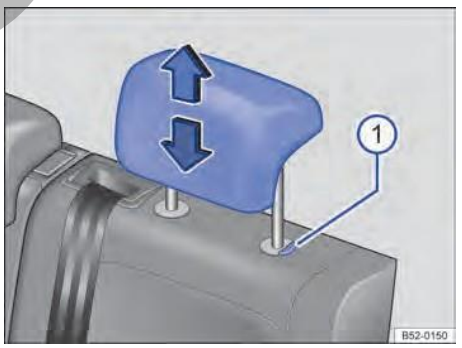


Fig. 67 Rear head restraint: adjust.

COPIA

Adjusting the height of the head restraint

- Move the head restraint up or down, in the direction of the arrow, by pressing button → fig. 66 (1) o → fig. 67 (1) press-do → ⚠in *Introduction to the topic* on p. 82.
- The head restraint must be securely locked in place.
  position.

Assembly and disassembly of headrest

Please note⚠ and(!) at the beginning of this chapter on page 82.

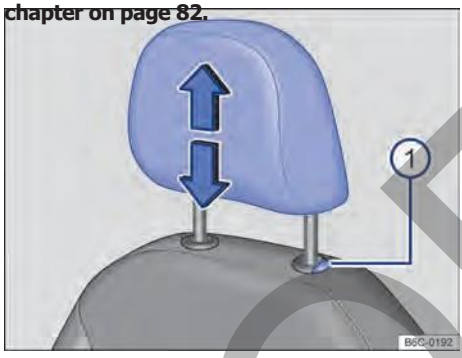


Fig. 68 Front head restraint: remove.

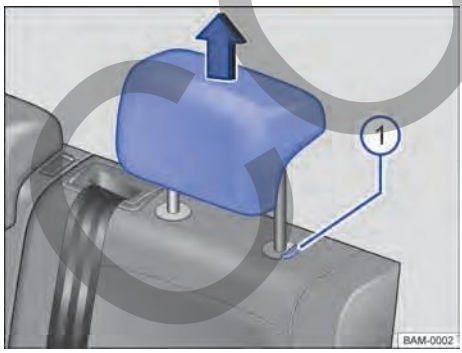


Fig. 69 Rear head restraints: remove.

Removing the front head restraint

– Push the head restraint all the way up → ⚠in *Introduction to the topic* on p. 82.
– Remove the head restraint with the button → (1) fig. 68 pressed down.

Front head restraint mounting

- Position the head restraint correctly by means of its guides and place it in the head restraint guides. respective seat back.
- Push the head restraint all the way down. button → fig. 68 (1) pressed.

– Adjust the head restraints according to the correct seating position.

Uninstalling the rear head restraint

– If necessary, adjust the seat backrest so that the head restraint can be removed.
– Push the head restraint all the way up → ⚠in *Introduction to the topic* of p. 82.
– Remove the head restraint with the button → (1) fig. 69 pressed down.

Installing the rear head restraint

– Unlock the rear seat backrest and fold it slightly forward → page 79.
– Position the head restraint correctly by means of its guides and place it in the guides of the respective seat backrest.
– Push down the head restraint with the button → fig. 69(1) pressed.
– Carefully tilt the rear seat backrest back and secure it in place.
– Adjust the head restraints to the correct seating position → page 82.

Seat functions

Central armrest

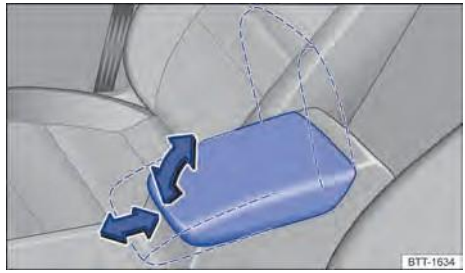


Fig. 70 Front centre armrest.

COPY

Front centre armrest

To *lift*, gradually pull up the central armrest in the direction of the arrow.
→ fig. 70.

To *lower*, pull the centre armrest downwards.

The front centre armrest can restrict the freedom of movement of the driver's arms and thus cause accidents and serious injuries.

- Always keep the storage compartment in the centre armrest closed when driving.
- Never carry a person or child on the centre armrest. This incorrect seating position can cause serious injury.

Lighting

Direction indicators

Switching the direction indicators on and off

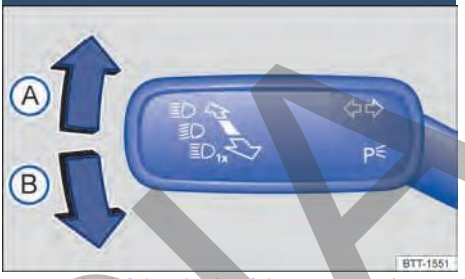


Fig. 71 On the left-hand side of the steering column: Lever for direction indicator and headlamp al- to.

– Switch on the ignition.
– Move the direction indicator and high beam lever from the centre position to the next position:

Ⓐ Blink right .
Ⓑ Blink left .

– Move the direction indicator and high beam lever to the basic position to switch off the direction indicators.

If the audible signal does not sound when the warning indicator is switched on, seek out a Volkswagen dealer or a specialist company and have the vehicle checked.

Flashing comfort signals

To switch on the flashing con- fort signals, move the direction indicator and high beam lever up or down only as far as the pressure point and release it. The direction indicators flash 3 times.

To end the comfort flashing signals before the time, move the lever immediately to the pressure point, in reverse direction, and

COPIA

Depending on the vehicle version and the radio version, the comfort flasher signals can be activated or deactivated in the radio system by pressing the button ▢ → p. 27.

⚠ WARNING

Improper use or non-use of the direction indicators, as well as forgetting to turn them off, can confuse other drivers. This can lead to accidents and serious injuries.

- Lane changes, overtaking manoeuvres and turns must always be signalled in good time by means of direction indicators.
- Turn off the direction indicators after changing lanes, passing or turning.

The warning lights also work when the engine is switched off → page 59.

When a direction indicator fails on the vehicle, the control light flashes approximately every second. twice as fast.

Driving lights

Switching lights on and off



Fig. 72 Next to the steering wheel: light switch (one variant).

Observe the country-specific legal regulations for the use of vehicle lighting.

Switch on the lights

– Switch on the ignition.
– Turn the light switch to the appropriate position:

Automatic driving lamp operation: The driving lamps are switched on and off automatically according to the brightness and weather conditions →⚠, → p. 86.

Position light on. The symbol on the light switch lights up green.

Low lantern lit.

Switching off the lights

– Switch off the ignition.
– Turn the light switch to the appropriate position:

The lights are off.

The "Leaving home" function (orientation lighting) can be switched on. → p. 88.

Position light on. The symbol on the light switch lights up green.

Low beam off - while the vehicle key is inserted in the ignition or, on vehicles with Keyless Access, the driver's door is closed, the position light remains on.

Daytime running light

Equipment-dependent daytime running lights can increase the visibility of your vehicle in urban traffic during the day.

The daytime running light will come on each time the ignition is switched on, when the light switch is in the position , or (with recognised brightness), as long as the fog lamp is activated.

The daytime running light cannot be switched on or off manually.

⚠ WARNING

Accidents and serious injuries can happen if the road is not sufficiently lit and the vehicle is difficult to see or not seen by other drivers.

COPIA

- Lighting assistants only help, the driver is responsible for the correct activation of the vehicle lighting.
- Always turn on the low beacon in darkness, fog or poor visibility.

WARNING

The position light is not taut enough to illuminate the road and be seen by other drivers.

- Always turn on the low beacon in darkness, fog or poor visibility.
- The rear lamps are not switched on together with the daytime running lamps. A vehicle without the rear lamps on may not be seen by other drivers in darkness, rain or poor visibility conditions.

The automatic driving lamp control () switches the low beam on and off only when there are changes in brightness.

- Turn on the low beam headlamp manually in special weather conditions, e.g. when it is foggy.

Switching the lantern and the fog lamp on and off

Depending on the vehicle version, the fog lamp may not be available.

The fog lamp can be switched on with the ignition on and the light switch in the positions , position lights and headlight under :

– **Switching on the fog lamp :** Pull the light switch outwards → Fig. 72 to the first slot. The control light lights up green on the switch.
– **Switching on the fog light :** Pull the light switch outwards → Fig. 72 to the second slot. The control light lights up green on the switch.
– To turn off the fog lights, press the light switch in or turn the light switch to the left or right.
to .

Functions of the lights

Position light

When the light switch is in the position , the two headlamps with the position light, parts of the rear light cluster, the number plate illumination and the buttons on the centre console and the buttons on the instrument panel are switched on.

Automatic driving light control

The automatic driving light control is merely an aid, so it cannot sufficiently re-cognise all driving situations.

With the automatic driving light control in operation, the low beam headlamps and headlamps are switched on automatically when the twilight sensor detects that the environment outside the vehicle is dimly lit, e.g. when driving through a tunnel during the day or after dark. When the vehicle is driving in bright sunlight, with the light switch in the position , the low beam and headlamps are automatically switched on by the power unit. And the daytime running light will be switched on.

Cornering light

The cornering light comes on automatically during slow turns or tight bends. The cornering light is integrated into the fog lamp and is only switched on at low speeds of approx. 40 km/h.

When reverse gear is engaged, the turn signal can be switched on on both sides of the vehicle during the manoeuvre.

Audible alerts for lights not turned off

If the vehicle key is removed from the ignition lock and the driver's door is opened, audible alerts will sound in the following conditions:

– light switch to the position or .

With the "Coming Home" function activated, when the driver's door is opened, no audible alert sounds to indicate that the light is still on. is on.

COPIA

Switching the high lantern on and off

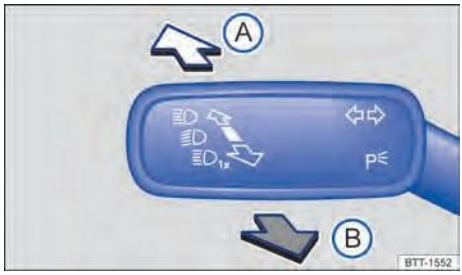


Fig. 73 On the left-hand side of the steering column: Lever for direction indicator and headlamp al- to.

– Switch on the ignition and the low beam.
– Move the direction indicator and high beam lever from the centre position to the next position:

Ⓐ High lantern lit.
Ⓑ Activate the light signal or turn off the high beam. The *flashing* remains on when the lever is pulled.

When the high-beam headlamps are switched on or when giving a light signal, the blue control lamp lights up on the combined instrument panel.

⚠ WARNING

A high regulated headlamp and improper use of the high beam can distract and obstruct the vision of other drivers. This can lead to accidents and serious injuries.

- Make sure that the lantern is correctly adjusted.
- Never use the high beam or flashing headlight as it may dazzle other drivers.

Switching the parking light on and off

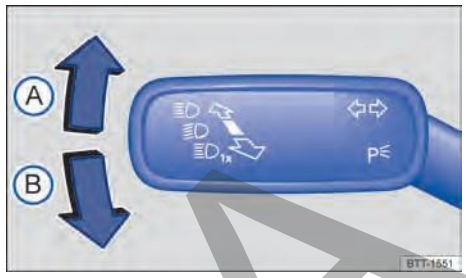


Fig. 74 On the left-hand side of the steering column: Lever for direction indicator and headlamp al- to.

The parking light may not be available for some countries.

Unilateral parking lights

When the parking lamp is switched on, the headlamp with position lamp and partial fields of the rear optical unit are lit on the respective side of the vehicle:

– Switch off the ignition.
– Move the indicator and high beam lever from the centre position to the following position→ fig. 74:

Ⓐ Right-hand parking light on.
Ⓑ Left parking light on.

- Move the indicator and high beam lever to the basic position to switch off the turn signals.

The parking light can only be activated when the ignition is switched off and if the ignition is switched off and the parking light is on.
the direction indicators and the main beam are switched on.

The valve is located in the central position before actuation.

Permanent parking light on both sides

When the permanent parking light is switched on on both sides, the position lights in both headlamps illuminate, as well as partial areas of the rear light clusters :

COPIA

– With the ignition on, turn the light switch to the position.
– Switch off the ignition.
– Lock the vehicle from the outside.

Automatic switching off of parking light or parking light

The vehicle recognises if the 12 V vehicle battery is low and switches off the position light or parking light in time for the engine to start, but at least after two hours.

If the battery capacity is not sufficient for two hours of position light or parking light, the vehicle's 12 V battery can be discharged to the point where it can no longer start the engine → ⚠ .

⚠

If the parked vehicle is not sufficiently illuminated and cannot be seen by other road users, serious accidents and injuries can occur.

- Always stop the vehicle in a safe and well-lit manner and comply with country-specific legal requirements.
- If illumination of the vehicle is required for several hours, switch on the right or left parking lamp if possible. The illumination time of the parking lamp on one side is usually twice as long as that of the permanent parking lamp on both sides.

Coming Home" and "Leaving Home" function (outdoor orientation lighting)

With the orientation lights, the area near the vehicle is illuminated when exiting ("Coming Ho- me") and when entering the vehicle ("Leaving Ho- me"). For vehicles with light and rain sensors, the "Leaving Home" function is automatically controlled in turn.

When the "Coming Home" or "Leaving Home" function is activated, the low beam and the position light are switched on as exterior orientation lighting.

Depending on the vehicle version and the radio version, the duration of the timed illumination time can be set in the radio system by pressing the key. button in the menu **Vehicle** and function **settings**, activated or deactivated → p. 27:

Switching on the "Coming Home" function

– Switch off the ignition.
– Activate the light signal for about one second.

The "Coming Home" lighting comes on when the driver's door is opened. *The timed lighting time* starts when the last vehicle door or tailgate is closed.

Switching off the "Coming Home" function

– Automatically after the set timed lighting time has elapsed.
– **O:** automatically if a vehicle door or the tailgate remains open for approx. 30 seconds after it has been switched on.
– **O:** turn the light switch to the position.
– **O:** switch on the ignition.

Switching on the "Leaving Home" function

– Unlock the vehicle when the light switch is in the position and the rain/light sensor detects *darkness*.

Switching off the "Leaving Home" function

– Automatically after the timed lighting time has elapsed.
– **O:** lock the vehicle.
– **O:** turn the light switch to the position.
– **Or:** switch on the ignition.

COPIA

Headlamp range adjustment



Fig. 75 On the side of the steering wheel: headlamp range adjustment switch.

The headlamp range setting may not be available for some countries.

With the headlamp range adjustment, the dipped beam can be adjusted to the load conditions of the vehicle. This gives the driver the best possible visibility conditions without dazzling oncoming traffic.

Depending on the vehicle version, the headlamp range can be adjusted using the switch → fig. 75.

Front seats occupied and boot empty.

All seats occupied and the boot empty.

All seats occupied and the boot loaded.

Only the driver's seat is occupied and the boot is fully loaded.

Automatic headlamp range adjustment

Depending on vehicle version and countries, automatic headlamp range adjustment may not be available.

The headlamp range is automatically adapted to the loading conditions of the vehicle when the headlamp is switched on →⚠.

⚠

A burnt out or incorrect operation of the automatic headlamp range adjustment can cause headlamp glare and dis- taint other road users. This can cause accidents and serious injuries.

- Have the headlamp range adjustment checked immediately by a Volkswagen dealer or a specialist company.

Masking or changing the position of the lantern

When driving in countries where the direction of travel is different from the country of origin, the asymmetrical low beam headlamp can dazzle oncoming vehicles. For this reason, it is necessary to mask or change the position of the headlamp on international journeys.

If necessary, mask certain areas of the lantern with film or have the lantern repositioned by a specialist company. Further information can be obtained from a specialist company. Volkswagen recommends the Volkswagen Dealers for this.

The use of stickers on the lantern is only permitted for short periods of time.
po. Contact a specialist company for a permanent conversion. Volkswagen recommends the following Volkswagen dealers for this purpose Volkswagen.

Troubleshooting

Direction indicators

Direction indicators left or right. The control light will flash twice as fast when a lantern of the vehicle's direction indicators has been switched on. Check the vehicle lights.

Driving lighting

Driving illumination completely or partially out of action. Check the vehicle lighting and, if necessary, replace the corresponding bulb.
→ p. 247. If all bulbs are in order, find a specialist company.

COPIA

Interior lighting

Illumination of instruments and of switches

Depending on the vehicle version and the radio version, the brightness of the instrument and switch illumination can be adjusted in the radio system via the button→ p. 27.

The set brightness is automatically adjusted to the change in ambient brightness in the vehicle.

When the light switch is in the position , a sensor automatically switches the dipped beam, including instrument and switch illumination, on and off according to the ambient brightness.

When the light is off and the ignition is switched on, the illumination of the instruments (points
The lighting is switched on. As ambient brightness decreases, the illumination of the steps is automatically reduced and, if necessary, switched off completely. This function reminds the driver to switch on the low beam, e.g. when passing through tunnels.

Indoor and reading lights, ambient lighting

Press the corresponding key:

Switch the front interior lighting on and off.

The internal lights are automatically switched on when the vehicle is unlocked, when
The vehicle key must be removed from the ignition lock when opening a door or removing the vehicle key from the ignition.

Switch the reading light on or off.

Glovebox and luggage compartment light

Depending on the vehicle version, the glovebox lighting may not be available.

When opening and closing the glovebox or the rear lid, a light is automatically switched on or off.

Ambient lighting

Depending on the version of the ambient lighting, indirect lighting provides indirect illumination in various areas of the vehicle interior.

In addition, the front footrest can be illuminated.

The brightness of the ambient lighting can be adjusted in the vehicle settings in the radio system via the → key p. 27.

The interior light and reading light are switched off when the vehicle is locked or for a few minutes.
after removing the vehicle key from the ignition switch. This prevents the vehicle battery from discharging.

When the airbags are triggered in an accident, the interior light can be switched on.
automatically → p. 45, *In case of airbag deployment - Crash detection function (crash detection)*.

The lights are switched off when the vehicle is locked or after a few minutes after the
The vehicle key is removed from the ignition lock. This prevents the vehicle battery from 12 V is discharged.

COPIA

Visibility

Glass cleaners and window washers

Windscreen wiper lever

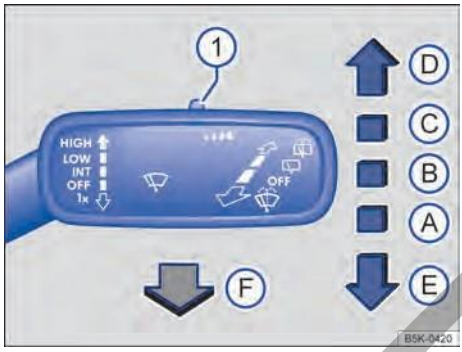


Fig. 76 On the right-hand side of the steering column: co-control the windscreen wipers.

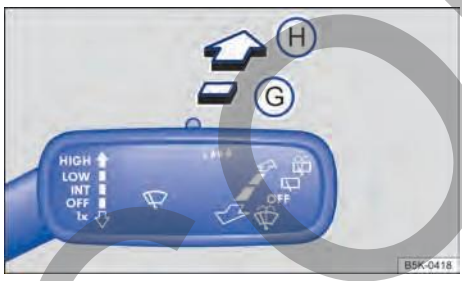


Fig. 77 To the right of the steering column: co-mand the windscreen wiper.

The window cleaners work only with the ignition on and the window washers also work with the ignition off.

Move the wiper lever to the desired position → ⓘ :

Ⓐ Windscreen wipers/windshield wipers off.

Ⓑ Windscreen wiper timer or rain and light sensor operation. The windscreen wiper timer functions according to the driving speed.
The faster the vehicle, the more frequently the windscreen wipers need to be cleaned.

Ⓒ Slow cleaning.

Ⓓ Quick cleaning.

Ⓔ x Single movement of the windscreen wipers, short wiping time.

Ⓕ Windscreen washer system activated when the lever is pulled.

① Adjust the sensitivity of the rain sensor:

Ⓖ Wiper system on. Windscreen wiper makes one movement approximately every 6 seconds.

Ⓗ Windscreen washer system activated while the lever is pressed.

⚠ WARNING

In low temperatures, car wash water without sufficient antifreeze can congeal on the windscreen and restrict forward visibility.

- Only use glasswashers with sufficient antifreeze in winter temperatures.
- Never use the windscreen washer in winter temperatures if the windscreen is not being heated by the ventilation system. Otherwise, the antifreeze additive may freeze on the windscreen and reduce visibility.

⚠ WARNING

Worn or dirty wiper blades reduce visibility and increase the risk of accidents and serious injury.

- If damaged or worn, the wiper blades must be replaced.

ⓘ *NOTICE*

If the ignition is switched off while the windscreen wiper is switched on, when the ignition is switched on again, the wiper will be switched on again.

The window cleaner will continue to operate in the same wiping level, however, in this condition (ignition off with the windscreen wipers on) the wipers return to the initial position. The presence of ice, snow or other obstacles on the glass can cause damage to the wiper and the wiper motor.

- Before driving, if necessary, remove snow and ice from the wiper blades.
drios.

COPIA

- Carefully remove the wiper blades from the windscreen. Volkswagen recommends anti-freeze spray for this purpose.

NOTICE

Do not switch on the wiper blades when the glass is dry. Cleaning dry glass with the wiper blades can damage the glass.

NOTICE

If there has been frost or snow, check whether the wiper blades have frozen before starting the wiper !

Function of window cleaners

Automatic wiper operation

The windscreen wipers switch on automatically when the windscreen wipers are switched on and reverse gear is engaged. *Depending on the vehicle version and the radio version*, the automatic reversing function can be activated or deactivated in the radio system a via the key → p. 27.

Rain and light sensor



Fig. 78 To the right of the steering column: windscreen wiper panel.

Depending on the vehicle version, the rain and light sensor may not be available.

The activated rain and light sensor automatically controls the wiper intervals according to the intensity of the rain.

Activate or deactivate the rain sensor and light sensor.

Push lever to desired position → fig. 78:

– Position (A) - rain sensor deactivated.
– Position (B) - rain sensor activated, wipe- The automatic transmission of information if necessary.

Depending on the vehicle version and the radio version, the automatic wipers can be activated or deactivated in the radio via the key → p. 27.

When automatic cleaning is deactivated in the radio system, the interval time is set in fixed levels.

Adjust the sensitivity of the rain sensor

The sensitivity of the rain sensor can be adjusted manually with the switch on the rain sensor lever.
glass wiper blade → fig. 78 (1) →⚠.

– Set the switch to the right - high sensitivity.
– Set the switch to the left - low sensitivity.

WARNING

The rain and light sensor may not sufficiently recognise all types of rain and may not activate the windscreen wipers.

- If necessary, manually switch on the windscreen wipers when water interferes with the visibility of the windows.

Troubleshooting

Altered activation behaviour of rain and light sensor

Possible causes of malfunctions and misinterpretations *in the area of the sensitive surface* of the rain sensor are, among others:

– **Damaged wiper blades:** A film of water or wiper streaks from damaged wiper blades can prolong the ignition duration, reduce wiping intervals or cause rapid permanent wiping.
– **Insects:** the presence of insects can trigger the activation of cleaning

COPIA

– **Salt streaks:** in winter, salt streaks on the windscreen can lead to extremely long cleaning times until the windscreen is almost dry.
– **Dirt:** Dried dust, wax, windscreen coatings (lotus effect) and detergent residues (quick wash) can make the rain sensor less sensitive or subsequently slower or even unresponsive. Clean the sensitive surface of the rain sensor → p. 309 at regular intervals and check the wiper blades for damage at regular intervals.
– **Cracked windscreen:** A stone impact triggers a cleaning cycle if the rain sensor is switched on. The rain sensor then recognises the decrease in the sensitive surface and adjusts accordingly. Depending on the size of the stone impact, the activation behaviour of the rain sensor may change.
– **Stickers and stickers:** must not cover the sensor area externally or internally, otherwise the correct functioning of the automatic lighting and rain sensor functions will be jeopardised.

To remove wax and polish residues, the use of an alcohol-based glass cleaner is recommended.

If there is an obstacle on the glass, the wipers will try to remove it. If the obstacle continues to block the windscreen wipers, the wipers will stop. Remove the obstacle and switch the wipers on again

Rear-view mirrors

Introduction to the topic

It is important for driving safety that the driver adjusts the exterior rear view mirrors and the interior rear view mirror correctly before driving →⚠ .

The driver can observe the traffic behind him through the exterior mirrors and the interior mirror and can adjust his steering behaviour to the traffic. It is not possible to see everything to the side and rear of the vehicle only by looking at the exterior mirrors and the interior mirror. These non-visible areas are called blind spots. Other vehicles, pedestrians and objects may be in the blind spot.

⚠ WARNING

The exterior mirrors and the interior mirror must not be adjusted while driving so as not to distract the driver. This can lead to accidents and serious injuries.

- Adjust the exterior rear-view mirrors and interior rear-view mirror only when the vehicle is stationary.
- When parking, changing lanes, transferring and converting, always be aware of the area around the vehicle, as other road users and objects may be in the blind spot.
- Always ensure that the rear-view mirrors are correctly adjusted and that the rear visibility is not restricted by fogging or other objects.

⚠

- The dented surfaces of the exterior mirror lenses (convex) increase the field of vision and make objects appear smaller and further away.
- The use of the left and right exterior mirrors to assess distances to vehicles behind when changing lanes is inaccurate and can lead to accidents and serious injuries.
- Whenever possible, use the interior rear-view mirror to determine the distance to vehicles coming from behind or the distance to other objects.
- Ensure that the rear field of vision is always clear.

⚠ WARNING

The interior rear-view mirror with automatic anti-dazzle function contains an electrolyte fluid which can be drained if the mirror glass breaks.

- Spilled electrolyte fluid can irritate the skin, eyes and respiratory organs, especially in people with asthma or asthma.

COPIA

similar diseases. Ensure immediate entry of sufficient fresh air and exit the vehicle or, if this is not possible, open all windows and doors.

- In case of contact with eyes or skin, flush immediately with plenty of water for at least 15 minutes and seek medical advice.
- In case of contact of electrolyte fluid with footwear or clothing, wash immediately with plenty of water for at least 15 minutes. Clean footwear and clothing thoroughly before reuse.
- If electrolyte fluid is swallowed, immediately rinse the mouth with plenty of water for at least 15 minutes. Do not induce vomiting unless prescribed by a doctor. Seek medical help immediately.

NOTICE

On anti-glare rear-view mirrors

In automatic systems, the electrolyte fluid can leak if the mirror glass breaks. This fluid damages the plastic surfaces. Remove the fluid as quickly as possible, e.g. with a damp sponge.

Interior rear-view mirror

Please note ⚠ and ⓘ at the beginning of this chapter on page 93.

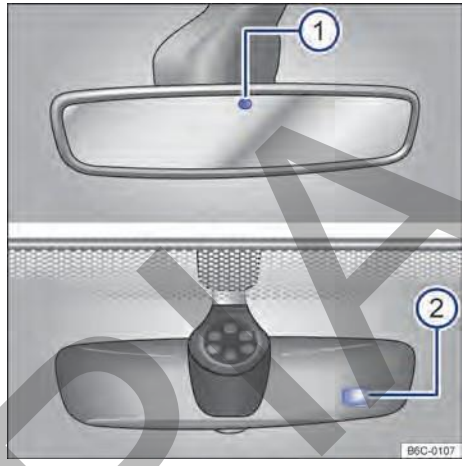


Fig. 79 On the windscreen: automatic anti-dazzle interior rear-view mirror.

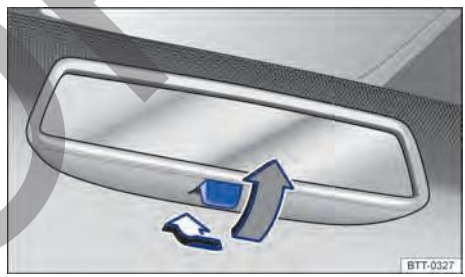


Fig. 80 On the windscreen: manual anti-dazzle interior rear-view mirror.

The driver must always adjust the interior rear-view mirror in such a way that he has a sufficient view to the rear through the rear window.

Rear visibility may be restricted or impaired, e.g. by objects placed on the parcel shelf.

Automatic anti-dazzle interior rear-view mirror

When the ignition is switched on, the sensors measure the incidence of light from behind → fig. 79 front ① and by ②.

Depending on the measured values, the interior rear-view mirror *automatically* dazzles.

COPY

If the incidence of light on the sensors is compromised or interrupted, the automatic anti-dazzle interior rear-view mirror will not function or may malfunction. In the same way, external navigation devices on the windscreen or near the interior rear-view mirror with automatic anti-dazzle function can influence the sensors →⚠ .

In some situations the automatic anti-dazzle function is deactivated, e.g. when reverse gear is engaged.

Manual anti-glare interior rear-view mirror

– Daytime position: the lever on the lower edge of the rearview mirror points towards the windscreen.
– Night position: pull the lever → fig. 80 (grey arrow), to avoid dazzling the headlamps of vehicles behind.

WARNING

The illuminated display of a mobile phone or

⚠

the operation of the automatic anti-dazzle interior rear-view mirror, leading to accidents and serious injuries.

- Malfunctions of the automatic anti-dazzle may prevent the interior rear-view mirror from being used to determine the exact distance to the following vehicle or the distance to other objects.
- Never hang objects on the interior rear-view mirror with automatic anti-dazzle, as objects can impair the function and cause the automatic anti-dazzle function to malfunction.

When using the interior rear-view mirror in the night position, the view is restricted.

External rear-view mirrors

Please note⚠ and ⓘ at the beginning of this chapter on page 93.

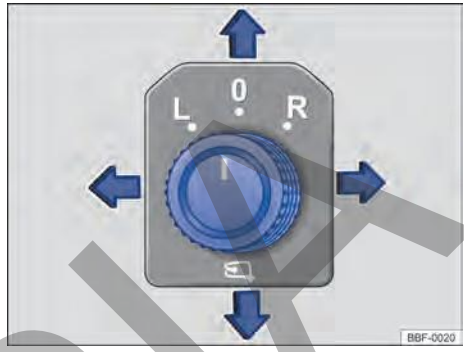


Fig. 81 On the driver's door: rotary control for adjusting the electric door mirrors.

Electric door mirrors

– Switch on the ignition.
– Turn the knob on the driver's door to the desired symbol → fig. 81.
– Move the rotary knob in the direction of the arrow, forwards, backwards, to the right or to the left to adjust the external rear viewfinder.

Fold the exterior mirrors inwards electrically (not available for some versions) →⚠ .

Adjust the left-hand exterior rear-view mirror.

Adjust the right-hand exterior rear-view mirror.

Zero position. The exterior rear-view mirror cannot be adjusted and all functions are switched off.

Activating the exterior rear-view mirror functions

Depending on the vehicle version and the radio version, the following exterior mirror functions must be activated once in the radio system via the button → p. 27.

- Activate the corresponding exterior rear-view mirror function in the menu that appears

COPY

Fold the exterior rear-view mirrors inwards when parking.

If the vehicle is locked or unlocked from the outside, the door mirrors are automatically folded inwards or outwards. To do this, the knob must be in the position , or .

When the knob on the electric rear-view mirror is set to the position , the door mirrors remain folded inwards.

Memory adjustment of the right-hand exterior mirror for reversing (tilt down)

– Choose a valid vehicle key to which the setting is to be assigned.
– Unlock the vehicle with this vehicle key.
– Switch on the ignition.
– Reverse gear.
– Adjust the right-hand exterior rear-view mirror so that the edge area of the cordon can be clearly seen.
– The set mirror position is stored automatically and assigned to the vehicle key.

Accessing the adjustment of the right-hand exterior mirror for reversing (tilt down)

– Turn the knob for the exterior rear-view mirror to the position .
– With the ignition switched on, switch to reverse . The right-hand exterior rearview mirror assumes the stored position.

The stored position of the right-hand exterior mirror for reversing is abandoned when driving forwards again at a speed of more than approx. 15 km/h or when the knob is changed from the position .

The exterior mirrors can be mechanically folded (rotated) inwards and outwards. The position of use is defined by a clearly visible block on both sides (left or right).

WARNING

The exterior mirrors must be adjusted before the vehicle is set in motion so that the driver's attention is not diverted from the traffic.

WARNING

If the exterior mirrors are folded inwards or outwards through inattention, injuries can occur.

- Fold the exterior rear-view mirrors inwards or outwards only when there is no obstacle in their function button.
- Always make sure that no fingers are trapped between the exterior mirror and the mirror base if the exterior mirror is moved.

NOTICE

In an automatic washing system, always fold the door mirrors.

- Do not fold the electric door mirrors inwards or outwards by hand, as this may damage the electric drive.

In the event of a malfunction, the electric door mirrors can be adjusted manually. The mirror lens surface can be

p

ressed by means of pressure on the edge of the mirror lens .

Sun protection

Parasol

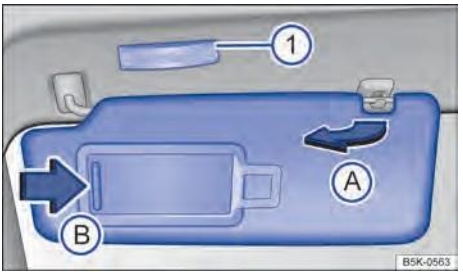


Fig. 82 Parasol.

COPIA

Adjustment possibilities of the sun visors for the driver and for the front passenger:

– Fold the sun visor in the direction of the windscreen.
– Carefully remove the sun visor from the holder by holding the mounting base and turn it in the direction of the doors → fig. 82 A .

Illuminated vanity mirror

In the folded-down sun visor is a vanity mirror behind a cover. At
open the cover → fig. 82 B a light comes on 1.

The light is switched off when the cover of the rear-view mirror is closed or the sun visor is folded up.

⚠ WARNING

Sun visors tilted downwards can reduce the field of vision and impair driving safety.

- Always return the sunshades to their holders when they are no longer needed.

NOTICE

Handle the sun visors and vanity mirror cover carefully to avoid damaging them

Sunscreen curtain from panoramic sunroof

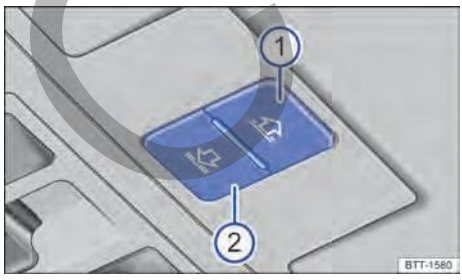


Fig. 83 On the inner roof lining: buttons for operating the sun protection curtain.

The electric sunshade operates with the ignition switched on.

When the sunroof is in the maximum tilted position, the sunblind automatically moves to a tilted position. The sunblind remains in this position even after the sunroof has been

Opening and closing the sun protection curtain

The buttons → fig. 1 y 2 have two levels. At 83

By pressing the buttons up to the first level, you can open or close the sun protection curtain completely or partially.

By briefly pressing the buttons up to the second level, the sun protection curtain automatically moves to the corresponding end position. Pressing the button again interrupts the automatic function.

- *To open the sun protection curtain:* Press the key 1 to the first level. Auto function
  Press the 1 keybutton down to the second level.
- *Close the sun protection curtain:* Press the key 2 key to the first level. Auto function
  Press the key on the 2 briefly until second level.
- *Stopping the automatic function during the opening of a new window.*
  Press the *or* key again *to close the door*. 1 o 2.
  closed.

COPIA

Once the ignition has been switched off, the sunblind can still be opened or closed for a few minutes as long as neither the driver's door nor the front passenger door is opened.

Anti-glare function of the sun protection curtain

The anti-pinch function can reduce the risk of bruising when closing the sun protection curtain →⚠ . If the sun protection curtain encounters resistance or an obstacle when closing, it will reopen immediately.

– Check why the curtain was not closed.
– Attempt to close the curtain once more.
– If the curtain is still unable to close due to an obstacle or resistance, it will reopen immediately. Once opened, it can be closed for a short period of time without the anti-trapping function.
– If the curtain cannot be closed, close it without the anti-trapping function.

Closing the sun protection curtain without the anti-glare function

– Within approx. 5 seconds after activation of the anti-trapping function, press the → button fig. 83 ② button until the door closes completely.
– **Now the curtain closes without the anti-trapping function!**
– If you still cannot close the curtain, contact your Volkswagen dealer or a specialist company.

WARNING

If the sun protection curtain is closed without the anti-trapping function, it can cause serious injury.

- Always close the curtain carefully.
- No one should remain at the curtain's function button, especially if the curtain is closed without the anti-trapping function.
- The anti-pinch function does not prevent fingers or other body parts from getting trapped against the ceiling frame and thus causing injury.

When the sunroof is open, the electric sun shading device can only be used when the sunroof is open.

The roof shall be closed up to the front edge of the roof so as to be able to
lar.

Heating and air conditioning

Heating, ventilating, cooling

Introduction to the topic

The following equipment may be installed in the vehicle:

The **heating and ventilation system** heats and ventilates the vehicle interior. The ventilation and heating system does not cool down.

The **air conditioning** or **Climatronic** cools and dehumidifies the air. It works at maximum efficiency if the windows are closed. In the event of heat build-up in the vehicle interior, ventilation can speed up the cooling process.

Indication of switched-on functions

LEDs lit on controllers and keys indicate that a function is active.

WARNING

Poor visibility conditions on all roads increase the risk of collisions and accidents that can cause serious injury.

- Always ensure that all windows are free of ice, snow and fogging to ensure good visibility conditions.
- The highest heat output and the fastest possible defrosting of the windows are only possible if the engine has already reached its operating temperature. Only start if there are good visibility conditions.
- Always ensure that the heating and fresh air system or the air conditioning and window defroster are used correctly to ensure good outward visibility.
- Never use the air recirculation mode for a long period of time. When the cooling system is deactivated, the windows can fog up very quickly in air recirculation mode and limit visibility conditions too much.
- Always switch off the air recirculation mode if it is not required.

COPIA

⚠ WARNING

Air used for long periods of time can lead to driver fatigue and lack of concentration, which can cause crashes, accidents and serious injuries.

- Never leave the turbine deactivated for a long time and never leave the air re-circulation mode activated for a long period, as fresh air does not reach the interior of the vehicle.

NOTICE

Do not place foodstuffs, medicines or other temperature-sensitive objects in front of the air diffusers. Food, medicines or other other objects that are sensitive to heat or cold can be damaged or rendered unusable by the exhaust air flow.

NOTICE

- If you have the impression that the air-conditioning system is not working properly, you may be under the impression that the air-conditioning system is not working properly.
  If the air conditioning system is faulty, switch off the air conditioner. In this way, secondary damage can be avoided. The air conditioning should be checked by a Volkswagen dealer or a specialist company.
- Air conditioning repairs require specialised knowledge and special tools. For this, Volkswagen recommends the Volkswagen Dealers

Air conditioning commands

Please note⚠ and ⓘ at the beginning of this chapter on page 98.

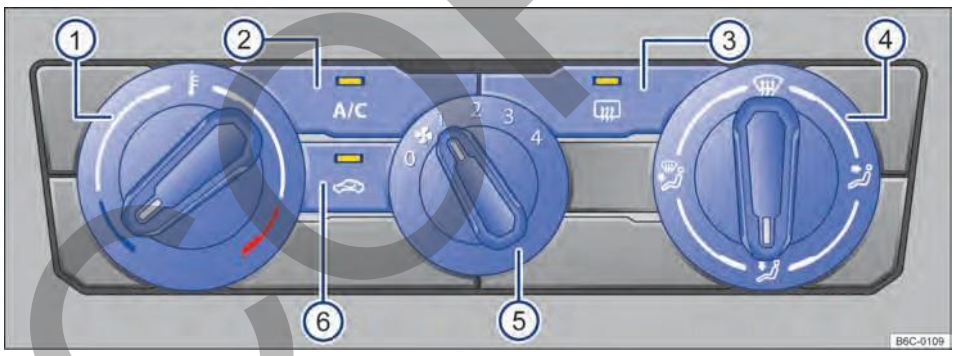


Fig. 84 Air conditioning controls.

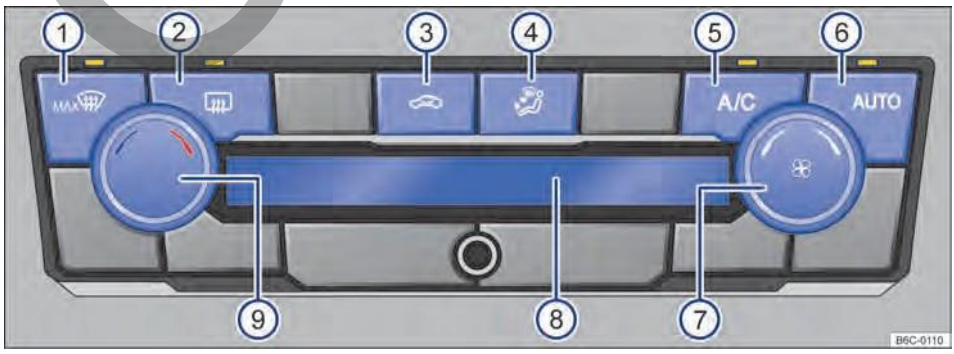


Fig. 85 Climatronic commands.

COPIA

Some functions and keys are version-dependent and depend on the type of system installed.

Switch off

– *Air conditioning:* turn the fan regulator to the level → fig. 84 5 .
– *Climatronic:* turn the fan control knob to the left as far as it will go → fig. 85 (7)

- Automatic mode

With the → button (6) fig. 85 the Climatronic automatic mode can be switched on.

The automatic mode ensures constant temperatures inside the vehicle. Air temperature, air volume and air distribution are regulated automatically. Automatic operation is switched off when the ventilation is changed manually or when the air distribution is changed by pressing button → fig. 85 4 .

- Cooling mode

– Press the key key to switch on and off the functioning of the refrigeration system.

In cooling mode the air conditioner is dehumidifying.

/ - Temperature

– *Air conditioning:* Turn the left-hand rotary control → fig. 84 1 .
– *Climatronic:* Turn the left-hand rotary control → fig. 85 9 .

In the Climatronic display → fig. 85 (8) The The set temperature shall be indicated.

- Fan

– *Air conditioning:* Turn the fan control → fig. 84 5 .
– *Climatronic:* turning the fan controller → fig. 85 (7).

- Air recirculation mode

In air recirculation mode, external air is prevented from reaching the interior of the vehicle.
→ p. 101.

– Press the key .

Air distribution

– *Air conditioning:* turn the right-hand control knob → fig. 84 (4) to the desired position.
– *Climatronic:* press the → button fig. 85 (4) to the desired position, the selected layout will be shown in the display 8 .

- Air distribution to the upper part of the body with the air diffuser on the instrument panel.

- Air distribution to the foot area.

Climatronic - Air distribution to the upper body and foot area.

- Air distribution to the windscreen and footwell.

Air conditioning - Windscreen air distribution.

Climatronic - Air distribution to the windscreen.

| - De-misting function

The defogging function eliminates windscreen misting.

– *Air conditioning:* turn the right-hand control knob to the position → fig. 84 4 .
– *Climatronic:* press the key → fig. 85 (1).

Air conditioning: In the defogging function, the air recirculation mode is switched off, and the air conditioning compressor of the cooling system is switched on to remove humidity from the air. With the defrosting function on, the air recirculation mode cannot be switched on and the air conditioning compressor cannot be switched off.

Climatronic: In the demisting function, the air is dehumidified and the fan is set at a high level.

- Windscreen defroster

- Press the key key to switch on and off the rear window heating when the engine is running.

The window defroster switches off automatically after approx. 10 minutes.

COPIA

Recommended air settings
air conditioner.
conditioning

– Switching off the air recirculation mode
– Set the fan to the level or .
– Set the temperature regulator to the middle position.
– Open and align all air vents on the instrument panel.
– Turn the air distribution control knob to the desired position.

- Press the key on the dashboard to switch on
  The cooling system.

Recommended Climatronic settings

– Press the key .
– Set the temperature to +22 °C.
– Open and align the air vents on the instrument panel.

Rapid cooling inside the vehicle

To obtain rapid cooling in the interior of the vehicle, proceed as follows:

– Turn the temperature control knob all the way to the left.
– Select the air distribution to the position .
– Turn the fan control knob to the maximum level. The air conditioning and air recirculation mode will switch on automatically.

- If the air conditioner does not turn on, pre-heat the

  Press the to switch on the cooling key.

– If the vehicle is exposed to the sun for long periods of time, partially or fully open the front door windows for a short period (1 to 3 minutes) to remove the hot air mass from inside the vehicle.
– Close the windows and, if necessary, press the key to switch on the recirculation mode.

air supply.

NOTICE

In order to avoid damage to the trigger, no adhesive should be applied to the inside of the strands.

After the glass has regained its sharpness, the defroster must be deactivated.
do. The lower power consumption has a positive effect on fuel consumption.

If the air conditioning and the air recirculation mode are switched off manually, the
The system will not switch on automatically the next time the fan is switched off and on again. The system will resume automatic operation only after the temperature switch is removed from the fully counterclockwise position and replaced with a new one.
car in this position.

Air recirculation mode

Please note⚠ and ⓘ at the beginning of this chapter on page 98.

In air recirculation mode, external air is prevented from reaching the interior of the vehicle.

- Press the key button on the control panel, to switch the air recirculation mode on or off.

When is the air recirculation mode switched off?

The air recirculation is switched off in the following situations →⚠ :

– When the nic key is of the Climatro- pressed.

- When the air distribution regulator of the air conditioner is set to the position .

⚠ WARNING

Air used for long periods of time can lead to driver fatigue and lack of concentration, which can cause crashes, accidents and serious injuries.

- Never leave the turbine deactivated for a long time and never leave the air re-circulation mode activated for a long period, as fresh air does not reach the interior of the vehicle.

COPIA

- With the cooling system deactivated, the windows can fog up very quickly in air recirculation mode, severely limiting visibility conditions.
- Switch off the air recirculation mode when it is not required.

NOTICE

Do not smoke with the air recirculation mode on. Sucked-in smoke may be deposited on the cooling system evaporator and on the dust and pollen filter, causing long-lasting unpleasant odours.

At very high external temperatures, it is recommended to select the recirculation mode.

airflow for a short time to cool the interior of the vehicle more quickly

Troubleshooting

Please note⚠ and⓵ at the beginning of this chapter on page 98.

The following tips and operating guidelines will help you to use the system correctly.

The cooling system inside the vehicle operates only when the engine is running and the fan is activated.

The air conditioning works at maximum efficiency if the windows are closed. If the interior of the vehicle is very hot because the vehicle has been left standing in the sun, opening the windows briefly can speed up the cooling process.

Why does the cooling system automatically switch off or not switch on at all?

– The engine is not running.
– The fan is switched off.
– The air conditioning fuse is blown.
– The ambient temperature is below approximately +3°C.
– The air conditioning compressor temporarily cut out due to the very high temperature of the engine coolant.
– There is a fault in the vehicle. The air conditioning must be checked by a Volkswagen Dealer or a specialised company.

Regulation for ideal visibility conditions

– Keep the windscreen air inlet free of ice or leaves to improve the heating or cooling performance and to prevent the windscreen from becoming soaked → page 304.
– Keep the air gap in the rear luggage compartment area clear so that air can circulate from the front to the rear of the vehicle.
– When the engine coolant has reached its operating temperature, more heating power will be achieved and glass fogging will be faster.

Dust and pollen filter

The dust and pollen filter reduces the penetration of particles from the outside air into the vehicle interior.

The dust and pollen filter needs to be changed regularly in order not to impair the efficiency of the air conditioning. If the vehicle is often driven in a heavily polluted environment, the filter must be changed between service events → page 304.

Water vapour under the vehicle

If the outside air humidity and ambient temperature are high, **condensed water** may drip from the evaporator of the cooling system and form a puddle of water under the vehicle. This is normal, it is not a sign of leakage!

The air-conditioning compressor consumes engine power during cooling.

The following should be taken into account to minimise the cooling running time. To minimise cooling operating time, please note the following:

- If the vehicle is standing in the sun and is very hot, open the doors and windows for a short time to allow the hot air to escape. exit.

COPIA

- Make sure that warm outside air does not enter the vehicle, e.g. through an open window, when the air conditioning is on. .
- If it is possible to reach the desired temperature without turning on the air conditioning, use only the ventilation .

When you arrive at your destination (approximately 2 minutes before), turn off the air conditioning.

The air conditioning system and leave only the ventilation running. This helps to reduce humidity in the evaporator, reducing the development of unpleasant

o

dours in the vehicle interior .

Driving

Guidance for driving

Pedals

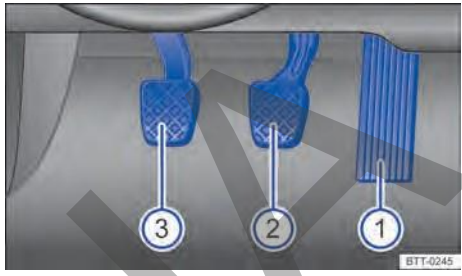


Fig. 86 In the footrest area: pedals on vehicles with manual transmission.

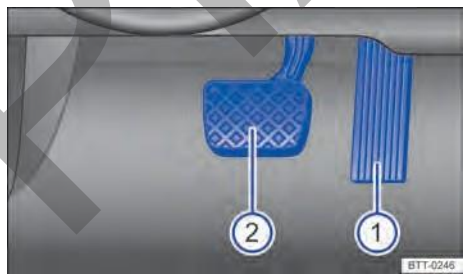


Fig. 87 In the footrest area: pedals on vehicles with automatic transmission.

Legend for → fig. 86 and → fig. 87:

① Accelerator pedal

② Brake pedal

③ Clutch pedal, *for vehicles with manual gearbox*.

The actuation and freedom of movement of all pedals must never be restricted by objects or foot mats.

Only use mats that leave the pedal area free, are securely fastened and are not damaged. do not slip in the foot area.

COPY

⚠ WARNING

Objects in the driver's footwell can prevent free operation of the pedals. This can cause loss of control of the vehicle and increases the risk of serious injury.

- Ensure that all pedals can be operated without hindrance.
- Always place rugs securely in the foot area.
- Never place foot mats or other floor coverings on top of the installed foot mat.
- Make sure that no objects can reach the driver's foot area while driving.

NOTICE

The activation of the pedals must be free in the following conditions
at all times. Thus, in the event of a brake circuit failure, for example, a longer braking distance is required to stop the vehicle. In such a case, depressing the brake pedal as far as possible will deeper and stronger than usual.

Recommendation to change gear



Fig. 88 On the combined instrument: gear change indicator.

Legend for → fig. 88:

(A) Current gear engaged.

(B) Recommended gear to engage.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, a recommendation to select a fuel-saving gear may be shown on the display of the combined instrument panel while driving.

On vehicles with automatic transmission, the selector lever must be in the Tiptro- nic position → p. 120.

If the ideal gear is selected, no gear is recommended. The current gear engaged is displayed.

⚠

The running recommendation is only an auxiliary means and should not interfere with the driver's attention to the traffic around him.

- The gear shift indicator is only intended to assist the driver in saving fuel. It is the sole responsibility of the driver to assess, while driving, whether the vehicle, road and traffic conditions allow the gear shift indicator to be considered, e.g. when overtaking or when driving the vehicle fully laden.

Optimised gear selection results in lower fuel consumption.

Warning texts may vary, depending on the version of the control panel.
truments.

The display of the driving recommendation is erased, in vehicles with a transmission.
manual override when depressing the clutch pedal or when leaving the Tiptronic position on vehicles with
automatic transmission.

Economical driving style

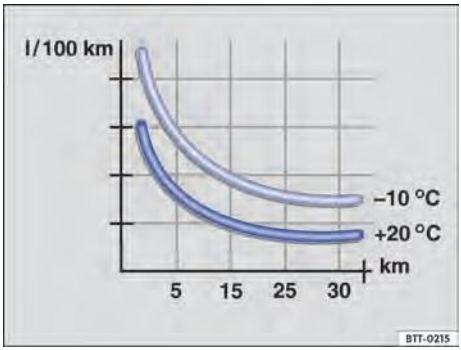


Fig. 89 Fuel consumption in l/100 km at 2 different ambient temperatures

COPIA

With the right driving style, it is possible to reduce fuel consumption, environmental damage and wear on the engine, brakes and tyres. Here are some tips on how to protect the environment and save money.

Fuel consumption, the level of emission of pollutants into the environment and the wear of the engine, brakes and tyres depend basically on three factors:

- Personal driving style.
- Conditions of use (weather conditions, taxiway characteristics).
- Technical conditions.

Fuel consumption can easily be reduced by 10-15% by means of preventive and economical driving.

A vehicle consumes more fuel during acceleration. In preventative driving, less braking and therefore less acceleration is required. Letting the vehicle drive freely when you notice, for example, that the next traffic light is red.

Shift gears more quickly

Basically, the following applies: the highest gear is always the most economical. As a basic rule, it applies to most vehicles: at a speed of 30 km/h, drive in 3rd gear, at a speed of 30 km/h, drive in 3rd gear, at 40 km/h in 4th gear and at 50 km/h already in 5th gear.

In addition, "skipping" gears saves fuel in upshifting when traffic and driving conditions permit.

Do not use all gears. Use 1st gear only for starting and then shift to 2nd gear.

Vehicles with a gear indicator support fuel-efficient driving by indicating the ideal time to change gear.

Letting go

When the foot is removed from the accelerator pedal, the engine's fuel supply is interrupted and fuel consumption is reduced.

For this reason, e.g. when approaching a red traffic light, let the vehicle idle without accelerating. Only when the vehicle slows down too much or the distance to be travelled is too great should the clutch pedal be depressed to disengage the clutch. In this way, the engine runs at idling speed.

In situations where you have to wait longer, switch off the engine, e.g. at level crossings.

Preventive driving and traffic escorting

Frequent braking and acceleration increase fuel consumption. Active driving with sufficient distance to the vehicle in front can only be compensated for by deceleration of speed changes. Active braking and acceleration are therefore not necessarily necessary.

Driving calmly and regularly

More important than speed is consistency. The more regularly you drive, the lower your fuel consumption.

When driving on the road, a constant and moderate speed is more efficient than constant acceleration and braking. As a rule, the destination is reached just as quickly as with a constant form of driving.

Apply additional consumers sparingly

The comfort of the vehicle is good and important, but it must be used in an environmentally conscious way.

In this way, some connected equipment increases fuel consumption (examples) :

COPY

– Air conditioning cooling system: When the air conditioning needs to generate a very large temperature difference, it will require a lot of energy which is generated by the engine. For this reason, the temperature difference in the vehicle should not be too large in relation to the outside temperature. It may be useful to ventilate the vehicle before starting to drive, and then drive with the windows open for a short distance. Only then switch on the air conditioning with the windows closed.
– Keep windows closed at high speeds. Open windows increase fuel consumption.
– Switch off the windscreen defroster when the glass is defrosted.

Other factors that increase fuel consumption (examples):

– Engine control unit damaged.
– Driving in mountainous region.
– Driving with a trailer.

Avoid short journeys

The cold engine consumes significantly more fuel immediately after starting. It is only after a few kilometres that the engine is properly warmed up and fuel consumption is normalised.

In order to effectively reduce fuel consumption and the emission of toxic substances, the engine and catalytic converter must have reached their ideal **operating temperature.** Here, too, the **ambient temperature** is decisive.

Fig. 89 shows the variation in fuel consumption for the same distance at +20 °C and -10 °C.

For this reason, avoid short, super-fluous journeys and group roads together.

The vehicle consumes more fuel in winter than in summer under the same conditions.

In addition to being prohibited in some countries, "warming up" the engine when the vehicle is stationary is also technically superfluous and a waste of fuel.

Adjust tyre pressure

The correct tyre pressure reduces rolling resistance and thus fuel consumption.

When purchasing new tyres, ensure that the tyres are optimised with regard to rolling resistance.

Use low friction engine oil

Fully synthetic engine oils with low viscosity, so-called low-friction motor oils, reduce fuel consumption. Low-friction engine oils reduce the frictional resistance in the engine and spread better and faster, especially during cold engine start-up. The effect occurs mainly in vehicles that are frequently driven short distances.

Always observe the correct engine oil level and keep to the maintenance intervals (engine oil change intervals).

When purchasing engine oil, always observe Volkswagen's engine oil standard and the Volkswagen oil release.

Avoiding unnecessary burden

The lighter a vehicle is, the more economical and environmentally friendly it is. An additional weight of 100 kg increases fuel consumption by up to 0.3 l/100 km, for example.

Remove all unused objects and unnecessary cargo from the vehicle.

Remove unnecessary fixtures and fittings

The more aerodynamic a vehicle is, the lower its fuel consumption. Added installations and parts, such as bicycle racks, diminish the aerodynamic advantage.

For that reason, remove unnecessary installations and unused systems, especially when driving at high speeds.

⚠

Adjust speed and safety distance in relation to vehicles ahead, always in accordance with visibility, climatic, track and traffic conditions.

COPIA

Think Blue Coach.

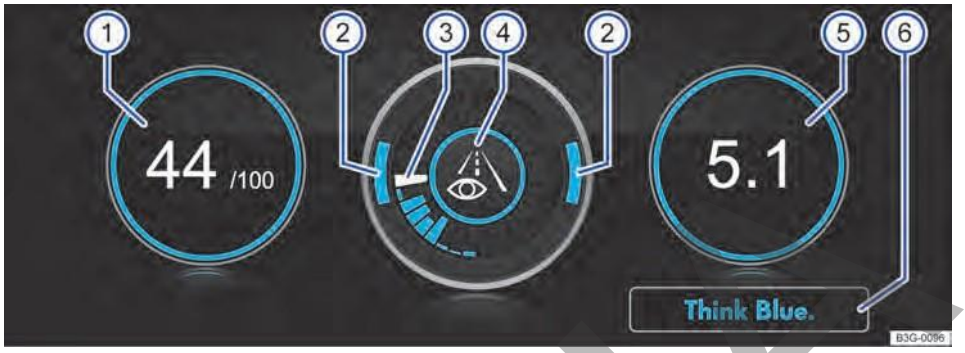


Fig. 90 In the radio system: Think Blue trainer .

Think Blue Training analyses and monitors your driving behaviour and helps you to drive more economically.

Depending on the vehicle version and radio version, the Think Blue. trainer may not be available.

Legend for fig. 90: "Blue

① Score":
The higher the value displayed on a scale from 0 to 100, the more efficient the driving style. A blue border symbolises an efficient and consistent driving style. In the case of an inefficient driving style, the border is grey.
Touch the display to open the statistics for the last 30 minutes of driving.
of departure. Acceleration

② and braking
In the case of a constant velocity, two circular ar- cos are in the central area of the
tral. If the vehicle is accelerated or decelerated, the circular arcs move downwards or upwards.

③ History display:
The efficiency of the driving behaviour is shown by blue bars. The white bars store a blue bar approximately every five seconds.
The higher the bar, the more efficient the driving style.

④ Driving tips:
more preventive driving.
gear recommendation.
adjust the speed.
economical way of driving. Consumption:

⑤ The average fuel consumption is displayed in **km/l from the start**. A blue border symbolises an efficient and consistent driving style. In the case of inefficient driving, the border is grey.
Touch the display to open the statistics for the last 30 minutes **of** driving.

⑥ Energy saving tips:

Tap on the function button Think Blue. for open additional tips.

Access Think Blue training.

– Press the key ▢ key on the radio system.
– Tap on the function selection button .▢
– Tap on the function button Think Blue Training .

⚠ WARNING

Driver distraction can lead to accidents and injuries. The control of the radio system can distract you from what is happening in traffic.

COPIA

- Always drive responsibly and pay the utmost attention to traffic.

Information about brakes

New brake pads do not yet possess full brake efficiency during the first 300 km and need to "soften" →⚠ . The slightly reduced braking force can be compensated in the meantime by strong pressure on the brake pedal. **In the period of softening, the braking distance is longer in full braking or emergency braking** than with softened brake pads. During softening, full braking and situations where the brakes are really needed should be avoided. For example, when driving very close to other vehicles.

Brake pad wear is highly dependent on the conditions of use and driving style. If you frequently drive in city traffic and on short journeys or drive in a sporty manner, it is necessary to have the brake pad thickness checked regularly by a Volkswagen dealer or a specialist company.

When driving with **wet brakes**, e.g. after driving through flooded roads, after heavy rain or after washing the vehicle, the braking performance can be reduced because the brake discs may be wet or frozen during the winter. The brakes should be "brake dried" as quickly as possible by careful braking at higher speeds. In this case, make sure that you do not endanger vehicles behind you and other drivers →⚠ .

A **salt layer on the brake discs and brake pads** delays the braking efficiency and increases the braking distance. When braking on roads with salt layers has not occurred for a prolonged period of time, it is necessary to scrape off the salt layer by means of cautious braking. →⚠ .

Corrosion on the brake discs and **contamination** of the brake pads are promoted by long periods of standstill, low rolling performance and low demand. Volkswagen recommends cleaning the brake discs and brake pads by repeatedly applying the brakes when the brake pads are under low load and when corrosion occurs.

Sometimes driving at a high speed, always respecting the speed limit imposed by the place and the driving condition at the time (e.g. wet or dry road, night or daytime driving). In this case, make sure that you do not endanger vehicles behind you and other drivers. →⚠ .

Brake servo

The brake booster operates only when the engine is running and amplifies the pedal pressure exerted by the driver on the brake pedal.

If the brake booster does not work or the vehicle is being towed, the brake pedal must be pressed harder, as the braking distance increases due to the lack of brake force assistance →⚠ .

⚠ WARNING

New brake pads do not initially have the ideal brake efficiency.

- New brake pads cannot yet achieve full brake efficiency during the first 300 km of use and need to be "softened". In this case, reduced brake efficiency can be increased by applying more pressure on the brake pedal.
- To reduce the risk of accidents, serious injury and loss of control of the vehicle, particularly careful driving with new brake pads is necessary.
- During the softening period of the new brake pads, never drive too close to other vehicles or create driving situations that place excessive demands on the brakes.

⚠ WARNING

Overheated brakes reduce braking efficiency and greatly increase the braking distance.

- When driving downhill, the brakes are heavily stressed and heat up quickly.

COPIA

- Before driving on a longer route with steep gradients, slow down, shift to a lower gear (in manual transmission or in Tiptronic mode of the automatic transmission). In this way, the engine brake can be fully utilised and the brake can be relieved.
- Non-stock or defective front spoilers may restrict the air supply to the brakes and cause the brakes to overheat.

WARNING

Wet or frozen brakes, or salted brakes brake later and increase the braking distance.

- Experiment with the brakes by cautious testing.
- Always dry the brakes by some cautious braking and keep them free of ice and salt when visibility, weather, track and traffic conditions permit.

WARNING

Driving without a brake booster can significantly increase the braking distance and thus cause accidents and serious injuries.

- Never leave the vehicle running with the engine switched off.
- When the brake booster is not working or the vehicle is being towed, the brake pedal must be pressed harder, as the braking distance increases due to the lack of brake force assistance.

NOTICE

- Never let the brakes "slip" with light pressure on the pedal when braking is not really necessary. Constant pressure on the brake pedal causes overheating of the brakes. This can significantly decrease braking performance, increase the braking force, and increase the braking power.
  The braking distance and, in certain circumstances, the
  The main reason for the total failure of the frequency system.
- Before driving on a longer route with steep gradients, slow down, downshift or select a lower gear position. In this way, the efficiency
  The brake may otherwise overheat and eventually fail. Otherwise, the brake may overheat and eventually fail. Use the brakes only when it is necessary to slow down or stop.

When checking the front brake pads, they must also be checked whether the front brake pads have been worn or not.

The thickness of all brake pads should be checked visually at regular intervals by inspecting the brake pads from the wheel openings or from the underside of the vehicle. The thickness of all brake pads must be checked visually and regularly by inserting the brake pads through the wheel openings or from the underside of the vehicle. If necessary, the wheels should be removed for a complete check. For this purpose, Volkswagen recommends the Volkswagen Dealer. Volkswagen cars.

Driving with a loaded vehicle

To ensure good driving characteristics of a loaded vehicle, observe the following:

– Securely stow all baggage volumes → p. 226.
– Accelerate particularly cautiously and carefully.
– Avoid sudden steering and braking manoeuvres.
– Braking earlier than usual.
– If necessary, refer to the information on driving with a trailer → page 232.

WARNING

A shifting load could endanger the stability and safety of the vehicle and lead to accidents and serious injuries.

- Secure the load correctly so that it does not slip.
- In the case of heavy objects, use suitable lashing straps or tensioning straps.
- Securely lock the rear seat backrest.

COPIA

of the engine brake can be exploited by completely using the engine brake.

Driving with the tailgate open

Driving with the tailgate open presents a special hazard. Secure all objects and the open tailgate correctly and take appropriate measures to reduce the entry of toxic exhaust fumes.

WARNING

Driving with the rear cover unlocked or open can cause serious injury.

- Volkswagen does not recommend that the vehicle be driven with the tailgate open, but if such driving is extremely necessary, the following guidelines should be observed:
  - Place all objects securely in the luggage compartment. Loose objects can fall out of the luggage compartment and injure other drivers.
  - Always drive cautiously and defensively.
  - Avoid sudden or abrupt steering and braking manoeuvres, as the tailgate may move in an uncontrolled manner.
  - Ensure that objects outside the luggage compartment are visible to other drivers. Observe the legal requirements.
  - When transporting objects protruding from the luggage compartment, the tailgate may never be used to "press" or "fix" objects.
  - It is mandatory to remove the load mounted on the tailgate when driving with the tailgate open.

WARNING

Toxic exhaust gases can reach the inside of the vehicle if the tailgate is open. This can lead to unconsciousness, carbon dioxide poisoning, accidents and serious injuries.

- To prevent toxic exhaust fumes from entering the vehicle, always drive with the tailgate closed.
- In exceptional cases, if it is necessary to drive with the rear lid open, the following procedure should be used to reduce the release of toxic exhaust fumes into the interior of the vehicle:
  - Close all windows.
  - On vehicles with air conditioning, deactivate the air recirculation mode.
  - Open all air vents on the instrument panel.
  - Switch the fan on at the maximum ventilation level.

NOTICE

The height of the body changes when the tailgate is open .

Flooded route

First of all, flooded areas should be avoided. Driving the vehicle in such conditions makes driving difficult and may cause serious damage to the vehicle and jeopardise the safety of the driver and other passengers. If the journey is necessary to avoid damage to the vehicle, driver, passengers and other drivers, observe the following:

- Check the water depth before driving through flooded areas. The water may reach **no more than** the lower edge of the body (under the doors) →ⓘ .
- Do not drive faster than the speed of a pass.
- Never stop, reverse or switch off the motor in the water.
- Oncoming vehicles cause waves that can raise the water level in your vehicle, preventing safe driving in the flooded area.
- When crossing flooded road sections, vehicles with Start-Stop system deactivate the system manually → page 116.

WARNING

After passing through water, mud, slush, etc., the brake performance may be delayed due to moisture or freezing of the brake discs and pads, increasing the braking distance.

COPIA

- "Dry brakes and remove ice" by braking carefully. Proceed without putting other drivers at risk or failing to comply with legal requirements.
- Avoid abrupt and sudden manoeuvres after crossing flooded areas.

NOTICE

- When driving through flooded areas, vehicle components such as the engine, transmission, chassis or electrical system can be seriously damaged.
- Never drive through salt water, as salt can cause corrosion. Immediately wash all parts of the vehicle that have been in contact with salt water with fresh water

Softening the engine

A new engine must be softened within the first 1,500 kilometres. All moving parts must be able to adapt to each other. During the first hours of operation, the engine has a higher internal friction than it will have later on.

Up to 1,000 kilometres is due:

– Do not accelerate to the maximum.

– Do not subject the engine to a speed greater than 2/3 of the maximum speed.

– Do not drive with a trailer attached.

Between 1,000 and 1,500 kilometres

– Increase the speed and rotation of the engine *gradually*, limited to the speed of your rolling site.

The way the engine is driven for the first 1,500 kilometres also influences the quality of the engine. Even after the engine has softened, especially if the engine is cold, drive at moderate revs to reduce engine wear and increase engine life.

Do not drive at very low revs. Downshift whenever the engine is not operating "regularly".

Careful running-in of the new engine increases its service life with low fuel consumption.
oil and fuel.

Vehicle use in other countries and continents

The vehicle was produced for a specific country and corresponds to the type-approval requirements in force in that country at the time of manufacture of the vehicle.

If the vehicle is sold in another country or if it is used in another country for a longer period of time, the respective legal regulations valid in the country of destination must be observed.

If necessary, it may be necessary to mount or dismount certain equipment and deactivate functions. Similarly, service ranges and types of service may be affected. This is especially true if the vehicle is used for an extended period of time in a different climate region.

Due to different frequency bands around the world, the radio or navigation system may not work in other countries.

NOTICE

- Volkswagen accepts no liability for damage to the vehicle caused by filling with low-quality fuel, improper servicing outside the authorised network or the use of non-original parts.
- Volkswagen accepts no liability if the vehicle does not meet or only partially meets the legal requirements of other countries and continents.

Troubleshooting

Brake system malfunction

If the vehicle no longer brakes as it used to (sudden increase in braking distance), a brake circuit may be faulty. In the event of a fault, the warning light comes on and a text message may also appear. Immediately contact a Volkswagen Dealer or a specialist company to rectify the damage. During the journey, drive at low speed and be prepared for longer braking distances and higher brake pressure.
the pedal.

COPIA

Switching the engine on and off

Ignition lock



Fig. 91 Next to the steering wheel on the right: positions of the vehicle key in the ignition lock.

Vehicle key positions → fig. 91

⓪ Ignition switched off. The vehicle key can be removed.

① Ignition switched on.

② Depress the brake pedal *(vehicles with automatic transmission)*, or the clutch pedal *(vehicles with manual transmission)* and start the engine. When the engine starts, release the ignition key. When released, the vehicle key returns to position → fig. 91 1 .

Power on indication

Depending on the vehicle version, the ignition on indication may not be available.

If the driver's door is opened with the ignition switched on, the message **IGNITION ON** may appear in the combined instrument display and an audible signal may also be emitted.

The audible signal is a reminder that the ignition must be switched off before leaving the vehicle.

⚠ WARNING

Inattentive use of the vehicle key can cause serious injury.

- Always take all vehicle keys with you when leaving the vehicle. It can start the engine and electrical equipment, such as electric windows, can be started and cause serious injury.
- Never leave children or persons with special needs alone in the vehicle. In an emergency, they would not be able to leave the vehicle by themselves or to take care of themselves. In a closed vehicle, depending on the season, temperatures can be very high or very low, which can cause serious injury and illness, especially in young children, or even death.
- Never remove the vehicle key from the ignition lock while the vehicle is in motion.

NOTICE

When the ignition is switched on and the engine is switched off, the vehicle's battery can be discharged in an undesirable way and prevent the engine from restarting.

- Always switch off the ignition before leaving the vehicle.

On vehicles with automatic transmissions, if it is not possible to remove the vehicle key from the ignition cylinder when the vehicle is stationary, co

If necessary, press and release the locking button to set the position of the selector lever **P**. of the selector lever.

SOPIA

Start button



Fig. 92 At the bottom of the centre console: Starter button for starting the engine

The start button replaces the ignition lock (Press & Drive).

Depending on vehicle version and country, the start button may not be available.

The vehicle is started by pressing the start button (Press & Drive).

The vehicle can only be activated if there is a valid vehicle key inside the vehicle.

Switching the ignition on and off

Press the start button once without depressing the brake pedal or clutch pedal →⚠ .

Automatic ignition shutdown

If the driver drives away from the vehicle with the vehicle key with the ignition switched on, the ignition will switch off automatically after some time. If the low beam headlamp is switched on during this period, the position light remains on for approx. 30 minutes. The position light can be switched off by locking the vehicle → page 65 or manually → page 84.

After the vehicle recognises that the con- ductor is absent with the automatic engine shutdown active, the ignition is automatically switched off after a certain time has elapsed.

Engine restart function

If a valid vehicle key is not recognised inside the vehicle after the engine has been switched off, it can be restarted in approximately one hour.

The display will show a corresponding message on the combined instrument. A corresponding message appears on the display of the combined instrument.

After this time, it is no longer possible to switch on the engine without a valid vehicle key in the vehicle.

⚠

Unintentional vehicle movements can cause serious injury.

- To switch on the ignition, *do not* press the brake pedal or clutch pedal, otherwise the engine will start immediately.

⚠

Inattentive or unsupervised use of the vehicle keys can cause accidents and serious injuries.

- Always take all vehicle keys with you when leaving the vehicle. Children or unauthorised persons can lock the vehicle, start the engine or switch on the ignition and thus activate electrical equipment such as electric windows.

When leaving the vehicle, always switch off the ignition manually or, if necessary, observe the orientation on the display of the combi device.

Long periods of standstill with the ignition switched on can cause the battery to 12 V vehicle is discharged and the engine cannot be started.

If, for example, the vehicle's key battery is low or discharged, the engine will not start. can be activated with the start button. In this case, use the emergency start function → p. 116.

Engine start-up

– *Vehicles with ignition lock:* Turn the vehicle key to position → fig. 91 1 . The ignition is switched on.
– *Vehicles with starter button:* Press the starter button once. The ignition is switched on.
– Depress the brake pedal firmly and keep it depressed.

SOFIA

– *Vehicles with manual transmission:* Fully depress the clutch pedal, move the gearshift lever to the neutral position and depress the pedal until the engine is running.
– *Vehicles with automatic transmission:* move the selector lever to the **P** or **N** position.
– *Vehicles with ignition lock:* Turn the vehicle key in the ignition switch to position → fig. 91. ② - do not accelerate. When the engine starts running, release the vehicle key in the ignition lock.
– *Vehicles with starter button:* Press the starter button → p. 113 - do not accelerate. To start the engine, there must be a valid vehicle key inside the vehicle. When the engine starts, release the starter button.
– If the engine does not start, interrupt the starting procedure and repeat it after about one minute.
– *Vehicles with push-button start:* if necessary, execute emergency start → p. 116.
– Release the parking brake when you are ready to drive off → page 132.

WARNING

The risk of serious injury can be reduced when the engine is running or during engine start-up.

- Never run the engine or leave it running in enclosed or unventilated areas. The engine exhaust system contains, among other things, carbon monoxide, an odourless, colourless, toxic gas. Carbon monoxide can cause fainting and death.
- Never leave the vehicle with the engine running without due attention. The vehicle could suddenly move or an unexpected event could occur, causing serious damage and injury.
- Never use a starting throttle. A starting throttle can explode or cause a sudden increase in engine speed.

WARNING

Never leave the vehicle with the engine running. The vehicle can suddenly move and, especially when in gear or in the corresponding driving position, can cause serious accidents and injuries.

NOTICE

- The starter motor or the engine may be damaged when attempting to switch on the engine while driving or when the engine is started again immediately after being switched off.
- When the engine is cold, avoid high engine speeds, full throttle and high engine demand.
- Do not push or pull the vehicle to start the engine. Unburned fuel can damage the catalytic converter.

Do not let the engine warm up when the vehicle is stationary. Start the vehicle moving.

If you have a good view through the windows, be careful not to strain the engine when it is cold. In this way, the engine reaches operating temperature more quickly and generates fewer emissions.

When the engine is switched on, the major electrical consumers are switched off at the same time.

rally.

After starting a cold engine, louder running noises may occur.

for a short period. This is normal and should not cause concern

Switch off the engine

– Bring the vehicle to a complete stop → .
– *Vehicles with ignition lock:* turn the vehicle key in the ignition lock to position → fig. 91 0 .
– *Vehicles with starter button:* Press the starter button briefly → Fig. 92. If the engine cannot be switched off, carry out emergency shutdown → page 116.
– Observe the notes on the combined instrument → p. 13.

COPIA

⚠ WARNING

Never switch off the engine while the vehicle is in motion. This can cause loss of control of the vehicle and lead to accidents and serious injury.

- The airbags and seatbelt pretensioners do not function if the ignition is switched off.
- The brake booster does not work with the motor switched off. With the motor switched off, more pressure must be applied to the brake pedal to stop.
- If the vehicle key is removed from the ignition switch, the steering lock may engage and the vehicle may not be manoeuvrable.

⚠ WARNING

Parts of the exhaust system become very hot. This can lead to fires and serious injuries.

- Never park the vehicle in such a way that parts of the exhaust system come into contact with flammable materials underneath the vehicle, e.g. bushes, leaves, dry grass, spilled fuel, etc.
- Never use additional underbody protection or anti-corrosive products on the exhaust pipe, catalytic converter or heat shield plates.

NOTICE

If the vehicle is driven with a lot of effort
The engine may overheat after it has stopped. To avoid damage to the engine, run it in the neutral position for about 2 minutes before switching it off.

On vehicles with automatic transmissions, if it is not possible to remove the vehicle key from the vehicle from the vehicle's ignition switch, the vehicle key must be removed from the ignition switch.

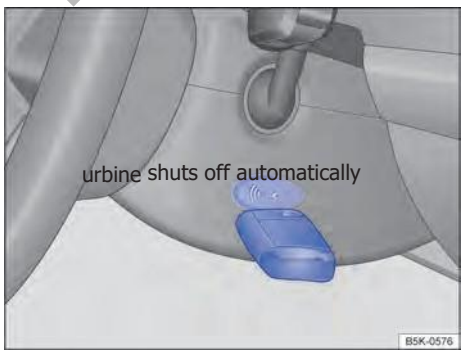
If necessary, press and release the selector lever locking button on the selector lever.

After shutting down the engine, the radiator turbine in the engine compartment

can continue to run for a few minutes with the ignition off or with the vehicle key out of the ignition. The radiator

t

urbine shuts off automatically



Electronic immobiliser

The immobiliser helps to prevent the engine from being switched on with an unauthorised vehicle key and thus preventing the vehicle from being moved.

The vehicle key is equipped with a chip. With the help of this chip, the immobiliser is automatically deactivated when the vehicle key is inserted into the ignition lock.

The electronic immobiliser is automatically activated as soon as the vehicle key is removed from the ignition → p. 65. In vehicles with Keyless Access, the vehicle key must be on the outside of the vehicle → p. 63.

For this reason, the engine can only be switched on with a matching original Volkswagen coded key. Coded vehicle keys are available from your Volkswagen dealer. → p. 61.

The perfect functioning of the vehicle is only guaranteed with original keys. Volkswagen.

Troubleshooting

COPIA

Fig. 93 On the right-hand side of the steering column: emergency start function for vehicles with Keyless Access keyless locking and starting system.

Control and warning lights on the combined instrument

The warning and control lights are on:

Defective engine control unit (Electronic Power Control). The engine must be serviced immediately by a Volkswagen Dealer or a specialist company.

Emissions deficiency of the exhaust system (OBD). Slow down. Drive carefully to the nearest Volkswagen dealer or specialist company. The engine must be checked.

Unauthorised vehicle key

When an unauthorised vehicle key is inserted into the ignition lock, the key can be removed as follows: ve:

– *Vehicles with manual transmission:* remove the vehicle key from the ignition lock.
– *Vehicles with automatic transmission:* Press and release the lock button on the selector lever. Remove the vehicle key from the ignition switch.

Emergency start function

If a valid vehicle key is not identified inside the vehicle, execute the emergency start function. A corresponding indicator will appear on the display of the combined instrument panel. This may be the case, for example, if the vehicle key battery is weak or discharged:

– Depress the brake pedal and hold it down.
– Hold the vehicle key directly after pressing the start button to the right of the steering column → fig. 93.
– The ignition is switched on automatically and, if necessary, the engine is started.

Emergency shutdown

If the engine cannot be switched off by pressing the start button lightly, it is necessary to perform an emergency shutdown:

– Press the start button twice within a few seconds or hold it down once for a long time.
– Engine switches off automatically → ⚠en *Start button* on p. 113.

Immobiliser malfunction.

If an invalid vehicle key is used or there is a system malfunction, a corresponding indication appears in the combined instrument display. The engine cannot be switched on. Use a valid key or find a dealer.
Volkswagen.

Start-Stop System

Start-Stop System

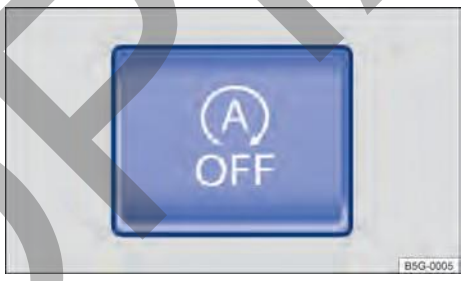


Fig. 94 In the upper part of the centre console: Start-Stop button.

Depending on the vehicle version and country, the Start-Stop system may not be available.

The Start-Stop system automatically switches off the engine when stopping the vehicle and in the stages of vehicle standstill. If necessary, the engine restarts automatically.

Switching on the Start-Stop system

The function is automatically activated each time the ignition is switched on. Information on the current status is shown on the display of the combined instrument.

Further information on the Start-Stop mode can be accessed in the radio system via the
The MENU function button or the MENU function button and of the function areas Vehicle , Selection , Vehicle condition .

COPIA

When driving through flooded roads, always switch off the Start-Stop system manually.

Control lights

If the control light is on, this indicates that the Start-Stop system is available and that the automatic engine shutdown is active.

If the control light is on, the Start-Stop system is not available or the Start-Stop system has automatically started the engine.
→ p. 117.

The status of the Start-Stop system can be viewed on the display of the combined instrument.

Vehicles with manual transmission

- When coasting or at a standstill, put the vehicle in neutral and release the clutch pedal. The engine is switched off.
- To restart, simply depress the clutch.

Vehicles with automatic transmission

- To stop the vehicle, press and hold down the accelerator pedal. Just before or when the vehicle comes to a stop, the engine switches off.
- To restart the engine, take your foot off the brake pedal or depress the accelerator pedal.

Important conditions for automatic engine shutdown

- The driver wore his seat belt.
- The driver's door is closed.
- The engine compartment cover is closed.
- A minimum engine temperature has been reached.
- *Vehicle with Climatronic:* the temperature inside the vehicle is in the range of the defined temperature and humidity values.

  air is not very high.
- The defroster function of the air conditioner is not switched on.
- The charge of the 12 V vehicle battery is sufficient.
- The temperature of the 12 V vehicle battery is neither too low nor too high.
- The vehicle is not on too steep a slope or incline.
- *Vehicle with automatic transmission:* the steering wheel is not turned sharply.
- The windscreen defroster is not switched on.
- The reverse gear did not engage.
- Park Assist is not activated.

If the conditions for automatic engine shutdown are only reached during a shutdown phase, the engine can also be switched off later, e.g. when the defrost function is switched off.

Conditions for an automatic restart

The engine may start automatically in the following circumstances:

- If the interior of the vehicle becomes very hot or very cold.
- If the vehicle starts to move.
- If the voltage in the 12 V vehicle battery is reduced.
- If the steering wheel moves.

Conditions requiring manual engine starting

The engine must be started manually under the following circumstances:

- If the driver's door is opened.
- If the lid of the engine compartment is opened.

Basically: the engine will always restart automatically if this is necessary for the vehicle and the recognised situation.

Switching the Start-Stop system on and off manually

- Press the button on the centre console to deactivate the system manually → fig. 94.
- Press the button in the new centre console The system can be activated manually by → fig. 94.

Each time the button is pressed, the instrument cluster display shows the status of the Start-Stop system.

COPIA

If the Start-Stop system has switched off the engine, the engine starts again as soon as the system is deactivated with the button.

When driving through flooded roads, always switch off the Start-Stop system manually.

Never switch off the engine while the vehicle is in motion. This can cause loss of control of the vehicle, accidents and serious injury.

- The airbags and seatbelt pretensioners do not operate when the ignition is switched off.
- The brake booster does not work with the motor switched off. More force must be applied to the brake pedal to stop the vehicle.
- The power steering does not work when the motor is switched off. More force is required to steer the vehicle.
- When working in the engine compartment, the start-stop system must be switched off.

NOTICE

If the Start-Stop system is used for a long time If the vehicle's 12 V battery is exposed to very high external temperatures for a long period of time, this can damage the vehicle's 12 V battery.

In some cases it may be necessary to restart the engine more quickly.
nual. Please note the message that appears on the display of the combined instrument.

At temperatures above approx. 38° C, the engine shutdown function can be switched off.
deactivate automatically.

On vehicles with con- duction profile selection, if the con- duction profile is selected
The Start-Stop system is automatically switched on.

When driving through flooded roads, always switch off the Start-Stop system so that it is always in operation.
manual.

Troubleshooting

Engine no longer starts automatically

Vehicles with automatic gearbox: If the engine does not start more automatically, the advertence **Fault: vehicle's power system. Go to a workshop.** may appear on the display of the combined instrument panel.

– Start the engine manually. → p. 113.
– Manually deactivate the Start-Stop system.
– Contact a Volkswagen dealer or a specialist company immediately.

Manual gearbox

Manual transmission: engage gear

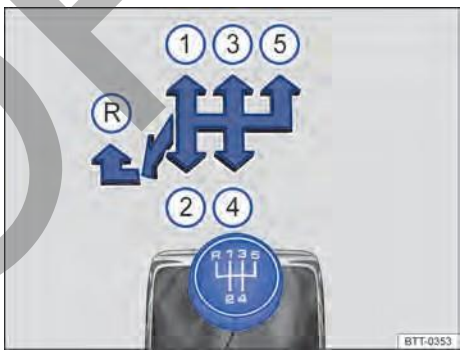


Fig. 95 Schematic diagram of the 5-speed manual transmission.

COPIA

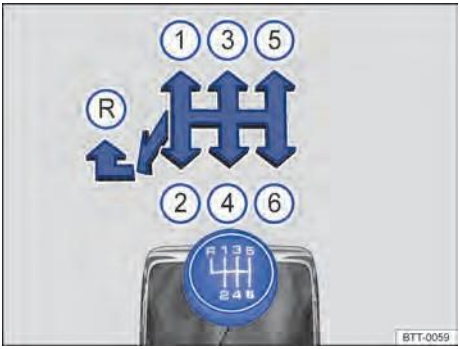


Fig. 96 Schematic diagram of the 6-speed manual transmission.

Engage forward gear

The positions of the individual gears are shown on the gearshift lever → fig. 95 and → fig. 96.

– Fully depress the clutch pedal and keep it depressed.
– Move the gear lever to the desired position →⚠ .
– Gently release the clutch pedal to initiate movement.

Volkswagen recommends fully depressing the clutch pedal to start the engine.

Reverse gear

– Reverse only when the vehicle is stationary.
– Fully depress the clutch pedal and keep it depressed →⚠ .
– Move the gear lever to the neutral position and press it down.
– Move the gear lever all the way to the left and then forward to the reverse gear position.
→ fig. 95 and → fig. 96 R .
– Gently release the clutch pedal to initiate movement.

Downshift

Downshifting while driving should always be carried out for the next lower gear and with engine revolutions not too high →⚠ . If the engine speed or engine speed is very high, omit one or more downshifts.

The clutch and transmission can be damaged when downshifting, even with the foot on the clutch, and the engine →ⓘ .

⚠ WARNING

The vehicle with the engine running moves immediately when a gear is engaged and the clutch pedal is released.

- Never switch off the engine while the vehicle is in motion.
- Never engage reverse gear when the vehicle is moving.

⚠ WARNING

Incorrect downshifting for very low speeds can cause loss of control of the vehicle and lead to accidents and serious injuries.

ⓘ NOTICE

If the gear lever is shifted to a low gear at high speed or engine speed, this can cause serious damage to the clutch, transmission and engine. This also applies if the clutch pedal remains depressed and the gear is not changed.

ⓘ NOTICE

To avoid damage and premature wear, observe the following:

- When driving, do not rest your hand on the gear lever. Hand pressure is transferred to the transmission positioning hooks.
- Ensure that the vehicle comes to a complete stop before reversing.
- When changing gear, always press the clutch pedal all the way down.
- On slopes, do not secure the vehicle with the engine and clutch "slipping" with the engine.
in operation.

SOPA

Automatic transmission

Automatic transmission: engage the gear

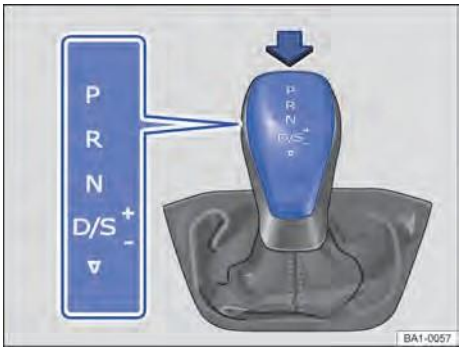


Fig. 97 Automatic transmission selector lever with lock button (arrow).

Depending on the vehicle version, the automatic trans- mission may not be available.

The gear engaged or the driving program of the transmission is displayed on the instrument cluster with the ignition switched on.

- Parking lock
The drive wheels are mechanically locked. ciently. Only engage when the vehicle *is stationary*. To move the selector lever out of the position with the ignition on, depress the brake pedal and press the lock button on the selector lever.

- Reverse gear
Reverse gear engaged. Engage only in reverse gear.
The vehicle must be *stationary*.

- Neutral
The change is in the neutral position. There is no power transmission to the wheels and the braking effect of the engine is not available.

- Permanent position for driving forward

Running position : normal programme

All forward gears are upshifted and downshifted automatically. The timing of gear shifting depends on engine load, individual driving style and driving speed.

Walking position : sport programme

The gears are upshifted *further forward* and downshifted before the **D** gear position in order to fully utilise the engine's power reserves. The timing of gear changes depends on engine load, individual driving style and driving speed.

To change between gear position **D** and **S**, move the selector lever backwards → fig. 97.

In this case, the selector lever will always spring back to the **D/S** position. This also works in the Tiptrot- selector travel.
nic→ p. 121.

Selector lever lock
In the **P** or **N** position, the locking of the gear lever prevents a gear position from being inadvertently engaged, which would unintentionally set the vehicle in motion.

To release the selector lever lock with the ignition on, press and hold down the brake pedal. At the same time, press the selector lever locking button in the direction of the arrow → fig. 97.

The selector lever does not lock when shifting through the **N** position, e.g. from **R** to **D/S**, for fast gear changes. In this way, a stuck vehicle can be "conditioned" out of the jam. The selector lever lock will engage if, with the brake pedal not applied, the selector lever remains in the **N** position for more than about one second and at a speed of less than about 5 km/h.

WARNING

Incorrect gear engagement can lead to loss of vehicle control, accidents and serious injury.

- Never accelerate when engaging a gear ratio.
- With the engine running and the gear ratio engaged, the vehicle moves as the brake pedal is released.
- Never shift the selector lever to reverse or **P** position while driving.

COPIA

⚠ WARNING

Unintentional vehicle movements can cause serious injury.

- As the driver, never leave the driver's seat with the engine running and a gear ratio engaged. When it is necessary to leave the vehicle with the engine running, apply the parking brake and move the selector lever to the **P** position.
- With the engine running and the selector lever position **D/S** or **R** engaged, the vehicle must be held stationary with the brake pedal. Even at idling speed, power transmission is not completely interrupted and the vehicle "creeps".
- Never shift into gear position **P** when the vehicle is in motion.
- Never leave the vehicle with the selector lever position **N**. The vehicle will descend a slope, regardless of whether the engine is running or not.

NOTICE

If, when the vehicle is stationary, the parking brake is applied and the vehicle is not moving, the parking brake is released.
If the brake pedal is released with the selector lever in position **P**, the vehicle can be moved a few centimetres forwards or backwards.

If, while driving, the **N** position is accidentally selected, remove the foot from the steering wheel.
of the accelerator pedal. Wait for the engine idle speed to be in neutral before
to engage a gear ratio again.

Gearshift with Tiptronic

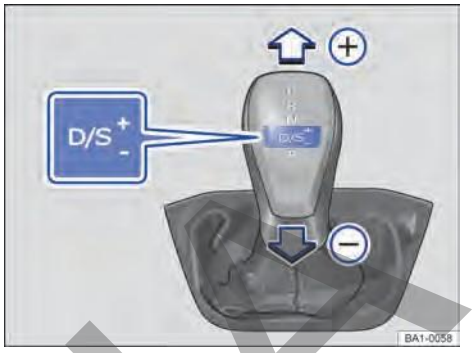


Fig. 98 Selector lever in Tiptronic position.



Fig. 99 Steering wheel with Tip- tronic tilt selector switches.

With automatic transmission, the gears can be upshifted or downshifted manually with the Tiptronic.

Controlling the Tiptronic with the selector lever

– In the **D/S** position, move the lever to the right to the Tiptronic selector stroke.
– Move the selector lever forwards ⊕ or backwards ⊖, to increase or decrease the march → fig. 98.

COPY

Controlling the Tiptronic with the steering wheel paddles

– Press the right-hand tilt selector lever → fig. 99 towards the steering wheel to increase the gear.
– Press the left-hand cam towards the steering wheel to downshift.
– To deactivate Tiptronic, press the right-hand lever towards the steering wheel for about one second.

The Tiptronic is automatically deactivated if the cams are not operated for some time or if the selector lever is not in the Tiptronic selector course.

NOTICE

- When accelerating, just before the maximum permissible engine speed is reached, the transmission automatically shifts to the next higher gear.
- In manual downshift, the transmission shifts gear only if a high engine speed can no longer be achieved

Driving with automatic transmission

Forward gears are automatically upshifted and downshifted.

Driving on slopes

The steeper the gradient, the lower the gear selected. Shorter gears increase the braking effect of the engine. Never drive down mountains or hills with the vehicle in the neutral **N** position.

– Reduce speed.
– Move the selector lever from the right-hand **D/S** position in the direction of the Tiptronic selector direction → page 121.
– Downshift with a short backward tap on the selector lever.
– **O:** downshift with the steering wheel paddles → p. 122.

Stop and start uphill

The steeper the slope, the lower the gear selected.

When stopping on slopes with a gear ratio engaged, the vehicle must always be prevented from moving by depressing the brake pedal or applying the parking brake. Only when starting, release the brake pedal or parking brake →.

Kick-down

The kick-down function allows maximum acceleration with the selector lever in the **D/S** or Tiptronic position.

When the accelerator pedal is fully depressed, the automatic transmission engages a lower gear. This uses the full acceleration of the vehicle →.

With kick-down mode, the automatic upshift to the next higher gear occurs only when the prescribed maximum engine rotation is reached.

Rapid acceleration can cause loss of traction and cause the vehicle to skid, especially on slippery roads. This can lead to loss of vehicle control, accidents and serious injury.

- Always adapt your driving style to the flow of traffic.
- Use Kick-Down or rapid acceleration only when visibility, climatic, road and traffic conditions permit and other drivers are not at risk due to vehicle acceleration and driving style.

WARNING

Never let the brakes "slip" frequently and for long periods of time or apply the brake pedal frequently and for long periods of time. Constant braking causes overheating of the brakes. This can significantly decrease braking performance, increase braking distance and, under certain circumstances, lead to total failure of the brake system.

NOTICE

- When stopping on slopes with a gear ratio engaged, do not stop the vehicle with the accelerator pedal. This can overheat and damage the transmission.
automatic transmission.

COPY

- Never let the vehicle slip in the **N** position of the selector lever, especially when the engine is switched off. Failure to lubricate the automatic transmission can damage it.

NOTICE

- Never let the brakes "slip" with light pedal pressure if braking is not really necessary. This increases abrasion.
- Before driving on a longer route with steep gradients, slow down and shift to a more suitable recovery gear. In this way, the efficiency of the electric drive brake can be utilised and the brake can be relieved. Otherwise, the brake may overheat and eventually fail. Use the brakes only when it is necessary to reduce speed or to slow down the vehicle.
  tion to stop.

Troubleshooting

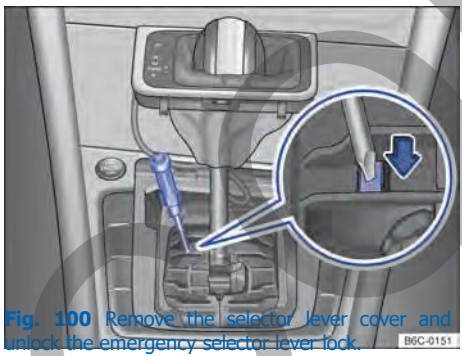


Fig. 100 Remove the selector lever cover and unlock the emergency selector lever lock.

Warning and control lights on the combined instrument

The control lights come on.

Do not continue! Transmission faulty. Allow the gearbox to cool down in selector lever position **P**. If the gearbox is not in the correct position, the gearbox may be damaged.

If the warning does not disappear, do not continue and seek specialist technical assistance. Failure to do so may result in significant damage to the transmission.

Brake pedal not depressed, e.g. during an attempt to select another gear position with the selector lever. To engage a gear ratio, depress the brake pedal.

The control lights are flashing.

The selector lever lock button is not pressed down. Starting is prevented. Engage selector lever lock.
→ p. 120.

Troubleshooting the locking of the selector lever

In rare cases, on vehicles with automatic transmission, the selector lever lock may not engage. The drive is then de-energised to prevent unattended starting. The control light flashes and an information text is also displayed. To engage the selector lever lock, proceed as follows:

– apply the brake pedal and release the pedal again.

Emergency release of the selector lever

If the vehicle has to be towed during a power failure, e.g. 12 V vehicle battery discharged, an emergency release of the selector lever lock must be carried out. For this purpose, seek specialist technical assistance.

The emergency release is located under the cover of the selector lever frame.

Removing the selector lever cover

– Apply the parking brake.
– Switch off the ignition.

COPIA

– Carefully pull upwards the cover in the area of the lever housing with the electrical cables connected.
– Turn the cover upwards over the selector lever →⚠ .

Emergency unlocking of the selector lever locking device

– Use a screwdriver to carefully press the release lever in the direction of the arrow and hold it in this position → fig. 100.
– Press the locking button on the lever and move the lever to the **N position**.
– After the emergency release, carefully reposition and press the cover back into the centre console, taking care to ensure that the electrical cables are correctly positioned.

Emergency programme

If all the indicators of the selector lever positions are highlighted with a light background on the display of the combined instrument panel, there is a system malfunction. The automatic transmission operates in an emergency programme. In the emergency programme, the vehicle can still be operated, but at a reduced speed and not in all gears.

With automatic transmission, in some cases it will **no longer be possible to drive in reverse gear**.

In all cases, the automatic transmission must be checked immediately by a specialised company.

Automatic transmission overheating

The automatic transmission can become very hot, e.g. due to frequent starts, "coasting" or heavy traffic. Overheating is indicated by the warning light and, if necessary, by a text message on the display of the combined instrument panel. In addition, an audible warning may sound. Detect and allow the transmission to cool down →ⓘ .

The vehicle does not move forwards or backwards despite the gear level engaged.

If the vehicle does not move in the desired direction, the gear ratio may not be correctly engaged by the system. Then depress the brake pedal and re-engage the gear ratio.

If the vehicle still does not move in the desired direction, there is damage to the system. Seek specialist technical assistance and have the system checked.

⚠ WARNING

Never move the selector lever out of position **P** while the parking brake is not applied. Otherwise, the vehicle may start to move unexpectedly on slopes and cause serious accidents and injuries.

ⓘ NOTICE

If the vehicle, with the engine switched off and the selector lever in the **N** position, is moved for a longer period of time or at a higher speed, the automatic transmission will be damaged, e.g. during towing.

ⓘ NOTICE

- The first time transmission overheating appears, you must stop the vehicle safely or drive at a speed of more than 20 km/h.
- If the text message and the audible alert beeps every 10 seconds, the vehicle should immediately be safely stopped and the engine should be switched off. Allow the transmission to cool down.
- To avoid damage to the transmission, proceed only when the audible alarm no longer sounds. As long as the transmission is overheating, start-up or start-up processes should be avoided.
  duction at throughput speed.

Assistance system on uphill

The Hill Hold Control (HHC) system assists the driver during hill starts.
slopes, holding the vehicle.

COPY

The hill assist system is automatically activated under the following conditions

Vehicles with manual transmission

The following conditions must be fulfilled **at all times**:

1. **Hold** the vehicle **stationary** with the brake pedal at a gradient of approximately 5 %.
2. The engine runs "regularly".
3. Fully depress the clutch pedal and move the gearshift lever to the **1st gear** position for driving forwards uphill or to the **R** position for driving backwards uphill.

To start, take your foot off the brake pedal and at the same time release the clutch pedal (engage) and accelerate as necessary. **When releasing the brake the vehicle is held for approximately 2 seconds. The brake is released slowly when starting. If the vehicle does not start within 2 seconds, the brake is released and the vehicle rolls backwards.**

Vehicles with automatic transmission

hand, has a

The following conditions must be fulfilled **at all times**:

1. **Hold** the vehicle **stationary** with the brake pedal on an incline of approximately 5%.
2. The engine runs "regularly".
3. With the selector lever in the **D/S** position for driving forwards uphill or in the **R** position for driving backwards uphill.

To start, take your foot off the brake pedal and accelerate as necessary. **The brake is released slowly when starting.**

The hill assist system is immediately deactivated:

- If one of the conditions mentioned above → p. 125 is not met, *the hill assist system is automatically activated under the following conditions*.
- If the driver's door is opened.
- In the event of irregular operation or defects in the engine.
- If the engine shuts down or dies.

⚠

- If the vehicle does not start immediately after releasing the brake pedal, it may even move backwards. In this case, immediately apply the brake pedal or pull the parking brake.
- If the engine dies, immediately apply the brake pedal or pull the parking brake.
- If you are on a hill, in heavy traffic, and you want to prevent the vehicle from rolling backwards when starting, apply the brake pedal for a few seconds before starting.

Power steering

Address information

Electromechanically assisted steering (compared to hydraulically assisted steering) consumes less power than hydraulically assisted steering, as it is activated only when the steering wheel is turned. The system for hydraulic assistance, on the other

The hydraulic system operates constantly, even when the vehicle is moving in a straight line. In electromechanically assisted steering, a computerised control unit linked to an electric motor, sensors and a gearbox replaces the hoses, pump, reservoir and fluid of a hydraulic system.

The electromechanical steering assistance automatically adapts to the driving speed, torque and angle applied by the driver to steer the vehicle. The electromechanical assistance only works when the vehicle's engine is running.

If the electromechanical assistance is reduced or not functioning, it will be necessary to apply much more force than usual to manoeuvre the vehicle. However, the driver will never lose control of the vehicle's steering.

In vehicles with driving profile selection, the behaviour of the electromechanical steering assistance can be influenced by the
The driving profile selected.

COPIA

Mechanical locking of the steering column (steering lock)

The mechanical steering column lock (steering lock) may not be available in some countries.

On vehicles with an ignition cylinder, the steering column is mechanically locked:

– Stop the vehicle and move the selector lever to position **P** or the gearshift lever to neutral.
– Removing the vehicle key
– Turn the steering wheel slightly until the lock audibly engages.

To unlock the steering column:

– Turn the steering wheel slightly to release the steering lock.
– Insert the vehicle key into the ignition lock.
– Hold the steering wheel in position and switch on the ignition.

WARNING

- The electro-mechanical steering assistance only works when the vehicle's engine is running. In the event of engine failure while the vehicle is moving, the electro-mechanical assistance still operates for a few minutes to ensure that the vehicle can be safely parked.
- Never leave the vehicle running with the engine switched off.
- Never remove the vehicle key from the ignition lock while the vehicle is in motion.

Troubleshooting

Warning and control lights on the combined instrument

When the ignition is switched on, some warning and control lights come on quickly as a function check and go out after a few seconds. If the following lights come on again:

Do not continue! Electro-mechanical assistance for out-of-action operation. Immediately contact a dealer.
rio Volkswagen.
Electromechanical assistance for limited operation. Contact a Volkswagen

D

ealer as soon as possible.

Selection of the driving profile

Introduction to the topic

The driver can adjust various characteristics of the vehicle systems to the current driving situation, the desired driving comfort and an economical driving style via the driving profiles. The vehicle systems to be adjusted include, among others, the chassis, engine control and air conditioning.

Depending on the vehicle version, various driving profiles can be selected. The degree to which the vehicle configuration influences the different driving profiles depends on the vehicle version.

The driving profile can be changed both when the vehicle is stationary and while driving→⚠ .
After selecting a driving profile, the vehicle, except the engine, is immediately configured according to the new profile.
When traffic permits, briefly remove .

COPIA

The selected driving profile will also be activated for the driver.

WARNING

Adjusting the profile while driving can take attention away from traffic and cause accidents.

Some settings can be saved in the user accounts of the configuration function and are changed when the user account is changed. user → p. 27.

Adjusting the driving profile

Please note ⚠ at the beginning of this chapter on page 127.



Fig. 101 At the top of the centre console: driving profile selection button.

Selecting a driving profile

- Switch on the ignition.
- Press the selection button for the conduction profile. → fig. 101.
- Press the function button of the radio system to display more information about the currently active driving profile.
- Press the function button of the desired conduction profile.
- **Or:** Press the driving profile selection button → fig. 101 again to select the next driving profile.

After switching off the ignition, the adjusted driving profile and the individual settings remain selected.

The **Sport** and **Eco** driving profiles also remain selected after the ignition is switched off. However, some settings are not

The Normal profile may change when the ignition is switched on again.

To reactivate the sport functions, select the **Sport** profile again or push the automatic transmission selector lever slightly backwards to select driving program **S**. To reactivate the eco functions, select the **Eco** profile again.

Recommended movement situations depending on the driving profile

- **ECO**: sets the vehicle for low fuel consumption and helps the driver to adopt a fuel-efficient driving style. In the **Eco** profile, the freewheel function is available.
- **Normal**: the intermediate setting, e.g. suitable for everyday use.
- **Sport**: gives the driver a sporty driving sensation.
- **Individual**: certain systems can be tailored to personal preference → p. 128.

⚠ WARNING

By changing the driving profile, the driving characteristics may change. Never allow the selection of the driving profile to lead you to take risks that compromise safety.

- Always adapt speed and driving style to visibility, weather, track and traffic conditions.

In vehicles with automatic transmission, selecting the **Sport** driving profile will automatically switches to driving program **S**. In the **Eco** driving profile, it automatically switches to driving program **D.**

In the **Sport** or **Indivi- dual** driving profiles (menu **Engine:**, setting **Sport**) and in the pro- **In the S** driving mode, the Start-Stop system is deactivated.

Independent of the selection of the driving profile, the driver can modify the driving profile by certain vehicle functions. In the **Eco** driving profile, for example, it is possible to switch to the **S**driving programme.

COPIA

Adapt the driving profile to personal preferences.

Please note⚠ at the beginning of this chapter. See the title on page 127.

Select the Individual driving profile

– Switch on the ignition.
– Turn on the radio system.
– Press the selection key of the con- duction profile and press the Individual function button of the radio system.
– Press the function button Adapt to open the **Individual** menu.

⚠

Driver distraction can cause accidents and injuries. Operation of the radio system can distract you from what is happening in traffic.

Off-road indicator



Fig. 102 In the radio system: off-road indicator.

In the off-road indicator, digital inputs are displayed which provide additional information about the vehicle and its surroundings. This makes it possible to assess the current driving situation more accurately.

Depending on the vehicle version, the off-road indicator may not be available.

Open the off-road indicator

– Press the key or the system function area of the radio.
– Press the **Vehicle** function button.
– Press the **Select** function button.
– Press the **Offroad** function button.

Selecting the instruments and setting the units

Various instruments are displayed on the screen → fig. 102.

To toggle between instruments, swipe upwards on the display.

The unit of some instruments can be adjusted in the radio system.

Offroad indicator instruments (depending on version):

– **Altimeter:** The altimeter shows the current altitude above sea level.
– **Steering angle indicator: the** steering angle of the vehicle is displayed in the range from -49° to 49° maximum.

COPIA

If the handwheel is oriented to the left, the value shall be positive; if it is oriented to the right, it shall be negative.

– **Compass:** The compass indicates the current driving direction.
– **Coolant temperature indicator:** This indicator is equivalent to the temperature indicator of the combined instrument. If the engine is heavily stressed at high outside temperatures, the pointer moves clockwise. This is not so important if the control warning lights do not light up or flash on the combined instrument.
– **Oil temperature indicator:** The pointer remains in the centre area when the engine has reached operating temperature. If the pointer is in the lower left area, the engine has not yet reached operating temperature. If the engine is heavily stressed at high outside temperatures, the pointer moves clockwise. This is not so important if the con- trol warning lights do not light up or flash in the combined instrument panel → page 269.

Adjusting the display areas to the driving situation

The instruments displayed can be selected according to the movement situation, as well as the conditions of your surroundings and the terrain:

– **Sandy terrain:** indicators for oil temperature, steering angle of the aircraft and engine coolant temperature
– **Slopes:** indicators for steering wheel steering angle and engine coolant temperature, altimeter, altimeter, etc.
– **Mountainous terrain:** Steering wheel steering angle indicator, altimeter, compass

⚠

Driver distraction can cause accidents and injuries. Operation of the radio system can distract you from what is happening in traffic.

- Always drive responsibly and pay the utmost attention to traffic.

COPIA

Driver assistance system

speed regulator system (GRA)

Introduction to the topic

The cruise control system (GRA) helps the driver to maintain a constant set speed.

Depending on the vehicle version, the cruise control system (GRA) may not be available.

Speed range

The GRA is available for driving to forward at about 20 km/h.

Gear change

Once the clutch pedal is depressed, gearchanging will be interrupted and, after the gear change, will continue automatically.

Downhill driving

When driving downhill, the maximum speed may be exceeded due to the pen- dient.

Brake the vehicle with the brake and if necessary engage a lower gear.

How do I control the GRA?

You can control the GRA via the multi-function steering wheel → p. 130.

⚠ WARNING

If it is not possible to drive safely, at a sufficient distance and at a consistent speed, the use of the speed control system can lead to accidents and serious injuries.

- Never use the GRA in heavy traffic, for very short distances, on steep or winding roads, on slippery roads, e.g. in snow, ice, wet or gravel, or on flooded roads.
- Never use the GRA on loose ground or unpaved roads.
- Adapt speed and sufficient distance to vehicles ahead, weather, road and traffic conditions.
- To avoid unwanted speed regulation, always switch off the GRA after use.
- It is dangerous to use a pre-programmed speed when it is excessive for current road, traffic or atmospheric conditions.
- When driving on slopes, the GRA cannot maintain a constant vehicle speed. The vehicle's own weight increases the speed. Downshift one gear or brake the vehicle with the brake.

Controlling the GRA via the multifunction steering wheel

Please note ⚠ at the beginning of this chapter on page 130.



Fig. 103 Left side of the multifunction steering wheel: buttons to control the GRA.

Connect

– Press the key . ▢

No speed is saved and no regulation is made yet.

Initiate regulation

– While driving, press the key . ▢

COPY

The current speed is saved and adjusted. The green control light lights up.

Adjusting the speed

The saved speed can be adjusted by means of the GRA is regulating:

- + 1 km/h
- - 1 km/h
- + 10 km/h
- - 10 km/h

To continuously change the speed, press and hold the key or . The vehicle adjusts the current speed by accelerating or decelerating. The vehicle does not brake actively.

Disrupting regulation

- Briefly press the or . As Alternatively, depress the brake pedal. The speed remains stored.

Resuming regulation

– Press the key .

The programmed speed is resumed and regulated.

Disconnect

– Press the key for a few moments.

The GRA will be switched off and the saved speed will be deleted.

Troubleshooting

Please note ⚠ at the beginning of this chapter on page 130.

The regulation is automatically interrupted.

Several causes are possible:

– The driver stepped on the brake pedal.

– The vehicle exceeded the memorised speed for a longer time.

– Malfunction. Disconnect the GRA and have it checked by a specialist company. Volkswagen recommends seeking out a Volkswagen Dealer for this purpose.

Parking and manoeuvring

Parking

Stopping the vehicle

Always park the vehicle in the prescribed sequence.

Always stop the vehicle on level and firm ground → ⚠ .

– Stop the vehicle. In manual transmission, depress the clutch *fully*.

– Depress the brake pedal and hold it until the engine is switched off.

– On *automatic transmission*, move the selector lever to the **P** position.

– Pull the parking brake lever to → p. 132.

– Switch off the engine. The control light on the combined instrument panel must be lit *red*.

– Remove the vehicle key from the ignition lock.

– On vehicles with manual transmission, on flat ground or uphill, engage 1st gear, reverse gear on slopes and release the clutch pedal.

– Take your foot off the brake.

– Ensure that all occupants disembark, especially children.

– Take all vehicle keys with you when you leave the vehicle.

– Lock the vehicle.

Parking on hills and slopes

Before switching off the engine, turn the steering wheel so that the parked vehicle moves with the front wheels against the steering wheel if it starts to move.

– On slopes, steer the front wheels so that they point in the direction of the guide.

– On slopes, steer the front wheels so that they point towards the centre of the road.

⚠ WARNING

Parts of the exhaust system become very hot. This can cause fires and serious injuries.

SOPIA

- Never park the vehicle in such a way that parts of the exhaust system come into contact with flammable materials underneath the vehicle, e.g. bushes, leaves, dry grass, spilled fuel, etc.

⚠

If the vehicle is not parked and driven in the correct way, the vehicle may be displaced. This can lead to accidents and serious injuries.

- Ensure that the parking brake is correctly applied.
- Never remove the vehicle key from the ignition lock while the vehicle is in motion.
- Always take all vehicle keys with you when leaving the vehicle. It can start the engine and electrical equipment, such as electric windows, can be started and cause serious injury.
- Never leave children or persons with special needs alone in the vehicle. In an emergency, they would not be able to leave the vehicle on their own or to look after themselves. In a closed vehicle, for example, depending on the season, there may be very high or very low temperatures, which can cause serious injury and illness, especially in young children, or even death.

NOTICE

- To avoid unwanted vehicle movement when stopping, only take your foot off the brake pedal after applying the parking brake.
- Drive carefully in parking spaces with overhanging curbs or fixed bollards. Objects higher than the ground can damage the bumper and other vehicle parts when parking or leaving the parking space. To avoid damage, stop before the wheels touch the bollards or curbs.
- Drive cautiously over dips and inlets, ramps, curbs and other objects. Lower vehicle parts such as the bumper, spoiler and parts of the cha- sis, engine or exhaust system can be damaged when driving over them.

Respect the legal determinations for stopping and parking a vehicle

Parking brake

Apply the parking brake

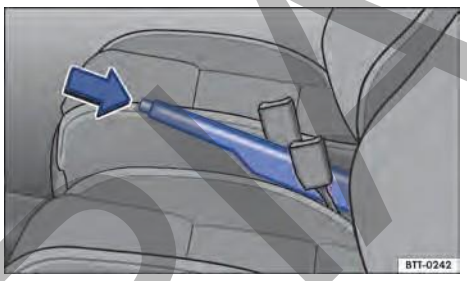


Fig. 104 Between the front seats: parking brake lever.

Always pull the parking brake lever when leaving or parking the vehicle.

Pull the parking brake.

– Pull the handbrake lever upwards with the locking button depressed.
→ fig. 104 (arrow).

The parking brake is activated when, with the ignition on, the indicator light in the combined instrument panel lights up.

Release the parking brake

– Pull the handbrake lever slightly upwards and press the locking button.
→ fig. 104 (arrow).

– Lower the parking brake lever as far as it will go using the locking button.

⚠ WARNING

Incorrect use of the parking brake can cause accidents and serious injuries.

COPY

- Never use the parking brake to brake the vehicle, except in an emergency. The braking distance is considerably longer, as only the rear wheels are braked. Always use the brake pedal.
- Never drive with the parking brake lever raised slightly. This can cause the brake to overheat and adversely affect the brake system. It also causes premature wear of the rear brake pads.
- Never accelerate from the engine compartment when the engine is running. The vehicle may start to move even with the parking brake applied.

NOTICE

To avoid unwanted vehicle movement when stopping, only take your foot off the foot brake pedal after applying the parking brake.
to.

Security guidelines for parking systems

The following systems are stationary systems:

– Parking aid → p. 134.
– Rear View Camera → p. 136

Which of the listed systems are available depends on the vehicle version.

Limits of parking systems

Objects, e.g. thin rods, fences, poles, trees, very low or very high obstacles and open or opening tailgates may not be recognised by the sensors or cameras.

In some cases, dirt or ice on the sensors or cameras may be registered as an obstacle.

Limits of the reversing camera

The reversing camera shows only two-dimensional images on the display. Due to the lack of depth, protruding objects or cavities in the track can be identified with difficulty or not at all.

The guidance lines are superimposed on the image by the system independently of the vehicle's surroundings, there is no automatic object recognition. The driver is responsible for assessing whether the vehicle fits in the parking space.

WARNING

Intelligent parking system technology cannot go beyond the limits imposed by physics and operates only within the limits of the system. The increased comfort offered by parking systems must not lead to a risky situation. Parking systems cannot replace the driver's attention.

- Always adapt speed and driving style to visibility, weather, track and traffic conditions.
- Unintentional vehicle movements can cause serious injury.
- Always keep the direction of parking and the relevant areas around the vehicle in view.
- Do not let the traffic's attention be diverted by the indications on the display of the combined instrument or by the images shown on the radio system.
- Always observe the vehicle's surroundings, as small children, animals and objects are not always recognised by parking systems.
- Parking systems have blind fields that cannot detect people or objects.
- External sound sources and certain surfaces of objects and clothing may influence the sensor signals. Under certain circumstances, persons and objects may not be detected or may be detected incorrectly.

SOFIA

- Certain objects may, due to the resolution of the display and in insufficient light conditions, not be displayed or may be displayed insufficiently, e.g. thin poles or railings.
- The signals and indications of parking systems have reaction times which at very fast approach may not be sufficient for an alert to be issued.

Volkswagen recommends practising the operation of the parking aids.
The aim is to familiarise the driver with the systems and the parking space in a place or in a car park without traffic.
with its functions.

Parking aid (Park Pilot)

Introduction to the topic

The parking aid assists the driver in parking and manoeuvring.

Depending on the vehicle version the parking aid may not be available.

The parking aid uses sensors in the front and rear bumper to detect the distance to an obstacle → p. 7. The system indicates via the radio system and audible signals when there is an obstacle in the detection area of the sensors.

System limits

Objects such as, for example, tow bars, thin rods, fences, posts, trees, very low or very high obstacles and open or opening tailgates may not be recognised by the sensors.

In some cases, dirt or ice on the sensors may be registered as an obstacle.

Switching on and off



Fig. 105 On the centre console: button for switching the parking aid on and off (depending on the vehicle version).

Switch on the parking aid

– Reverse gear.
– **Or:** press the key .

The parking aid switches on automatically when the vehicle is in reverse gear.

Depending on the vehicle version, the parking aid can also be activated automatically.

Turning off the parking aid

– Press the key .
– **O:** accelerate the vehicle forward with a speed greater than approximately 0 - -15 km/h.

Automatic activation (depending on version)

The parking aid is also activated when driving at a speed of less than 15 km/h against an obstacle in the front area. The automatic activation can be switched on in the radio system.

Automatic activation only works when the speed of approx. 15 km/h is not reached for the first time. An automatic restart is possible if the parking aid is switched off and on again using the button .

In addition, the automatic activation can be reactivated by switching off and on again.
vo the ignition.

COPIA

Manoeuvring brake function

If the vehicle is equipped with the manoeuvring braking function, the manoeuvring braking function will activate emergency braking as soon as an obstacle is detected ahead or during reversing. The manoeuvre braking function serves to reduce the possibility of front and rear collision.

For automatic brake intervention, the following requirements must be met:

- Braking manoeuvre function "active" in the selection box, via the radio menu → p. 27;
- The parking assistance system is activated when reverse gear is engaged or the parking aid system is activated via the button (depending on the vehicle version);
- The speed may not exceed 10 km/h;

The automatic braking function is inactive under the following conditions:

- If the parking aid has been activated automatically;
- Five metres after braking in the same direction, being active again after a gear change.

Touch the function button in the radio menu to switch the manoeuvre braking function on or off.

For the realisation of the auto-braking function, the ultrasonic sensors of the

system, the Parking Aid and the Parking Steering Assist. Full collision avoidance cannot be guaranteed by these ultrasonic sensors

Representation on the display



Fig. 106 Indication no radio system: full dis- play mode. The registered areas depend on the vehicle version.

In the radio system, the highlighted areas are represented in several segments → Fig. 106. The closer the vehicle approaches an obstacle, the closer the vehicle segment is presented. At the same time, sound signals sound.

Nearby obstacle. Continuous sound. **Do not continue!**

Obstacle in the path of the vehicle. A discontinuous sound sounds. The shorter the distance, the shorter the intervals between alerts.

Obstacle outside the course.

Mute sound signals.

Switch the manoeuvring braking function on and off (depending on version).

Switch to reversing camera (depending on version).

System in tested area with error (depending on version)

Troubleshooting

Sensor not visible, fault signal, system switches off

In the event of a sensor failure, the sensor's detection area is permanently switched off.

Malfunctions of the parking aid are indicated at the first switch-on by a text message with an audible alert and by the flashing of the control lamp on the key.

If the sensors are dirty or covered, the corresponding sensor group is displayed on.

COPY

parking aid display. In addition, shows a cleaning indication (depending on the version).

– Clean the sensors or remove stickers or accessories from the sensors and reversing camera → p. 309.
– Check for damage.

The system behaves differently than expected.

Several causes are possible:

– The sensors are dirty → p. 309. In addition to dirt and snow, the visibility of the sensor may also be compromised by residues from cleaning agents or coatings.
– The system prerequisites must be fulfilled → p. 134.
– The sensors are covered with water.
– The vehicle is damaged in the sensor area, e.g. due to parking impacts.
– The sensor pick-up areas are obstructed by accessories, e.g. bicycle rack systems.
– Changes were made to the paintwork in the area of the sensors or constructional changes, e.g. to the front of the vehicle or the chassis.
– Noise sources, e.g. rough asphalt or paving with cobblestones, interfere with the ultrasound signal.

Possible solutions

– Temporarily shut down the system.
– Check if one of the listed causes matches the problem.
– After elimination of the source of the faults, the system can be reconnected.
– If the system behaves unexpectedly, have the system checked by a Volkswagen dealer or a specialist company.

Rear View Camera

Introduction to the topic

The reversing camera at the rear of the vehicle facilitates the driver's view to the rear and aids manoeuvring when parking.

Depending on the vehicle version, the reversing camera may not be available.

The reversing camera shows the area behind the vehicle on the radio system display. Depending on the mode of the guidance lines, it supports the view to the rear.

⚠

The use of cameras to assess the distance to obstacles (people, vehicles, etc.) is inaccurate and can cause accidents and serious injuries.

- Camera lenses widen and distort the field of view and cause objects on the display to appear distorted or inaccurate.

Switching on and off

Please note⚠ at the beginning of this chapter on page 136.

Switching on the reversing camera

– Reverse gear.
– **Or:** press the key .▢

Switching off the reversing camera

Drive forward at least 15 km/h.

Representation on the display

Please note⚠ at the beginning of this chapter on page 136.

In the radio system, the image of the the reversing camera.

COPIA

Functions and representations are version-dependent and may differ from each other.

Configurations

With the reversing camera, configurations can be made via the function areas. Some settings depend on the version.

Function surfaces and symbols of the reversing camera:

X Exit the current representation.

brightness, contrast, colour.

Switch to parking assistance → p. 134.

Display the parking aid indicator.

Hide the parking aid indicator.

Switching the parking aid sound on and off.

Guidance lines

Red line: safe distance to the rear.
Green side lines: extension of the vehicle.
lo.

Premises

Please note, at the beginning of this chapter, on page 136.
chapter , on page 136.

2

In order to recognise a parking space, the following premises must be taken into account:

- Do not exceed the speed of approx. **15 km/h**.
- Width of the parking space: **vehicle length + 0.2 m**.

The following prerequisites must be met in order to display a fault-free image:

- The back cover is closed.
- The environment corresponds to a flat surface.
- The vehicle is not loaded at the rear.

Parking

Please note at the beginning of this chapter on page 136.

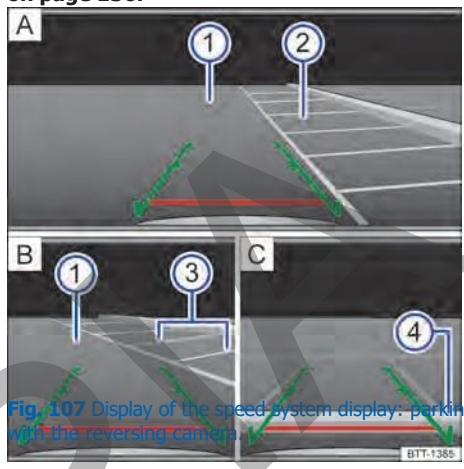


Fig. 107 Display of the speed system display: parking with the reversing camera.

Legend for fig. 107:

Select the parking space. Park in the selected parking space.

Align the vehicle in the parking space.

Track.

Parking space.

1 Lateral boundary of the parking space.

Rear boundary of the parking space.

3

4

Entering the parking space

- Position the vehicle in front of the parking space → fig. 107. ② .
- Reverse gear.
- Drive backwards slowly and manoeuvre in such a way that the green side rails are between the boundary lines of the road. selected parking space ② .

COPY

– Align the vehicle in the selected parking space so that the green side rails are on the parking lines.
side mite ③ .
– Stop the vehicle when the red line reaches the red line.
ce the rear boundary ④ .

Troubleshooting

Please note⚠ at the beginning of this chapter on page 136.

No camera image, fault message, system shuts down

– Clean the camera or remove stickers or accessories from the camera → p. 309.
– Check for damage.

The system behaves differently than expected.

Several causes are possible:

– The camera is dirty → p. 309. In addition to dirt and snow, the camera image may be compromised by residues or layers of cleaning agents.
– The system prerequisites must be fulfilled → p. 137.
– The chamber is covered with water.
– The vehicle is damaged in the area of the camera, e.g. due to parking impacts.
– The camera pick-up areas are obstructed by accessories, e.g. bicycle rack systems.
– Paint modifications were made in the area of the camera or construction modifications, e.g. at the front or on the chassis.

Solution for all cases

– Temporarily shut down the system.
– Check if one of the listed causes matches the problem.
– After elimination of the source of the faults, the system can be reconnected.
– If the system behaves unexpectedly, have the system checked by a Volkswagen dealer or a specialist company.

Park Assist (Park Assist)

Introduction to the topic

The parking steering assistant actively controls the steering of the vehicle when parking and leaving the parking space.

The parking steering assistant is an extension of the parking aid.
→ p. 134.

The parking steering assistant controls the steering of the vehicle automatically. The driver must accelerate, change gear and brake!

⚠ WARNING

Rapid rotational movements of the steering wheel can cause serious injury.

- During the manoeuvring procedure, do not touch the steering wheel until requested to do so by the system.
- Exception: in dangerous situations, intervene and take the wheel.

! *NOTICE*

The parking steering assistant is only guided by parked vehicles, curb guides or other elements. Make sure that the tyres and rims are not damaged during parking. If this is the case, please park the vehicle in a safe manner.
to prevent damage to the vehicle.

Requirements

Please note⚠ and! at the beginning of this chapter on page 138.

In order to park and exit the car park, the following requirements must be met :

COPIA

– The traction control (ASR) must be switched on → page 142.
– Distance: **0.5-1.5 m** when passing the parking space.
– The parking space has the minimum dimensions required to use the parking steering assistant. Longitudinal parking spaces for in-line parking: vehicle length + 80 cm. Longitudinal parking spaces for side-by-side parking: vehicle width + 70 cm.
– Speed when passing the parking space (in-line parking spaces): **40 km/h** maximum.
– Speed when passing the parking space (side-by-side parking spaces): **20 km/h** maximum.
– Speed when parking: maximum **7 km/h**. Automatic brake intervention may occur during the parking manoeuvre.

After the automatic intervention of the fre- nos it is possible to continue with the sta- tioning manoeuvre.

An automatic intervention only occurs on the brakes for each movement made during the parking manoeuvre. If a speed of approximately 7 km/h (4 mph) is exceeded again, the manoeuvre is interrupted.

Automatic interruption of the parking manoeuvre or exit from the parking space

The parking steering assistant interrupts parking or pulling out of the parking space if any of of the following cases occur:

– When pressed, press the key .
– The driver holds the steering wheel.
– The driver's door opens.
– The parking manoeuvre is not com- plete for about 6 minutes.
– There is a fault in the system.
– If the ASR is deactivated or intervenes in the control.

Automatic brake intervention to reduce damage

In some countries, the parking steering assistant assists the driver and automatically intervenes on the brakes in certain cases →⚠ .

Depending on the version and certain conditions, e.g. climatic conditions, load or inclination of the vehicle, the parking steering assistant can automatically brake the vehicle in front of an obstacle. The driver must then press the brake pedal. An automatic brake intervention to reduce damage causes the parking manoeuvre to end.

⚠

WARNING

The automatic brake intervention of the parking steering assistant must not encourage the driver to take risks that compromise safety. The system cannot replace the driver's attention.

- The parking steering assistant is subject to certain limitations inherent in the system. It may be that in some situations the automatic brake intervention may only work to a limited extent or not at all.
- Always be ready to brake the vehicle yourself.
- The automatic brake intervention stops after about 1.5 seconds. Then brake the vehicle yourself.

Search for a parking space

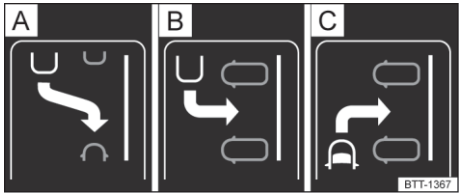


Fig. 108 On the display of the combined in strument: Indication of the parking modes .

COPIA

The parking steering assistant offers three parking modes
→ fig. 108 (schematic representation).
In-line parking with reverse gear Side-by-side parking with mar- cha backwards
Side-by-side parking with parking space facing forward

– Passing slowly in front of a line of parked vehicles while paying attention to traffic.
– Press the button . The parking steering assistant automatically searches for a suitable parking space on the front passenger side.
– Stop the vehicle when the system picks up a parking mode on the combined instrument dis- play.
– Park when the combined instrument's display shows the parking indication.
cation → fig. 109 ⑤ → p. 140.

If you want the parking direction assistant to search for a parking space on the opposite side of the runway, switch on the direction indicator for that side.

Changing the parking mode

If the parking steering assistant has found other possible parking modes, these are shown in a reduced view. You can select one after the other by pressing the key . After selecting all the parking modes found, the system switches off. When you press the key again, the recommended parking mode is displayed.
butto
n again, the recommended parking mode is displayed at the beginning.

Side-by-side parking with forward gear

If you wish to park side-by-side in forward gear, select the mode "Side-by-side parking in forward gear" → fig. 108 (if the system has found it) by pressing the key .

The parking guidance assistant can be activated "later". The system will show whether a parking space has been passed before. adequate parking space.

Parking in a parking space

Please note ⚠ and ⓘ at the beginning of this chapter on page 138.

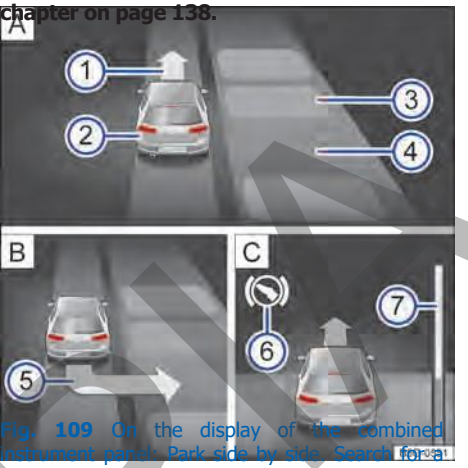


Fig. 109 On the display of the combined instrument panel: Park side by side. Search for a parking space. Parking position. Manoeuvring.

Legend to → fig. 109 (side-to-side parking mode with reverse gear):

① Forward motion indication
② Own vehicle
③ Parked vehicle or obstacle Parking
④ space detected
⑤ Indication for engaging reverse gear
⑥ Indication for depressing the brake pedal
⑦ Progression bar. Symbolically indicates the relative distance still to be covered.

The conditions for parking with the parking steering assistant → p. 138 must be met and the vehicle must be stationary.

– Release the steering wheel.
– Engage reverse gear when a reverse arrow appears on the dis- play of the combined instrument panel.
– Accelerate with care.

COPY

– Brake when an acoustic alarm sounds to indicate a change of direction, the arrow → fig. 109 lights up ① lights up, the white symbol lights up or a message is displayed.
– Move forward until an audible alert sounds or until the display of the combi- nated instrument shows the indication to reverse.
– Back and forward until a message appears on the display of the combined instrument and, as appropriate, an audible alarm sounds

Exiting a parking space

Please note ⚠ and ⓘ at the beginning of this chapter on page 138.

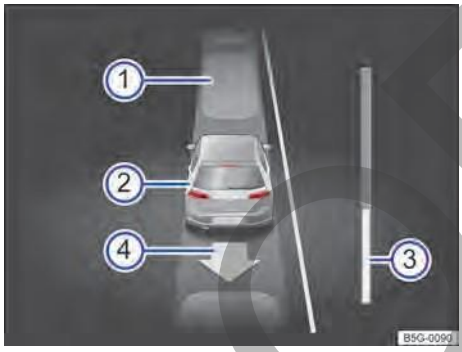


Fig. 110 On the display of the combined instrument: Exit a square in line.

Legend for fig. 110: Parked
① vehicle
② Own vehicle with reverse gear engaged
③ Progression bar. Symbolically indicates the relative distance still to be covered.
④ Indication of the direction to the next move

The parking steering assistant can steer the vehicle out of a parking space in line.

The conditions for exiting a parking space with the parking steering assistant must be fulfilled → page 138.

– Press the key . ▢
– Switch on the direction indicator corresponding to the side of the lane on which you must leave the parking space.
– Reverse gear.
– Release the steering wheel when the following message appears: **Steering intervention active. Monitor your surroundings.**
– Accelerate with care.
– Brake when an audible alert sounds, the white symbol lights up or the forward indication appears on the display of the combined instrument panel.
– Depress the brake pedal until the parking steering assistant has finished turning the steering wheel or until the white indicator in the combined instrument display goes out.
– Go back and forth until a message appears on the display of the combined instrument and, depending on the case, an audible alert sounds.
– Take over the steering with the steering angle adjusted via the parking steering assistant.
– Exit the parking space when the traffic situation permits

Troubleshooting

Please note ⚠ and ⓘ at the beginning of this chapter on page 138.
Sensors not visible, fault message, the system shuts down

If the sensor malfunctions, the parking assist is switched off.

– Clean the sensors or remove any adhesives or accessories from the sensors and housings → p. 309.
– Check for visible damage.

COPIA

The system behaves differently from as expected.

There may be several causes:

– The sensors are dirty. In addition to dirt and snow, the visibility of the sensors can also be reduced by traces of detergent or a coating. → p. 309.
– System requirements must be met → p. 138.
– The sensors are covered with water.
– The vehicle is damaged in the sensor area, e.g. due to a parking impact.
– The detection area of the sensors is blocked by an accessory, e.g. a bicycle rack system.
– Paint modifications were made in the area of the sensors or structural modifications, e.g. to the front of the vehicle or to the chassis, were made.
– Certain noise sources, such as rough asphalt or cobblestones, interfere with ultrasound alerting.

Solution for all cases

– Switch off the system temporarily.
– Check if any of the causes listed above occur.
– Once the source of the problem has been eliminated, the system can be reconnected.
– If the system continues to behave unpredictably, please contact a Volkswagen dealer or a specialised company and ask for the system to be repaired.
ask for verification.

Brake Assist Systems

Information for brake assist systems

The vehicle is equipped with brake assist system:
– ESC system: ESC, EDS, ASR, BAS, ABS and EBV only work when the engine is running and contribute significantly to active driving safety.

When the brake assist systems are in operation, the brake pedal may jump or noises may occur. Maintain the necessary pressure on the brake pedal constantly.

Traction control (ASR)

ASR reduces the drive force of the engine in the event of wheel slip and regulates the force to the condition of the drive and the track conditions. With ASR, starting, acceleration and hill climbing are made easier, even in adverse road conditions.

When the traction control system is in operation the control light will flash on the combined instrument display.

Electronic Stability Programme (ESC)

ESC helps to reduce the risk of skidding and to improve stability in certain driving situations → ⚠ .

When reversing, the ESC system can limit speed to ensure vehicle stability.

When the ESC is regulating, the control light will flash on the display of the combi instrument.

ESC includes ABS, BAS, ASR and EDS. ESC always remains activated. If in certain driving situations there is no longer sufficient propulsion, the ASR can be deactivated via the radio system.
→ Then activate the ASR again.
→ p. 144.

COPIA

Anti-lock braking system (ABS)

ABS can prevent the wheels from locking during braking until shortly before the vehicle comes to a stop and assists the driver in steering and maintaining control of the vehicle. This means that the vehicle has little tendency to skid even under full braking:

– Do not take your foot off the brake pedal or reduce the force on the brake pedal!
– Do not "pump" the brake pedal or reduce the pressure on the brake pedal!
– Driving the vehicle while pressing hard on the brake pedal.
– When the brake pedal is released or the force on the brake pedal is reduced, the ABS is disengaged.

The operation of the ABS can be perceived by a **pulsating movement of the brake pedal**, as well as by noises. ABS cannot be expected to reduce braking distance in *all* conditions. Braking distance may increase on gravel or fresh snow and on an icy, slippery surface.

Electronic brake force distribution (EBV)

In all vehicles, the vehicle's centre of gravity shifts forward when the brake is applied. This leads to a risk of the rear wheels locking due to low traction. The electronic brake force distributor limits the braking force for the rear wheels and ensures an optimum division of the braking force between the front and rear axle. The operation of the electronic brake force distributor is part of the ABS functions.

Brake Assist (BAS)

BAS can help to reduce the braking distance. BAS increases the braking force when the driver rapidly depresses the brake pedal in emergency braking situations.

Do not reduce brake pedal pressure when the BAS is acting. By reducing brake pedal force the BAS deactivates the brake force amplifier.

Electronic Differential Lock (EDS and XDS)

EDS brakes a slipping wheel and transmits the propulsive force to the other drive wheel.

The EDS is automatically switched off under heavy demand so that the disc brake does not overheat. EDS is automatically activated again when the brake has cooled down.

The XDS function is an extension of the electronic differential lock. XDS does not react to wheel slippage, but rather to the front wheel on the inside of the curve during fast cornering. XDS exerts pressure on the brake of the wheel on the inside of the bend to prevent slippage. This improves traction. This helps the vehicle to stay on the desired track.

Automatic post-collision braking system

In the event of an accident, the automatic post-collision braking system can help the driver to reduce the risk of skidding and the risk of further collisions during the accident by automatically initiated braking.

The automatic post-crash braking system only functions in frontal, side and rear collisions if the airbag control unit detects a certain threshold for activation during the accident.

Braking of the vehicle occurs automatically through the ESC, provided that the brake hydraulics, ESC and electrical system are not damaged and remain functional.

The following activities prioritise automatic braking in an actuator:

– If the driver presses the accelerator pedal. No automatic braking will occur.
– If the brake pressure produced by depressing the brake pedal is higher than the brake pressure induced by the system. The vehicle is braked manually.

⚠ WARNING

The intelligent technology of brake assist systems cannot go beyond the limits imposed by physics and works in a way that

COPIA

only within the limits of the system. High-speed driving on icy, slippery or wet roads can result in loss of control of the vehicle and serious injury to the driver and passengers.

- Adapt speed and driving style to visibility, customer, track and traffic conditions. The increased safety offered by ABS, BAS, EDS, ASR, ESC and brake assist systems should not be an incentive to compromise safety.
- Brake assist systems cannot go beyond the limits imposed by physics. Slippery or wet roads are still very dangerous, even with ESC and other systems.
- High speed driving on wet tracks can lead to loss of wheel contact with the track and "aquaplaning". A vehicle cannot be braked, controlled or steered when it has lost contact with the track.
- Brake assist systems cannot prevent an accident if, for example, you are driving too close or too fast for the driving situation.
- Although brake assist systems are very efficient and help to control the vehicle in difficult situations, always remember that the stability of the drive depends on the grip of the tyres.
- When accelerating on a slippery road, e.g. on ice or snow, do so with caution. Even with brake assist systems, the wheels may skid. This can lead to loss of control of the vehicle.

⚠ WARNING

The efficiency of ESC can be greatly reduced when other components and systems involved in vehicle dynamics have not been properly maintained or are not functioning. This applies also, but not only, to brakes, tyres and other systems mentioned above.

- Always remember that conversions and modifications to the vehicle can influence the function of ABS, BAS, ASR, EDS and ESC.
- Modifications to the suspension or the use of non-compliant wheel/tyre combinations may influence the operation of ABS, BAS, ASR, EDS and ESC and reduce their effectiveness.
- The efficiency of the ESC is also defined by a suitable tyre → p. 286.

⚠ WARNING

Driving without a brake booster can considerably increase the braking distance and thus cause accidents and serious injuries.

- Never leave the vehicle running with the engine switched off.
- If the brake booster does not work, the brake pedal must be pressed harder, as the braking distance increases due to the lack of brake force assistance.

In the control procedures of the systems described above, there may be noise from operation.

Activate and deactivate ASR

If sufficient propulsion is not achieved, you can deactivate the ASR (for vehicles with ESC):

– When driving on loose ground or on deep snow.
– In the "free spinning" of the wheels of the stuck vehicle.

Then re-activate the ASR function.

Deactivate and activate ASR

– *Depending on the vehicle version and the radio version*, press the key on the radio system.
radio theme → p. 27.
– Open the **Vehicle settings** menu in the radio system.
– Touch the function button ESC System: .
– *Deactivate the ASR*: select the option ASR disabled .
– *Activate ASR*: select the Enabled option.

When the ASR is switched off, the *yellow* control light is on in the instrument display. The combined commentary.

COPIA

Warning lights and fault monitoring

Do not continue! Brake system malfunction- do. Immediately find a Volkswagen dealer or a specialised company →⚠ .

If it comes on: ABS out of function or defective. Find a Volkswagen dealer or a specialised company. The vehicle can be braked without ABS.

If it is switched on: ESC is switched off for system-related reasons. Switch ignition off and on again. Drive a short distance at 15-20 km/h if necessary. If is still on, contact a Volkswagen dealer or specialist company.

Guidance for Brake Assist Systems

When a fault is suspected, read and observe the following guidance:

– Only when all four wheels are fitted with the same type and model of tyre can ESC and ASR function correctly. Different tyre diameters can cause an unexpected reduction in engine power.
– In the event of a malfunction of the ABS, the ESC, ASR and EDS will not function either.
– Operating noises may occur when regulating the described systems.

⚠ WARNING

Driving with poor quality brakes can cause accidents and serious injuries.

- If the brake system warning light comes on together with the ABS control light , the ABS operation may be malfunctioning. It is therefore possible for the rear wheels to lock relatively quickly during braking. Rear wheels causing locking can lead to loss of control of the vehicle! If possible, reduce speed and drive carefully at a minimum speed to the nearest Volkswagen Dealer to check the braking system. During the journey, avoid sudden steering and braking manoeuvres.
- When the ABS control light does not go out or come on during driving, the ABS is not working properly. The vehicle can only be stopped with the normal brakes (without ABS). The protection provided by ABS is not available in this case. Find a Volkswagen Dealer as soon as possible.

COPIA

Practical equipment

Slides

Introduction to the topic

Slides should only be used to store light or small objects.

WARNING

Loose objects can be thrown from the inside of the vehicle during sudden steering or braking manoeuvres. This can cause serious injury and loss of control of the vehicle.

- Do not place animals and rigid, heavy or sharp-surfaced objects in open compartments of the vehicle, on the instrument panel, on the back surface of the rear seat, in changing rooms or bowls inside the vehicle.
- Always keep the slides closed when driving.

Objects in the driver's footwell can prevent the pedals from being operated freely. This can cause loss of control of the vehicle and increases the risk of serious injury.

- Ensure that all pedals can be operated without hindrance.
- Always place the foot mat securely in place.
- Never place foot mats or other floor coverings on top of the installed foot mat.
- Make sure that no objects enter the driver's footwell while driving.

NOTICE

- The windscreen defroster filaments can be damaged by rubbing against objects placed on the surface behind the rear seat.
- Do not store temperature-sensitive objects, food or medicines inside the vehicle. Heat and cold can damage them or make them unsuitable for use or consumption.
- Objects made of transparent materials left in the vehicle, e.g. glasses, lenses or transparent suction cups on the windows, can focus the sun's rays and thus cause damage to the vehicle.

In order to allow the air inside the vehicle to be renewed, do not obstruct the air vents.

ventilation between the rear window and the rear parcel shelf.

Storage compartment in the lower part of the centre console

Please note ⚠ and ⓘ at the beginning of this chapter on page 146.



Fig. 111 In the lower part of the centre console: storage compartment.

In the lower centre console there is an open storage compartment → fig. 111.

Depending on the version of the vehicle, there may be an entry in the storage compartment

USB → p. 151.

COPIA

Passenger's side glove box front

Please note ⚠ and ⓘ at the beginning of this chapter on page 146.

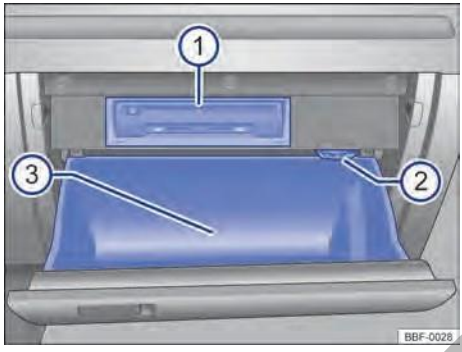


Fig. 112 On the front passenger side: glove box open.

The capacity of items in the glovebox depends on the vehicle version, the maximum capacity of the glovebox and its characteristics are described below.

Legend for fig. 112:

① Outdoor multimedia unit → p. 151. Air
② diffuser regulator.
③ Location for stowage of on-board documentation.

Opening and closing the glove box

To *open*, pull the handle.

To *close*, press the lid all the way up.

On-board documentation

The glovebox is intended for the storage of on-board documentation. The on-board documentation must be stored in this holder.

Cooling the slide

Depending on the vehicle version, with the air conditioning on, the cold air can be directed to the cargo area. Open or close the air diffuser by turning it.

⚠

An open glove box can increase the risk of serious injury in the event of an accident or sudden steering or braking manoeuvre.

- Always keep the slide closed while driving.

Storage compartment in the front centre armrest

Please note ⚠ and ⓘ at the beginning of this chapter on page 146.

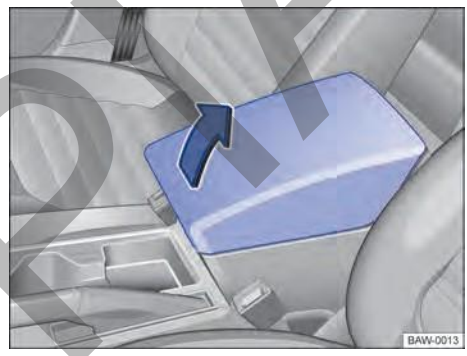


Fig. 113 In the front centre armrest: object holder.

Open: raise the centre armrest → fig. 113.

Close: bring the central armrest downwards.

⚠ WARNING

The centre armrest can restrict the freedom of movement of the driver's arms and thus cause accidents and serious injuries.

- Always keep the storage compartment in the centre armrest closed when driving.

⚠ WARNING

Never carry a person or child over the centre armrest.

ⓘ Depending on the version of the vehicle, the back of the armrest may have ber a USB input → p. 151.

COPY

Storage compartment in the roof console (sunglasses holder)

Please note⚠ and ⓘ at the beginning of this chapter on page 146.



Fig. 114 On the roof console: spectacle holder.

Open: press and release the → key fig. 114.

Close, press the lid upwards until it clicks into place.

In order to ensure the functioning of the passenger compartment security system, the slides shall be fitted in the passenger compartment.

The vehicle must be locked when the vehicle is locked
→ p. 70.

Other slides

Please note⚠ and ⓘ at the beginning of this chapter on page 146.

Other possible compartments:

- On the front and rear door linings.
- Storage bag in the backrests of the front seats .
- Rear seat area for light indu- mentary.
- Depending on the vehicle version, there may be a card holder in the lower centre console.
- **Clothes hooks** on the central door pillars.
- **Bag hooks** in the luggage compartment
→ p. 229.

⚠

Loose or incorrectly attached objects on the parcel shelf can cause serious injuries in the event of sudden steering and braking manoeuvres or in the event of an accident.

- Do not place hard, heavy or sharp objects in clothes pockets, in bags or loose on the rear tray.
- Never transport animals on the rear tray.

⚠

WARNING

Hanging clothes can reduce the driver's visibility and thus cause accidents and serious injuries.

- Always hang clothes on the clothes hook in such a way that they do not reduce the driver's visibility.
- Use the clothes hook in the vehicle only for hanging light clothing. Never leave heavy, rigid or sharp objects inside the bags.

NOTICE

Each of the hooks for hanging bags can be used to hang the bags.
to withstand a maximum load of 2.5 kg.

Beverage holders

Introduction to the topic

Bottle holder

The bottle holders are located in the open luggage compartment in the driver's and front passenger's doors.

⚠ WARNING

Incorrect use of drink holders can lead to injury.

- Never place hot drinks in a drink holder. During driving, in a sudden braking manoeuvre or in an accident, hot beverages in a drink holder could spill and cause burns.

COPIA

- Ensure that drink bottles or other objects do not reach the driver's foot area while driving, making it difficult to operate the pedals.
- Never place heavy glasses, food or other heavy objects in the drink holders. Such heavy objects can fly around inside the vehicle in an accident and cause serious injury.

⚠ WARNING

Closed beverage bottles inside the vehicle can explode due to heat and explode due to cold.

- Never leave closed beverage bottles inside a vehicle that is intensely heated or intensely cooled.

NOTICE

Do not keep open drinks in the drink holder while driving. Spilled drinks, e.g. during braking, can cause damage.
to the vehicle and the electrical system.

Drinks holder in the centre console

Please note⚠ and ⓘ at the beginning of this chapter on page 148.

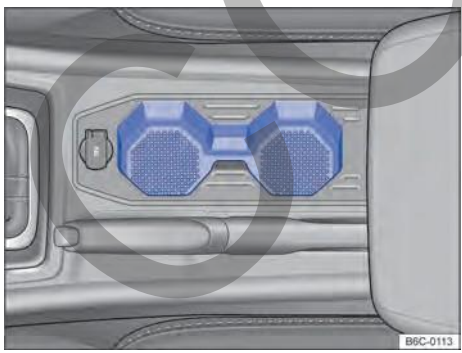


Fig. 115 In the front centre console: baby carrier .

In the front centre console there are two holders → fig. 115.

Cigarette lighter



Fig. 116 On the front centre console: Cigarette lighter.

The cigarette lighter is not available but can be purchased from your Volkswagen Dealer.

– With the ignition switched on, press the cigarette lighter → fig. 116 inwards.
– After a few moments, the cigarette lighter returns automatically.
– Remove the cigarette lighter and light the cigarette in the glowing spiral →⚠ .
– Refit the cigarette lighter in its place.

⚠ WARNING

Incorrect use of the cigarette lighter can cause fires, burns and other serious injuries.

- Use the cigarette lighter correctly and only for lighting cigarettes.
- Never leave children unattended in the vehicle. The cigarette lighter operates only when the engine is running.

ⓘ The cigarette lighter opening can also be used as a cigarette lighter socket.
12 V power supply → p. 149, *Power socket*.

Power socket

Introduction to the topic

Electrical devices can be plugged into the vehicle's power socket .

COPIA

The connected devices must be in perfect condition. Do not use faulty devices.

The 12 V socket only works when the ignition is switched on.

WARNING

Incorrect use of the socket and electrical devices can cause fire and serious injury.

- Never leave children unattended in the vehicle. With the ignition switched on, the power socket and the connected appliances can be used.
- If electrical devices become hot, switch them off and disconnect the power supply.

NOTICE

To avoid damage to the electrical system, electrical devices that supply power to charge the vehicle's battery, such as solar panels or battery chargers, must never be connected to the 12 V socket.

- Use only electrical devices that have been tested in accordance with current guidelines for electro-magnetic compatibility.
- Before switching the ignition on or off, as well as before starting the engine, the electrical devices must be switched off to prevent damage due to voltage fluctuations. Depending on the vehicle version, if the Start-Stop system automatically switches off the engine and restarts it is not necessary to switch off the electrical devices.
- Never connect electrical devices to a 12 V power source that draw more than the specified power. Exceeding the maximum power may damage the vehicle's electrical system.
- Observe the operating instructions of the connected devices!

Do not leave the engine running when the vehicle is stationary.

With the engine stopped, the ignition switched on and the accessories connected, the battery will
of the vehicle is unloaded.

Unshielded devices can cause malfunctions in the radio system and in the com-
electronic vehicle components.

12 V socket in the vehicle

Please note ⚠ and ⓘ at the beginning of this chapter on page 150.

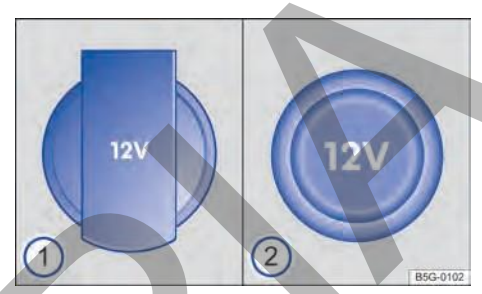


Fig. 117 12 V socket with folding cover 1 , 12 V socket with removable cover 2 .

Maximum power

12 V 120 W **power socket**

The maximum power rating of the current source must not be exceeded. The maximum power rating of the devices can be found on their identification labels.

12 V power socket

The 12 V socket is located in the front centre console and in the luggage compartment and only works when the ignition is switched on.

When the engine is switched off, the ignition is switched on and electrical equipment is connected, the vehicle's battery is discharged. For this reason, use electric meters at the socket only when the engine is running.

Before switching the ignition on or off, as well as before switching on the engine, disconnect connected devices to prevent damage due to voltage fluctuations

COPIA

Multimedia

Subwoofer

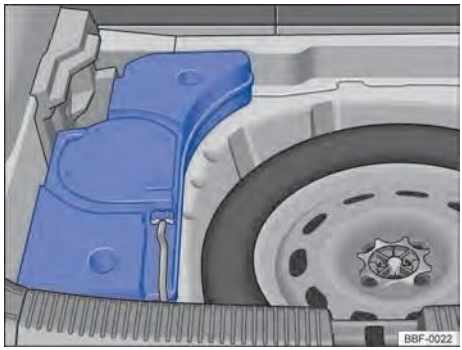


Fig. 118 Subwoofer location.

Depending on the vehicle version, the sub woofer may not be available.

The subwoofer is located in the running board under the luggage compartment carpet. Never remove or uninstall the subwoofer independently.

NOTICE

If liquids are spilled in the luggage compartment, the subwoofer may be damaged.

The subwoofer amplifier is located under the driver's seat

Radios

Before first use

Before the first use, the following steps must be taken in order to operate the device safely and to make full use of its functions:

See basic safety recommendations → p. 152.

Familiarise yourself with the operation of the radio.

Under System and Function Settings, reset the radio to factory default (factory settings).

Use only the storage units data suitable for Media mode.

Overview of comfort consumers

The radio can be equipped ex factory with the following components1) partly as optional equipment:

– 1. the type and quantity of the above-mentioned components are country- and appliance-specific and may vary in a number of models and may differ in a particular model.
– Speakers, installed in different locations and with different power levels (watts).
– Multifunction steering wheel and controls
– Media units.
– Cable connections for external data storage units and playback devices.
– Wireless connection for external playback devices.
– Telephone interface.
– Sound system, partly subwoofer.

Radio reception and antenna

A radio antenna with radio reception is installed in factory-installed radio sets.
on the roof of the vehicle.

COPIA

Reception failures may occur on the AM band of the radio when operating in the AM band.

electrical appliances, e.g. mobile phones, in the immediate vicinity of the antenna.

Places with special indications

Switch off the mobile phone and mobile phone preparation in potentially explosive atmospheres. Such places are common, although they are not always clearly identified. →⚠. They are places of this type, for example:

- The vicinity of pipelines and tanks, in which chemicals are contained.
- Lower decks on ships and rafts.
- Vehicle interiors that are activated by liquid gas (e.g. propane or bu- tane).
- Places where chemicals or particles such as flour, dust or metal dust are present in the atmosphere.
- Any other place where the vehicle's engine must be switched off.

⚠ WARNING

Switch off the mobile phone in potentially explosive atmospheres!

NOTICE

In environments with special indications and where the use of mobile phones is prohibited, the phone must always be switched off. The radiation emitted by the switched-on mobile phone can cause interference in sensitive technical equipment and medical equipment, which may result in malfunctions or damage to the equipment.

Recommendations from security

Before starting to use the appliance, read and observe the safety warnings below to detect and avoid potential hazards to yourself or others:

- Please read these instructions carefully.
- Some function areas may contain links to websites operated by third parties. Volkswagen does not adopt third-party websites that can be accessed via links and is not responsible for their content.
- Some function areas may contain third-party information from other providers. Volkswagen is not responsible for the accuracy, up-to-dateness or completeness of third-party information and that it does not infringe the rights of third parties.
- Radio broadcasters or data source owners are responsible for the content of the information transmitted.
- Covered car parks, tunnels, tall buildings, mountains or additionally operated electrical equipment, e.g. battery chargers, can also interfere with the radio signal reception.
- Metal foil or metal-coated stickers on glass may limit radio reception in vehicles with glass seals.

⚠ WARNING

Driver distraction can lead to accidents and injuries. Operating a radio system, a mobile phone or making a phone call while driving can distract attention from traffic.

- Always drive responsibly and pay the utmost attention to traffic.
- Connect, insert or remove data media only when the vehicle is stopped and parked at a safe distance from traffic.
- Select the volume settings so that acoustic signals from outside (e.g. emergency service signals) can be heard. Observe the legal regulations.
- A volume that is set too high can damage hearing, especially when exposed to more than 85 decibels, even for a short period of time.

⚠ WARNING

When switching or connecting an audio source, sudden volume variations may occur.

COPIA

- Before changing or connecting an audio source, decrease the default audio volume.

WARNING

Driving recommendations and navigation traffic symbols displayed may differ from the current traffic situation.

- Traffic signs and signs take precedence over driving recommendations and navigation directions.
- Adapt speed and driving style to visibility, weather, runway and traffic conditions.

WARNING

Connecting cables of external equipment can get in the way of the driver.

- Position these cables so that they are not in the way of the driver.

WARNING

Loose or improperly attached external equipment could be thrown around inside the vehicle by a sudden steering or braking manoeuvre, such as in the event of an accident, and cause injury.

- Under no circumstances should external equipment be placed or installed in the doors, on the windscreen, on or near the area marked "AIRBAG" on the steering wheel and instrument panel, on the backrests of the seats, or between these areas and the occupant of the vehicle. Such equipment could cause serious injury in the event of an accident, particularly if the airbags are deployed.

WARNING

Switch off mobile phones in potentially explosive atmospheres!

WARNING

Unfavourable lighting conditions and a damaged or dirty dis- play may result in the indications and information on the display not being readable or not being read correctly.

- The indications and information on the display must never be a reason to take a safety risk. The display must not distract the driver's attention.

WARNING

Radio stations can transmit disaster and hazard warnings. The following conditions may cause lack of reception of radio stations:

- If your current location is in regions with insufficient or no signal reception. These regions include tunnels, urban canyons, garages, subways, mountains and valleys.
- If, in regions with sufficient radio signal reception, the frequency bands of radio stations are interfered with or unavailable.
- If the vehicle components necessary for radio reception are damaged, out of order or without sufficient electrical power.

WARNING

If the tray of a CD player is opened, injuries can be caused by invisible laser radiation.

- The CD player may only be repaired by a Volkswagen dealer or a specialist company.

NOTICE

In environments with special indications and where the use of mobile phones is prohibited, the mobile phone must always be switched off. The radiation emitted by the switched-on mobile phone can cause interference in sensitive medical and technical equipment, which can lead to malfunctions or damage to the equipment.

NOTICE

Excessive or distorted playback volume may damage the vehicle's speakers.

COPIA

NOTICE

The insertion of objects, the inco-
The correct format and the insertion of data storage units of a different format and size may damage the multime- dia player and the radio.

- Observe the correct insertion position when inserting a data carrier.
- Insert only suitable data storage units into the corresponding media reading units.
- Strong pressure can destroy the SD card slot lock.

NOTICE

Foreign bodies and liquids adhering to a data carrier can damage the media reader unit and the radio.

- Do not affix stickers or similar objects to the data storage units . Adhesive labels may come off and damage the data storage unit.
- Do not use printable data storage units. Debris and adhesives may come off and damage the media reader unit.
- Use only undamaged, dry, clean and suitable SD cards.

NOTICE

The radio may be damaged if an incompatible data medium is inserted or inserted incorrectly.

- Observe the correct insertion position when inserting.
- Strong pressure can destroy the SD card slot lock.
- Use only suitable SD cards.
- Insert or remove CDs from the CD drive always at right angles to the front of the device, without twisting or scratching them.
- Inserting a second CD while a CD is already inserted or while the CD is being ejected may damage the CD drive of the equipment. Always wait until the CD/DVD has been completely removed!

NOTICE

If a data carrier has bodies attached to it
If the data carrier is round, the CD player may be damaged.

- Use only clean, standard 12 cm CDs!
  - Do not stick stickers or similar objects on the data storage units. Adhesive labels may come off and damage the unit.
  - Do not use printable data storage drives. Debris and impre- ssions may fall off and damage the CD player.
  - Do not insert 8 cm singles and CD ova- sides.
  - Do not insert DVD-Plus, Dual Disc or Flip Disc, as they are thicker than CDs. conventional.

Indications for use

- The radio is available in different equipment versions which are distinguished by a set of features, the inscriptions and functions of the radio buttons, as well as by the arrangement of the commands.
- When using the radio, observe specific national regulations and legal determinations.
- To control the radio, a light press on the button or a light touch on the display is sufficient.
- For the radio to work properly, it is important that the date and time are set correctly in the vehicle.
- Due to the market-specific software of the device, not all of the mentioned function areas and functions may be available. The absence of a radio button or a function button on the display is not a defect of the device.
- Depending on the country, some radio functions can no longer be selected in the playback mode above a certain speed. This is not a malfunction of the function, but a legal requirement

COPIA

– In some countries there may be restrictions on the use of Bluetooth® equipment1). Information on this can be obtained from local authorities.
– The display of all displays and the execution of functions can only take place after the radio has been fully started. The duration of a system start-up depends on the coverage of the radio function and may take longer than usual, especially at low and high temperatures. .
– When changing the settings, the display indications may change and the radio may behave, in part, differently than described in this manual.
– The radio is connected to the vehicle. Operation with another vehicle is not possible.
– High speeds, weather conditions and poor road conditions as well as a high noise column (also outside the vehicle) and the quality of the network may impair a phone call in the vehicle.
– In some vehicles with Park Pilot, the sound of the current audio source is automatically reduced when reverse gear is engaged. The volume reduction can be adjusted in the vehicle.
– The information on the software contained in the radio and the licensing terms and conditions are saved on the radio: MENU Config. Copyright .

Energy management

If the ignition is switched off and the device is switched on, the battery voltage drops below the minimum mains voltage, an acoustic signal sounds and **LOW BATTERY appears on** the display. The device must be switched off

Anti-theft code

The radio is protected against theft and unauthorised use of a security code (anti-theft code).

After entering the anti-theft code number for the first time, this number is stored in the vehicle's memory (radio coding). If the anti-theft code has to be entered manually, e.g. if the radio has been installed in another vehicle, please contact a Volkswagen dealer.

If the battery has been disconnected, switch on the ignition before switching the radio on again.

COPIA

1) Bluetooth® is a registered trademark of Bluetooth® SIG, Inc.

Equipment overview

Composition Touch (R 340G)

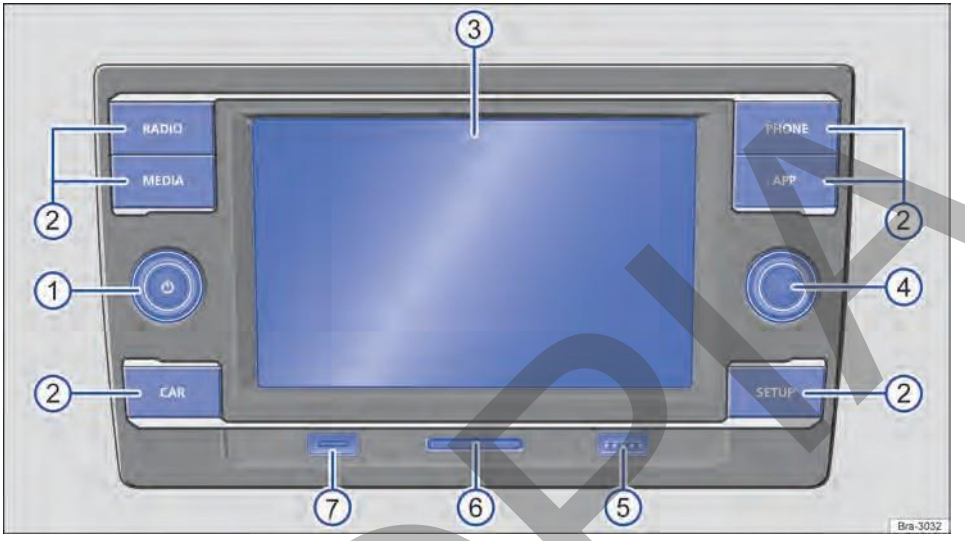


Fig. 119 General control panel.

① **Rotary and pressure knob** :
② **Radio keys:** *press* to access a function button.
③ **Display:** touch screen.
④ **Settings key:** the function depends on the respective operating condition.
⑤ **USB connection:** for the connection of external data storage units.
⑥ **SD card input:** to insert SD cards.
⑦ **Microphone:** do not obstruct the microphone and always keep it clean.

COPY

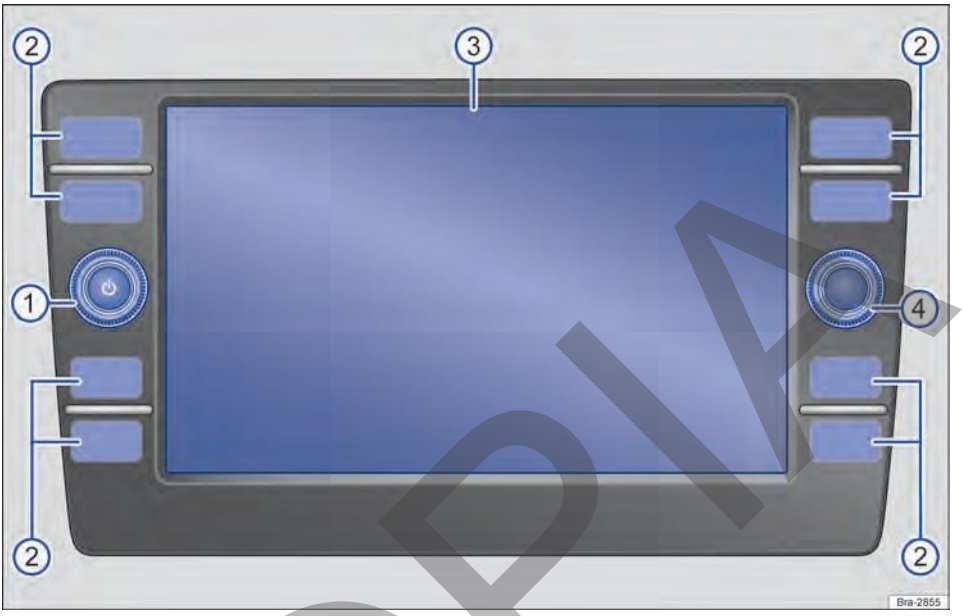


Fig. 120 General control panel.

The device is available in different versions, which are distinguished by the type plate and the function of the radio buttons → fig. 120 2 .

① **Rotary and pressure knob** :

② **Radio keys:** *press* to access a function button.

③ **Display:** touch screen.

④ **Settings key:** the function depends on the respective operating condition.

- In **all types of radio operation**, *rotate* to open the station list and *press* to start and stop SCAN.
- In **media operation** mode, *rotate* to open the playlist.
- *Turn* to highlight menu items in long lists and *press* to access the highlighted entry (e.g. station selection from the station list).

Depending on the equipment, the CD drive is located outside the device → p. 198.

Display

Cleaning the display

To clean, turn off the radio.

To clean the display, use a soft, clean cloth slightly moistened with clean water **or** a cleaning cloth available from your Volkswagen dealer → .

Soften heavy soiling with a damp cloth and water, taking care not to damage the radio.

COPIA

NOTICE

Do not dry clean the display. Non-removable scratches and streaks may form.

- Do not use aggressive cleaning agents or cleaning agents containing solvents. These cleaning agents may damage the radio and leave the display "smudged".
- When cleaning the display exercise only light pressure.

Approach sensors

Depending on the radio version, the device has an integrated proximity sensor.

The display automatically switches from display mode to operation mode at the touch of a hand. In operation mode, the function surfaces are automatically highlighted to facilitate operation.

Depending on the vehicle, the proximity sensors can be activated or deactivated in the **Settings** menu **of the display.**

Rotary knob and presión

Rotary pushbuttons

The rotary and push knob is known as the volume selector or on/off key and off.

The rotary and push knob on the right is known as the selector.

Manually turn the radio on or off

Briefly *press* the on/off button .

Automatically turn the radio on or off

Depending on the version, when the engine is switched off or the vehicle key is removed from the ignition switch, the radio switches off automatically. If the radio is switched on again manually, it will switch off automatically after approx. 30 minutes (delayed switch-off).

Increase or decrease the volume

Once switched on, the radio starts to operate at the last set volume level, as long as the previously defined maximum power-on volume of the equipment is not exceeded.

– Turn the volume control knob (higher: clockwise, lower: counterclockwise).

Some volume settings can be preset.

Silence

While the radio is in mute mode, an audio source being used is stopped. The display will show .

– Turn the volume control knob counterclockwise until the audio source is no longer audible.

Selection key

The selection button can be turned or pressed. *Turning it*, for example, searches the lists or opens the lists of radio stations or media titles. *Pressing it* accesses the highlighted entries, adopts the settings and opens the list. start or stop functions.

Radio keys

Depending on the vehicle version and model, the function keys may not be available.

To operate the radio keys, press them *lightly*.

APP: access to the interface with App-Connect.

CAR: access to vehicle and system configurations.

MEDIA: switch to media mode and select the media source there.

MENU o SETUP: *Press* to display the additional functions of the current function button (radio, media, etc.).

NAV: switch to navigation mode.

COPIA

PHONE: access to the telephone interface. If a telephone interface is not installed, the current audio source is muted.

RADIO: switch on the radio mode and there change the frequency range.

VOICE: activates the voice command.

Basic information from command

Command the function buttons and the indicators on the display.

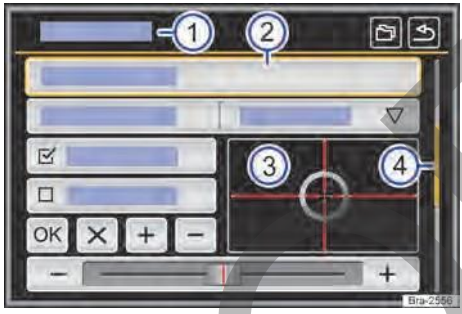


Fig. 121 Schematic representation: overview of possible function surfaces in the dis- play.

The device is equipped with a touchscreen → fig. 121 3 .

The active areas of the display that have a recorded function are referred to as "function areas" and are operated by short *touches* on the display or by *pressing and holding them down*. The function surfaces are described in the operating instructions by the word "function button" and a key symbol .

Function buttons initiate functions or open further submenus. In submenus, the currently selected menu is displayed in the title line → fig. 121 1 .

Inactive function areas (grey) cannot be selected at this time.

Increasing or decreasing the display on the display

Pictures in the picture display can be enlarged or reduced. To do this, stretch or squeeze the respective display with two fingers on the display.

Overview of possible displays and function surfaces

1 In the title line, the currently selected menu and possibly other function areas are displayed.

2 Touch to open another menu.

3 **Moving target**: move the target on the display without removing your finger, by applying light pressure or touching the desired position on the display and the target will follow that position. **Fixed target**: move the indicated area below the target on the display without removing your finger, apply light pressure or touch the desired position on the display and the target will be centred on the target.

4 The scroll bar is displayed if in a list display, more entries can be selected than can be displayed → p. 160, *Accessing list entries and searching lists*.

Touch to gradually switch off the lists one level higher.

Touch to gradually switch off the submenus, until you return to the main menu or to undo the entries you have made.

Tapping opens a pop-up window (option window), in which further setting options are displayed.

/ Some functions or displays are marked with a checkbox and activated or deactivated by touch.

Touch to confirm an insertion or selection.

OK Touch to close a pop-up window or an insertion mask.

- Touch to alter the settings graphically.

Move the slide control over the dis- play, without interruption, with gentle pressure. go.

COPY

Access list entries and search lists



Fig. 122 Schematic representation: list entries in the settings menu.

The entries in the list can be accessed by tapping directly on the display or by pressing the control button → fig. 122 4 .

If there are more selectable entries in a list view than can be seen, scrollable function areas or a scroll bar are displayed on the right-hand side of the image.
→ fig. 122 1 .

Select and call up list entries with the set key

Turn the set button to mark the entries in the list sequentially with a tick mark to search the list.

Press the setting key to access the selected list item.

Search lists (scroll)

Search by line in the list: Briefly touch the function button or .

Search by page in the list: Briefly touch the display above or below the scroll mark.

Quick search by page in the list: Press and hold the display above or below the scroll mark.

Quick search in long lists: Place your finger on the scroll mark indicator and, *without removing it*, move it up or down. Pull your finger from the display in the position
desired.

Insertion masks with display keyboard



Fig. 123 Representation of the principle: Insertion mask with display keyboard.

Insertion masks with dis- play keyboards are used, for example, to enter a name from memory, to select a specific address or to enter a search term to search in longer lists.

The function areas listed here are not available in all countries or in all business areas.

In the following chapters, only the functions that differ from this representation of principle are clarified.

In the top line of the display, on the left-hand side, there is an insertion line with the symbol insertion mark (Tilt knob). All inserts are displayed here.

Insertion masks for "text insertion".

Letters as well as special characters and symbols in any combination can be selected to enter free texts in insert masks.

By tapping the OK function button, the currently displayed sequence of symbols is assumed.

Input masks for the selection of a stored record

In the input, only letters, characters and special symbols can be selected which, in combination, correspond to an entry.
saved.

COPY

With each symbol insertion, an objective is suggested in the insertion line corresponding to the prescriptions. In compound terms, the space must be entered.

In case less than 99 insertions can be selected, the number of the remaining insertions is displayed behind the insertion line.
→ fig. 123 ③ . Tapping this function button displays the remaining entries in a list. If there are less than 6 selectable entries, the list opens automatically.

Overview of function surfaces

① 123: touch to open the insertion mask for numerals and special symbols. **OR:** ABC : touch to switch to the letter insertion mask.

② Touch to switch to another keyboard language. Keyboard languages can be selected in the **System Settings** menu.

③ Displays the quantity and opens the list of insertions corresponding to the still selectable prescriptions.

Letters and numbers Touch to take over the insertion line.

Letters and Press and hold to display a pop-up window with the special symbols based on these letters. Apply the desired characters by means of a to- que. Some special signs can also be transcribed (e.g. "AE" for "Ä").

☐ Touch to switch between upper and lower case and for numbers and special characters.

☐ Touch to insert a blank space. Touch to

OK take over the suggestion of the intro line and close the in-mask.
sertion.

☐ Touch to delete symbols on the insertion line from right to left. Press and hold to delete several symbols.

☐ Touch to close the insertion mask.

Additional exhibitions and exhibition options

The displays on the display may vary depending on the settings, and differ from the representations described here.

The timetable can be shown in the status line of the display.

All indications can only be displayed after the radio system has been fully started.

COPIA

Connectivity

App-Connect

Introduction to the topic

Depending on the version and model of the radio, the App-Connect functions may not be available.

The following interfaces are available in the App-Connect menu:

– Apple CarPlay™1)
– Android Auto™2)
– MirrorLink™3)

In order to avoid distracting the driver, only specially applied applications →⚠ may be used during con- duction.

Depending on the mobile device used, there is a connection via its interface.

In this way, functions and content displayed on mobile devices can be shown and commanded on the display.

⚠ WARNING

The use of apps while driving can distract attention from traffic. Driver distraction can lead to accidents and injuries.

- Always drive responsibly and pay the utmost attention to traffic.

WARNING

⚠

device could be thrown out of the vehicle's internal compartment by a sudden starting or braking manoeuvre, such as in the event of an accident, and cause injury.

- Always securely fasten or store the mobile device correctly and outside the expansion area of the airbag when driving.

⚠ WARNING

Improper or inappropriate applications can damage the vehicle and cause serious accidents and injuries.

- Volkswagen recommends only the use of apps offered by Volkswagen for the vehicle itself.
- Protect the mobile device with its applications from misuse.
- Never tamper with applications.
- Observe the operating instructions of the mobile device.

NOTICE

In environments with special indications and when the use of mobile devices is prohibited, the mobile device must always be switched off. The radiation emitted by the switched-on mobile device may cause interference to fragile technical and medical equipment, which may result in malfunctions or damage to the equipment.

NOTICE

Volkswagen accepts no liability for damage to the vehicle caused by the use of low-quality or faulty apps, insufficient programming of apps, insufficient network, loss of data transmission or the misuse of mobile devices.

For more information on the technical premises, compatible end devices, applications and availability, go to www.vw.com.br/conectividade or visit a Volkswagen Dealer.

- Or for more information, please refer to the instruction manual of the mobile device used, or the brand's online shops

1) Apple CarPlay™ is a certified trademark of Apple Inc.

2) Android Auto™ is a certified trademark of Google Inc.

3) MirrorLink™ and the Mirror Link logo are certified trademarks of the Car Connectivity Consortium LLC.

COPIA

App-Connect main menu

Note⚠ and ⓘ at the beginning of this chapter on page 162.



Fig. 124 App-Connect main menu.

① Info: shows more information.

② Config. : **App-Connect configuration** *(depending on version and radio model, may not be available).*

Open the App-Connect Settings menu

In the main menu, **App-Connect**, tap on the function button Config. .

Enable data transmission for VW Apps — The data transfer for Volkswagen applications is activated.

MirrorLink™

Select the alignment of the display.

Display alignment — Touch to rotate the view of the display.

180 degrees turn — 180°.

Prefer Infotainment system keypad — *Dependien- Depending on the vehicle version,* keypad insertions shall be made on the display keypad of the device and not on the keypad of the mobile equipment.

For more information on the technical premises, compatible end devices, applications and availability, go to www.vw.com.br/conectividade or visit a Volkswagen Dealer.

- Or for more information, please consult the instruction manual of the mobile device used, or the brand's online shops

Apple CarPlay™

Apple CarPlay™ menu



Fig. 125 Choice of mobile device.



Fig. 126 Apple CarPlay™ menu.

The Apple CarPlay menu screen may vary depending on the version of the cellular device and its update.

Apple CarPlay™ requirements

To use Apple CarPlay™, the following requirements must be met:

Mobile device **must** be compatible with Apple CarPlay™.

The mobile device **must be** connected to the equipment with a USB cable.

The USB cable used **must** be an original cable from a smartphone manufacturer.

Establishing a connection

When a mobile device is connected for the first time, you must follow the instructions on the device's dis- play and on the display of the mobile device.

COPY

– The following requirements must be met in order to use Apple CarPlay™.
– Press the APP key.
– **Or** press the MENU key and tap on the **App-Connect** function button.
– Select your connected device by pressing on the corresponding icon.

Disconnect connection

– To operate Apple CarPlay™, tap on the function button → fig. 126 1 , to access **App-Connect** in the main menu.
– Touch the function button → fig. 125 (1) pa- to switch off the active connection.

Particularities

During an active Apple CarPlay™ connection, the following special features apply:

– Bluetooth connections between mobile devices and the radio are **not** possible.
– An active Bluetooth connection is automatically closed.
– Phone functions are only possible via via Apple CarPlay™. The radio functions described in this manual are **not** available.
– The connected device **cannot be** used as a media device in the Media menu.
– On the display of the combined instrument, there is no display of call lists, for diversion routes and media operation.

Voice command

Depending on the vehicle version and model, the voice command may not be available.

– Press, on the multifunction steering wheel or on the

mobile phone, VOICE o **briefly** to initiate the voice command of the connected device.
– Press, on the multifunction steering wheel or on the
mobile phone, VOICE o **for a few weeks** The voice command of the connected positive dis- connected.

For more information on the technical premises, go to www.vw.com.br/. connectivity or visit one of the Volkswagen Dealers.

• Or for more information, please refer to the instruction manual of the mobile device used, or the brand's online shops

Android Auto™

Android Auto™ menu



Fig. 127 Choice of mobile device.



Fig. 128 Android Auto™ menu.

Android Auto™ requirements

To use Android Auto™, the following requirements must be met
following requirements:

Mobile device **must** be compatible with Android Auto™.

The mobile device **must be** connected to the equipment. po with a USB cable.

The USB cable used **must** be an original cable from a smartphone manufacturer.

Depending on the mobile device used, an appropriate application must be installed for the mobile device.
to use Android Auto™ on your device.

COPIA

Establishing the connection
the
When a mobile device is first connected to the
For the first time, you must follow the instructions on the radio's dis- play and on the mobile device's display.

- To use Android Auto™ the following must be met

the following requirements.

– Press the APP key.
– **Or** press the MENU key and tap on the **App-Connect** function button.
– Select your connected device by pressing on the corresponding icon.

Disconnect connection

– To operate Android Auto™, touch the function button , → fig. 128 1 .
– Select the **Back to Volkswagen** function for to access the **App-Connect** main menu.
– Touch the function button to disconnect the active connection.

Particularities

During an active Android Auto™ connection, the following special features apply:

– An active Android Auto™ device can be simultaneously connected to the radio via Bluetooth.
– Bluetooth connections between other mobile devices and the radio are **not** possible.
– The phone functions are only possible via Android Auto™. If the Android Auto™ device is simultaneously connected via Bluetooth with the radio, the phone function can also be used.
– Simultaneous phone calls via Android Auto™ and radio are **not** possible.
– An active Android Auto™ device **cannot** be used as a media device in the Media menu.
– On the display of the combined instrument, there is no display of call lists, for diversion routes and media operation.

Voice command

Depending on the vehicle version and model, the voice command may not be available.

- Press, on the multifunction steering wheel or on VOICE mobile phone, o **briefly** to initiate the voice command of the connected device.
- Press, on the multifunction steering wheel or on the VOICE mobile phone, o **for a few weeks**

The voice command of the connected final positive dis- connected.

For more information on the technical premises, go to www.vw.com.br/. connectivity or visit one of the Volkswagen Dealers.

- Or for more information, please refer to the instruction manual of the mobile device used, or the brand's online shops

Mirror Link™

MirrorLink™ menu



Fig. 129 Function surfaces in the overview of supported applications.



Fig. 130 Other Mirror Link™ function surfaces.

COPIA

MirrorLink™ requirements

To use Mirror Link™, the following requirements must be met:

The mobile device **must** be MirrorLink™ compatible.

The mobile device **must be** connected to the equipment with a USB cable.

Depending on the mobile device used, a suitable application must be installed to use MirrorLink™ on the device.

Establishing a connection

– The following requirements must be met in order to use MirrorLink™.
– Press the PHONE key.
– Tap on the function button .
– Select your connected device by pressing on the corresponding icon.

Possible function surfaces and views

Function/display surfaces: effect/significance

APP You return to the App-Connect display. The connection can be terminated on the dis- play MirrorLink™.

Touch to close open applications. Then tap on the applications to be closed or tap on the function button. Close all to close all open applications.

Touch to view the mobile device display on the vehicle's display.

① Touch to display the function surfaces at the top edge of the display.

② Touch to return to the main menu.

For more information on the technical premises, compatible end devices, applications and availability, go to www.vw.com.br/conectividade or visit a Volkswagen Dealer.

- Or for more information, please refer to the instruction manual of the mobile device used, or the brand's online shops

Composition Touch (R 340G)

Radio operation

Introduction to the topic

When using the radio, observe national regulations and legal provisions.

Additional electrical devices connected to the vehicle may interfere with the reception of the radio signal and generate noise in the sound sources.

In car parks, tunnels, buildings or mountains, the radio signal can be interfered with.

Metal foil or adhesive labels coated on the glass can be easily readable. mitigating reception in vehicles with antennas in the glass.

Main radio menu



Fig. 131 Main menu of the radio.

COPIA

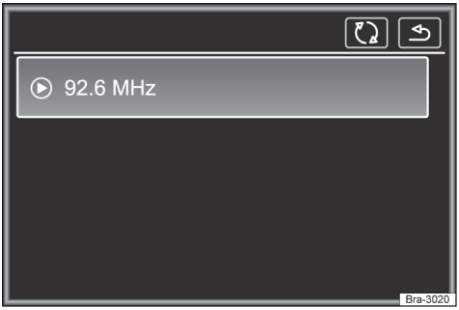


Fig. 132 Radio operation: station list.

Press the RADIO button while the unit is switched on. The radio mode is switched on.

The following options are available:

– Return to the preset station.
– Search for the next station.
– Memorise the tuned stations.

The currently tuned radio station is shown in the centre of the display. In the case of radio stations with RDS, the name of the station can be given instead of its frequency in case of good reception, e.g. **RADIO 21**.

Function surfaces in the radio main menu

Function button: effect	
Ⓐ	Frequency band indication.
FM/AM	Select the frequency band from-seada.
▢	Opens the list of radio stations that can currently be received. → p. 168.
▢	Opens the scale of the regulated frequency band (frequency band).
▢	Opens the settings menu for the active frequency band → p. 170, *Radio settings* .
⊂/⊃	Switch between saved stations or available stations. Settings for the arrow keys in the menu → p. 170, *Radio settings* .
From 1 to 15	Station keys for saving stations → p. 167.
▢	Update the list of stations in the frequency band.
▢ SCAN	The function button is only visible when the automatic search is executed. → p. 169. To start the automatic search, press the control button.
Cancel	Canceling a function.

RDS radio data system

RDS (Radio Data System) is a radio data system via the additional FM services, which enables the display of station names and radio text.

RDS is not found on all equipment and is not available everywhere, nor on all FM stations.

Without RDS, basically no **additional services** can be obtained.

Radio text (RDS)

Some RDS-capable stations additionally transmit text information - so-called radio texts.

The radio texts are shown in the upper half of the display above the station keys. → fig. 131Ⓐ.

Broadcasters are responsible for the content The information transmitted.

Station keys



Fig. 133 Main menu of the radio.

SOPIA

In the main menu: *RADIO*, the stations of the currently selected frequency band can be stored in 15 numbered frequency bands. These function areas are called "Station keys".

Functions of the station keys → fig. 133	
Accessing this - tions through of the keys after station	Touch the station key that displays the desired station. - A single saved station - A single saved station The number of people can be changed from one to the next. accessing by the station keys, as long as it can be tuned to the current location.
Change the group from po of station keys	Move your finger over the display, in the area of the station keys → fig. 133, from right to left. left or from left to right. cha. The station keys are displayed in groups for 5 function areas (1 to 5, 6 to 10 and 11 to 15). See: saving stations → p. 169.
Saving settings to the station keys	

Radio-specific displays, menus and symbols



Fig. 134 Main menu of the radio.

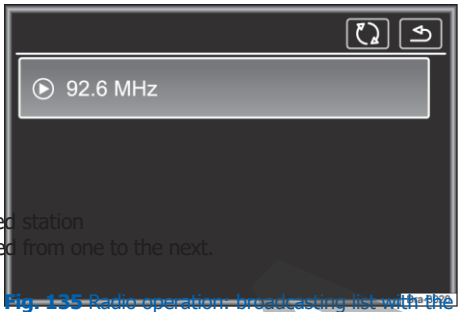


Fig. 135 Radio operation: broadcasting list with the possibility of updating.

Function areas and corresponding meanings in the main menu of the radio → fig. 134 y → fig. 135:	
Select the station using the arrow keys. < / >	Tap on the function button < or > → fig. 134. Depending on the setting of the arrow buttons, you switch between saved stations or available stations. Setting of the arrow keys in the **Radio settings** menu → p. 170.
Select en- tation of the lis- The Commission has also	To open the station list, touch the function button . → fig. 134. Search in the list and access the desired station using a touch. To close the list of stations, touch the function button → fig. 135. Without command, the station list closes automatically after a while.
Update the list of sta- tions	The station list can be updated manually via the function button . → fig. 135.

Manually adjust the frequency of the stations.	
Introduce	Touch the function button → fig. 134.
the frequency range	*Turn* the setting key.
Changing frequency step by step	

COPIA

Manually adjust the frequency of the stations.

Or: press the right or left arrow keys on the frequency keypad.

Touch one of the arrow buttons **at the top of** the display → fig. 134. The next available station is set. automatically.

The rapid tour of the ga

OR: *hold down* one of the arrow keys

The frequency of the frequency → fig. 134 **above** is shown on the display.

cias

After *releasing*, it will be tuned automatically the next tunable radio station.

Or: keep your finger pressed on the frequency range and pull the slider to move it.

Press the setting button *briefly*.

When a station is selected by means of a station key, it is possible to select a station by pressing the

Conceal the ga-

In addition to the f r e q u e n c y , the se- the freque

cias

manual frequency lesson. Without command, the frequency range is automatically hidden after a while.

Save stations

Save the currently playing station to a station key

Press and hold down the desired station button → fig. 134 until you hear an acoustic warning. The station currently being listened to is stored under this station key.

Tap on the function button

→ fig. 134 or *rotate* the set- up button to open the station list.

Save station list settings to a station key

Stations already stored under a station key are identified in the station list by the symbol .

Press and hold on the dis- play to select the desired station.

Touch the station key where you want to save the station.

Save stations

An acoustic warning sounds and the station is saved to this station key. Repeat the procedure to save other stations from the station list.

In the **Settings** menu **of the**

Delete the **radio** stations all the stations saved in the

The following are saved

The given data can be deleted individually or all at the same time. → p. 170.



Fig. 136 Radio operation: automatic search activated (SCAN).

When the automatic scan is activated, all available stations in the current frequency range are played for about 5 seconds. SCAN appears on the display.

Start and stop automatic search

Press the short adjustment button

Initiate the search for vently.

O: tap the function button to select the desired function.

The and then select SCAN .

Touch the SCAN function button to close the automatic search in the tuned station.

The automatic search is also closed if a station is manually selected by the station keys.

COPIA

Radio settings

– Select the desired frequency range.
– Touch RADIO , to switch between frequency bands.
– Tap and open the desired settings.

Function button: effect
Scan: Automatic search (SCAN). When automatic scanning is activated, each available station in the current frequency band is played for approx. 5 seconds → p. 169.
Sound: Sound settings → p. 187.
Arrow keys: Define settings for arrow keys.

chas < e >. The adjustment is assumed for all frequency bands (FM).

Memory: Use the arrow buttons to change **all stored stations** in the selected frequency band.

Scan for stations: Use the arrow buttons to change **all tunable stations** in the selected frequency band.

Clear memory: delete all or some stored stations.

Todas: all saved stations are deleted.

Media

Introduction to the topic

Media sources" are the following audio sources which contain audio data on various data storage devices, e.g. external MP3 players, audio files. These audio files can be played back via the corresponding players or the audio inputs of the radio system (USB connection, Bluetooth® interface, SD card or AUX-IN multimedia socket).

Copyright

As a rule, audio and video files stored on data media are subject to copyright protection, according to the laws of the country in which they are stored.

National and international regulations are applicable. Observe legal determinations.

This product is protected by copyright and other intellectual property rights of Microsoft Corporation. The use or commercialisation of this technology beyond the scope of this document is prohibited. this product without a licence from Microsoft or one of Microsoft's authorised affiliates.

Volkswagen accepts no liability for damaged or lost fi les.

Limitations and recommendations on data carriers

Dirt, high temperatures and mechanical damage can render a data carrier unusable. Pay attention to the instructions of the manufacturer of the data carrier.

Differences in the quality of data carriers from different manufacturers may cause playback interference.

The configuration of a data carrier or the hardware and software used in the recording can make some of the titles or data carriers no longer readable. Information on how best to create audio files and data carriers (compression rate, ID3-tag etc.) can be found, for example, on Inter- net.

Depending on the size, usage status (number of copies and deletions), the folder structure and the type of data carrier file used, the read time may vary substantially.

A **playlist** defines only a certain playback order. **No** files are stored in playlists. Playlists are **not** played if the files on the data carrier are not stored at the location to which the playlist is forwarded.
production (path-related data).

COPIA

Databank and archive prerequisites

SD cards with a physical size of 32 mm x 24 mm x 2.1 mm (1.26 x 0.94 x 0.083 inches) or 1.4 mm can be inserted into the radio. (0.055 inches).

Media source	Requirements for reproduction
Memory cards SD and MMC memory cards up to a maximum of 2 GB (Gabyte) in the system FAT16, FAT32 and exFAT file formats. SDHC memory cards up to a maximum of 64 GB in FAT16, FAT32 and exFAT file system. SDHC memory cards up to a maximum of 256 GB in FAT16, FAT32 and exFAT file system.	– MP3 (.mp3) files with bit rates from 32 to 320 kbit/s or variable bit rate. – WMA files (.wma) up to 9.2 mono/stereo without noise protection. – Playlists in M3U, PLS, ASX and WPL formats. – Playlists no larger than 20 kB and with no more than 1000 records. – File name and path indications of not more than 256 characters.
USB data support specified in accordance with USB 1. FAT16, FAT32 and exFAT file systems. iPods™, iPads™ and iPhones™ of different generationsa) (Only with Apple Dock Connector or Lightning connector).	
Playback of external audio sources on the USB via USB connection.	→ p. 174.
Playback of audio files via Bluetooth®.	– The external Media Player must support the Bluetooth® A2DP profile → p. 176.
Playback of external audio sources via AUX-IN.	– 3.5 mm jack plug connectable for audio playback → p. 175.

(a) iPod™, iPad™ and iPhone™ are protected trademarks of Apple Inc.

Do not use SD card adapters.

SD card with navigation data cannot be used for storage
for other files, the radio does not recognise the saved files.

No liability can be assumed for damaged or lost files in the
data media.

Audio data storage units playback sequence

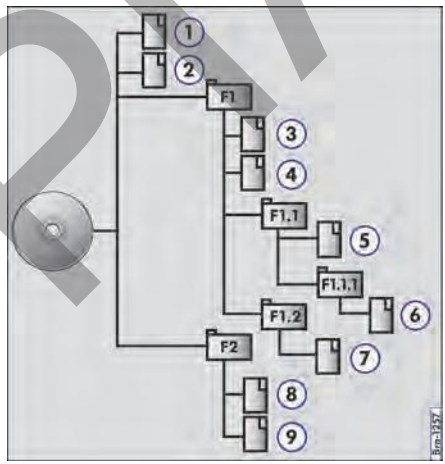


Fig. 137 Possible structure of a data carrier.

On a data carrier, audio files are separated often by data folders.
and playlists in order to define a certain

The playback sequence.

Tracks, folders and playlists are sorted in numerical and alphabetical order according to the name on the data carrier.

Picture → fig. 137 shows, for example, a data carrier containing tracks , folders
and subfolders.

The tracks and folders on this data carrier will therefore be played and displayed
in the following sequence1):

COPIA

[1)] In the **Media Settings** menu, the function Mix/Repeat, including the subfolder, must be activated → p. 174.

1. Title ① y ② in the main directory (Root).
2. Title ③ y ④ in the **first F1** folder of the main directory (indication: **01**).
3. Title ⑤ in the **first** subfolder **F1.1** of the folder **F1** (display: **02**).
4. Title ⑥ in the **first** subfolder **F1.1.1** of subfolder **F1.1** (display: **03**).
5. Title ⑦ in the **second** subfolder **F1.2** of the folder **F1** (display: **04**).
6. Title ⑧ y ⑨ in the **second** folder **F2** (visualisation: **05**).

The execution sequence can be modified- by selecting different execution modes. reproduction → p. 172.

The playlists are **not** played automatically, but must be selected by the user. Select a title individually in the title selection menu → p. 173.

Main media menu



Fig. 138 Main media menu.

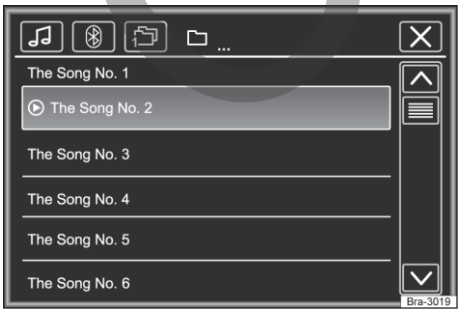


Fig. 139 Radio operation: station list.

In the main menu: *MEDIA*, different media sources can be selected and played back.

- Press the key MEDIA to open the menu main *MEDIA* → fig. 138.

The playback of the last executed media source continues at the last executed point.

The currently playing media sources are displayed on the function button at the bottom left → fig. 138.

If no media source can be selected, *MEDIA* appears in the main menu.

Function surfaces in the main media menu

Legend for → fig. 138 and → fig. 139:

Titles, folders and playlists can also be highlighted by rotating the menu key and can be accessed or opened by pressing the menu key.

	Displays the currently selected media source. Touch to select another media source → p. 173. Tarjeta SD : memory card → p. 174. Fuente USB : external USB data carrier → p. 174. Audio BT : Bluetooth® audio → p. 176. AUX : depending on the vehicle version, the external audio source on the AUX-IN → p. 175 multimedia headset.
▢	Open the playlist → p. 173.
< / >	Change the title in the me- operation. god → p. 173.
▢	Playback is interrupted. The function button changes to → p. 173.
▢	Playback is resumed. The function button changes to → p. 173.
▢	Opens the **Media Settings** menu → p. 174.
▢	Press to switch between the available modes. : repeat current titles. : repeat all titles. All titles on the same memory level as the currently playing title will be repeated. On the **Media Settings** menu

COPIA

Legend for → fig. 138 and → fig. 139:

Titles, folders and playlists can also be highlighted by rotating the menu button and can be accessed or opened by pressing the menu button.

Mix/Repeat, including the sub-folder , must be

If the sub-folders → p. 174 are activated, the sub-folders → p. 174 are also included.

Shuffle playback. The shuffle button ction change to .

All titles that are on the same memory level as the currently playing title will be included. In the **Media Settings** menu Mix/Repeat, including the sub-folder , must be activated.
folders → p. 174.

Change media source

- In the *MEDIA* main menu, press the MEDIA radio button again to scroll through all available media sources.

In the pop-up window there are currently no selectable media sources presented.

as inactive (in grey).

The media source being used is

shown on the display.

If no media source can be selected, it is displayed in the main menu *MEDIA*.

If a previously played media source is re-selected, playback resumes at the last played point.

The title information display can be deactivated in the *Playlist*.
cation → p. 173.

Change the title in the main media menu

The titles of the playing media sources can be scrolled through successively using the arrow keys → p. 173, *Selecting the title in the title list*.

It is not possible to switch to playback from a playlist using the arrow keys. Playback from a playlist must be started manually via the title selection menu.
→ p. 173, *Selecting the title from the list of titles*.

Command through the main media menu

Action	Effect
Briefly press the function button once.	At a re-production duration of less than 3 seconds, it is switched to the beginning of the previous title. At a title duration of 3 seconds or more, it is switched to the beginning of the current title.
Briefly press the function button once	For the next title. From the last title it switches to the first title of the executed data session.
Keeping pressure on the function button *pressed* < .	Fast rewind is
Press and hold the function button > .	Fast forward.
Press the button to stop the playback.	
functio once n	duction. The function button ction changes to .
briefly.	
Press the function buttononce to resume playback. The function button *briefly*.	switch to .

Title selection from the list of titles

To open the list of titles in the main menu *MEDIA* press the function button **Or** turn the selection key. The title being played is highlighted.

Search for the list of titles and click on the desired title. If title information is available, the number and name of the titles or file names (MP3) are displayed instead of **Title + no.** [1]. The list of titles cannot be supported by the source .

[1)] Depending on the source.

COPIA

Titles, folders and playlists can also be bookmarked by turning the set key, and can be accessed and opened pre sionando la tecla.

Specific configurations of medios

Open the Media Settings menu

In the main *MEDIA* menu, tap on the function button . ▢

Function button: effect

Sound: Opens the **Sound Settings** menu. → p. 187.

Mix/Repeat, including sub-folders: sub-folders are included in the selected playback mode → p. 172.

Bluetooth: Open the **Bluetooth Settings** menu.

Extract: Extract the desired data drive (USB data carrier or SD card) from the system. The respective function button is deactivated after successful removal of the data carrier. system data storage.

Wired and wireless connections

Introduction to the topic

Some external devices can be connected to the radio via wired and wireless connections (if available) in the vehicle.

The type and number of wired and wireless connections depend on the country and vehicle. Within a model range and on special models the connections may differ.

For wired connections, use only the original cables of the device or - if applicable - the cables which are supplied ex-factory for that vehicle.

Playback from an SD card

– Carefully insert the SD card, with the cut-off edge facing upwards and the inscriptions on the left, into the SD card slot. → p. 156 6 ◯
– To remove the SD card, you must first view the system settings and perform the **Safely Remove Source** action. Press the SD card lightly so that it "pops out" to the exit position.
– Press the radio button MEDIA . ▢

Playback of the last source is resumed.

media that was used. In order to reproduce the card Press the key . ▢

While viewing the folders, navigate with the function ▢ key ▢ selector key. Press to go to thetop levelof the folders and turn the selector key to select the desired folder.

To change to the previous or next title, press one of the function keys.

Press and hold one of the arrow keys for a few seconds to move forward or backward in the playback.

During SD card playback, some function keys are available at the bottom of the display. The function keys
The active participation is highlighted.

USB connection

The USB connection is located on the front of the device → fig. 119 5 . ◯

Audio files on an external data carrier, connected to the USB input , can be played back and controlled via the device.

In this manual, USB data sticks with playable files, e.g. MP3 players, iPods™ and pen drives, are referred to as external data media.

Only supported audio files are displayed. Other files are ignored.

Playback starts automatically if there are audio files stored and readable on the data support.

COPIA

The additional control of the external data medium (access to title change, title selection and playback modes) is carried out as described in the respective chapters → p. 170.

Guidelines and restrictions

The number of USB inputs and compatibility with Apple™ devices as well as other media players depends on the device.

Via the USB input , the usual USB voltage of 5 V is provided.

External hard disks with a capacity of more than 32 GB must be reformatted to the FAT32 file system, depending on the conditions. Programs and guidelines for this format can be found, for example, on the Internet.

Due to the large number of different data storage units and the various generations of iPod™, iPad™ and iPhone™, it cannot be guaranteed that all of the functions described can be executed without failure.

iPod™, iPad™ and iPhone™

Depending on country and equipment, iPods™, iPads™ or iPhones™ can be connected to the vehicle's USB input , via the appropriate USB cable for the device, and used as an audio source.

Separate connection

The connected data carrier **must be** prepared for removal prior to disconnection of the connection.

– In the main MEDIA menu, tap on the function button , to open the **Media Settings** menu.
– **Or:** press the key on the SETUP device.
– Tap on the function button Extract safely and then at USB . The function button is deactivated after successful removal of the data carrier from the system.
– The connection of the data carrier can be stopped.

Unreadable data carrier

If a data carrier is connected and the data cannot be read, a corresponding message appears on the display of the device.

If an external Media Player is connected **at the same time** via Bluetooth® and the Bluetooth® interface, it is possible to connect an external Media Player via Bluetooth®. If the USB connection is connected to the device, the Bluetooth® audio connection is automatically disconnected after switching to the USB connection.

If a connected device is not recognised, remove all connections and reconnect. the devices again. If necessary, check the function of the connection cable used.

If there are malfunctions in the connected equipment, restart the corresponding equipment. This usually resolves the problem.

Do not use any memory card adapters, USB extension cables or USB-USB-USB-USB-USB-USB-USB-USB-USB-USB-USB Hubs (USB distributors)!

Read and follow the Operating Instructions of the external data carrier manufacturer .

Connecting an external audio source to the AUX-IN

Depending on the vehicle version and model, the AUX-IN multimedia socket may not be available.

The AUX-IN multimedia socket can only be operated with a 3.5 mm connector.

The connected external audio source is played through the vehicle's speakers and **cannot** be controlled by the equipment.

A connected external audio source is indicated by **AUX** on the display.

Connecting an external audio source to the AUX-IN multimedia socket

– Reduce the volume of the radio
– Connect an external audio source to the AUX-IN multimedia socket.
– Start playback on the external audio source.
– Press the MEDIA button or the radio to display the available media sources → p. 170 in the selection menu.
– Press the function key .

COPIA

The **playback volume** of the external audio source must be adapted to the volume of the other audio sources.

Special features in the operation of an external audio source via AUX-IN multimedia socket

Action	Effect
Selection of another audio source on the device.	The external audio source continues to play in the background.
End playback on an external audio source.	The device remains in the **AUX** menu.
Remove the connector from the AUX-IN multimedia socket.	The device remains in the **AUX** menu.

If playback is terminated on the external audio source or if it is disconnected from the socket, the external audio source will not be able to play back.
AUX-IN, the radio remains in the **AUX** menu.

If the external audio source is used via the vehicle's 12 V power socket, interference noise may occur.

Read and follow the operating instructions of the manufacturer of the external audio source

Connect external audio source via Bluetooth®.

Connecting an audio source via Bluetooth
The Bluetooth® audio mode can be shown on the display via on the top line.

In Bluetooth® audio mode, audio files from a Bluetooth® audio source connected via Bluetooth® (e.g. a smartphone) can be played back using the vehicle's speakers (Bluetooth® audio playback).

Requirements

– The external Bluetooth® audio source must support the A2DP-Bluetooth® profile.
– In the **Bluetooth Settings** menu, the function BT audio (A2DP/AVRCP) , must be enabled → p. 185.

Start Bluetooth® audio streaming

– Reduce the base volume on the radio.
– Connect Bluetooth® visibility to the external Bluetooth® audio source (e.g. mobile phone).
– Press the radio button MEDIA .
– Tap on the function button → fig. 138 and select audio BT .
– Tap on the function button Search for device to pair an external Blue- tooth® audio source for the first time.
– **O:** select an external Bluetooth® audio source from the list.
– **Or:** Establish a connection via the **Bluetooth settings** menu → p. 185.

– Observe the instructions for further procedures on the display of the device and on the display of the Bluetooth® audio source.

If necessary, playback must still be started manually on the Bluetooth® audio source.

When playback on the Bluetooth® audio source ends, the device remains in Bluetooth® audio operation.

Controlling reproduction
The control of the Bluetooth® audio source via the radio depends on the connected Bluetooth® audio source.

On media players that support the Bluetooth® AVRCP profile, playback can be started or stopped automatically on the Bluetooth® audio source, if it is switched to Bluetooth® audio operation or to another audio source.
In addition, the title or a title change can be displayed via the computer.

Due to the great diversity of Bluetooth® audio sources, it is not possible to guarantee that all the described functions can be executed flawlessly.

To operate the multimedia mode with the connected Bluetooth® positive device, read and respect the
The manufacturer's instructions in the corresponding instructions for use must be followed.

Only use equipment compatible with Bluetooth® technology. To obtain more information about the compatibility of

COPIA

Bluetooth® products, please contact a Volkswagen dealer or search for Bluetooth® products at Internet.

Telephone

Introduction to the topic

The telephone functions described below can be controlled by the equipment if an activated mobile phone is synchronised and connected.

The prerequisite for a connection between a mobile phone and the device is that the mobile phone supports the **Bluetooth® function**.

If no telephone is connected to the equipment, the telephone control is not available.

Instructions for the use of a mobile phone in the vehicle without connection to the external aerial
→ p. 319.

The display indications in the phone's menus depend on the range of functions of the mobile phone used. There may be differences.

Observe the guidelines for using a mobile phone in the vehicle without a connection to the external aerial → p. 319.

Only use Bluetooth® -compatible equipment. Information on Bluetooth® -compatible products can be obtained from your Volkswagen dealer or on the Internet.

Observe the operating instructions of the mobile phone and the accessory provider.

In "transmission blocking areas", reception failures and interruption of calls may occur.

Most electronic equipment is shielded against HF (high frequency) signals. However, in rare cases, electronic equipment may not be shielded against HF signals from the telephone control. Damage may occur.

WARNING

Telephoning and operating a mobile phone while travelling can distract attention from traffic and lead to accidents.

- Always drive responsibly and pay the utmost attention to traffic.
- Select the sound volume settings so that sound signals (e.g. sirens of emergency services) can always be heard.
- In unserved or poorly serviced areas of the mobile communication network and, depending on the circumstances, in tunnels, tunnels and subways, calls may not be possible or telephone conversations may be interrupted, even in the case of emergency calls.

WARNING

An unsecured or improperly secured mobile phone can be thrown from inside the vehicle by a sudden steering or steering manoeuvre, as well as in an accident, and cause serious injury.

- Always secure the mobile phone correctly and outside the expansion areas of the air bag when driving.

WARNING

A switched-on mobile phone can cause interference in pacemakers when they are carried directly into the pacemaker.

- Maintain a minimum distance of 20 centimetres between mobile phone antennas and a cardiac pacemaker, as mobile phones can influence the function of cardiac pacemakers.
- Do not carry mobile phones switched on in the inside pocket directly above the sea.
- Switch off the mobile phone immediately when you suspect interference.

NOTICE

High speeds, weather conditions and poor road conditions, as well as the quality of the network can impair a phone call in the vehicle

COPIA

Places with special indications

Note⚠ and(!) at the beginning of this chapter on page 177.

Switch off the mobile phone and mobile phone preparation in potentially explosive atmospheres. Such places are common, but not always clearly identified.
→ ⚠ in *Introduction to the topic* on p. 177.
These are places of this type, for example:

- The vicinity of pipelines and tanks, in which chemicals are contained.
- Lower decks on ships and rafts.
- Vehicle interiors that are activated by liquid gas (e.g. propane or bu- tane).
- Places where chemicals or particles such as flour, dust or metal dust are present in the atmosphere.
- Any other place where the vehicle's engine must be switched off.

⚠ WARNING

Switch off the mobile phone in potentially explosive atmospheres!

(!) *NOTICE*

In environments with special indications and where the use of mobile phones is prohibited, the phone must always be switched off. The radiation emitted by the switched-on mobile phone can cause interference in sensitive technical equipment and medical equipment, which can lead to malfunctions or damage to the equipment.

Bluetooth®

Note⚠ and(!) at the beginning of this chapter on page 177.

Bluetooth®

Bluetooth® technology is used to connect a mobile phone to the vehicle's phone control. To use the phone control with a Bluetooth® mobile phone, a single pairing process is required.

Some mobile phones with Bluetooth® are known and connect automatically when the ignition is switched on, if there was already a connection. At the same time, the mobile phone itself, as well as the Bluetooth® in the mobile phone, must be connected and all active Bluetooth® connections to other devices must be separated.

Bluetooth® radio communication is free of charge.

Bluetooth® is a registered trademark of Bluetooth® SIG, Inc.

Bluetooth® Profiles

If a mobile phone is connected to the phone controller, the data exchange can be carried out via one of the Bluetooth® profiles.

Bluetooth® Hands-Free-Profile (**HFP**) **basic telephony:**

- If a mobile phone is connected via HFP with the telephone control, the call can be made wirelessly via the loudspeaker device. The vehicle's external antenna *cannot* be used in this way. Notes on using a mobile phone in the vehicle without connection to the external antenna → p. 319.

Bluetooth® Advanced Audio Distribution Profile (**A2DP**) **music playback:**

- Bluetooth® profile for transferring audio signals in stereo quality.

Bluetooth® Audio Video Remote Control Profile (**AVRCP**) **playback control:**

- Bluetooth® profile for displaying track information and playback control on the mobile device

Synchronising and connecting the mobile phone to the radio

Note⚠ and(!) at the beginning of this chapter on page 177.

To operate a mobile phone via the radio, it is necessary to synchronise the two devices **once**.

The linkage must be made with the vehicle stationary.

COPIA

Requirements

– The ignition is switched on.
– If necessary, disconnect the connected headset from the mobile phone.
– The **Bluetooth®** function must be active and visible on the phone and radio.
– The **key lock** on the mobile phone must be deactivated.

Observe the instruction manual of the mobile phone.

During the pairing process, it is necessary to make entries on the keypad of the mobile phone. The mobile phone must be prepared for this.

Initiate mobile phone pairing

– Press the PHONE key.
– Touch the Find Phone function button .

When the process is closed, the names of the Bluetooth® devices found are shown on the display.

– Access the mobile phone in the list of found Bluetooth® positive dis- .

This connects the radio and the mobile phone. To complete the connection of the two devices, it may be necessary to make further entries on the mobile phone and the radio.

– If applicable, confirm the pairing on the mobile phone.

Depending on the mobile phone:

– Enter the PIN code shown on the radio display by mobile phone and confirm.

OR:

– Compare the PIN code displayed on the radio's dis- play with the PIN code displayed on the mobile phone. If it matches, it must be signed on **both** devices.

After successful pairing, the *PHONE* main menu is displayed and the phone book and call lists stored in the mobile phone are automatically loaded. If necessary, the mobile phone must be confirmed.

The duration of the charging process depends on the amount of data stored in the mobile phone. After the charging process is completed, the radio data will be available.

Pairing and connecting mobile phones

It is possible to synchronise several mobile phones to the device. However, only **one** mobile phone can be connected to the device at a time.

When the radio is switched on, a connection is automatically established with the last connected mobile phone. If it is not possible to establish a connection to this mobile phone, the telephone control automatically attempts to establish a connection to the next mobile phone in the list of paired devices.

The **maximum** range of a Bluetooth® connection is approximately **10 metres**. Existing Bluetooth® connections are interrupted if this distance is exceeded. The connection is **automatically** re-established as soon as the device is within the range of the Blue- tooth®.

For further information on the pairing and connection of mobile phones, please contact
Ask a Volkswagen Dealer.

Disconnecting p h o n e control

Note⚠ and(!) at the beginning of this chapter on page 177.

– Close the active call.
– Switch off the ignition.
– Remove the vehicle key from the ignition lock.
– Switch off the mobile phone.

If the vehicle key is still in the ignition after the ignition has been switched off, the telephone control is **not** switched off. The telephone control is only switched off after the switch-off time (factory setting of approx. 15 minutes) has elapsed.

If a mobile phone was connected to the phone control, after the phone control was
If you switch off the telephone control, the transmission unit of the mobile phone remains switched on. The mobile phone may have to be switched off.

COPIA

Description of the telephone control

Note⚠ and ⓘ at the beginning of this chapter on page 177.

Some functions and settings are only possible when the vehicle is stationary and are not supported by all mobile phones.

The setting options vary by country and equipment, and depend on the vehicle's equipment.

With phone control, up to 20 devices can be recognised.

Respectively, one or the same equipment can be connected by speaker profile (HFP) and audio playback profile (A2DP).

Assignment to a user profile

A connected mobile phone is saved as a user profile in the phone control.

A **maximum of 4** mobile phone **user** profiles can be assigned to the telephone control. If another mobile phone is connected, the user profile that has not been used for the longest time is automatically deleted.

In the user profile, the phone book data, the stored favourites (speed dial keys) and the settings in the **Settings** menu **of the user profile** are saved.

If a mobile phone is reconnected to the phone control, the data and settings will be available again.

If the phone book entries of the mobile phone were changed during the existing connection, the phone book data can be updated manually via the menu **Settings in the user profile** → p. 186. After a new connection of the mobile phone (e.g. on the next trip), the phone book is updated automatically.

⚠ WARNING

An unsecured or improperly secured mobile device could be thrown out of the vehicle's internal compartment by a sudden starting or braking manoeuvre, such as in the event of an accident, and cause injury.

- Always securely fasten or store the mobile device correctly and outside the expansion area of the airbag when driving.

ⓘ The use of a mobile phone in the vehicle can cause noise in the speakers

Phone main menu

Note⚠ and ⓘ at the beginning of this chapter on page 177.



Fig. 140 Main menu of the telephone.



Fig. 141 Detailed calls.

Open the phone's main menu

Press the PHONE key.

COPY

Function buttons in the main menu of phone

Function button: effect
(1) Name of the linked mobile phone or the user profile used. Touch to connect or link another mobile phone.
(2) Favourites (speed dial keys) that can be used with a phone number from the phone book → p. 184.
Open a numeric keypad to enter a telephone number → p. 182.
Open the phone's phone book linked mobile phone → p. 183.
Open the call list of the mobile phone The coupled railcar → p. 184.
a) Open the message list (SMS) of the paired mobile phone.
Tap the function button to set the function to a) cer with a telephone number via voice command.
Open **Phone Settings** menu → p. 185.
Touch to **accept** a call. Touch to **end** a call. **Or:** tap to **reject** an incoming call.
Tap to mute the sound during the call. Tap on the function button to unmute the sound.

a) Depending on the mobile phone.

Displays and symbols of the control of phone

Exhibition: meaning
(1) Name of the operator of the mobile communication network (operator) on which the tar- A The SIM card of the paired mobile phone is registered.
(2) B Display of call number or stored name.
Charge level of the paired mobile phone.
Signal strength of the transceiver station mobile communication mission available at the moment.
Displays an active Bluetooth® connection.

During a phone call

Note ⚠ and ⓘ at the beginning of this chapter on page 177.



Fig. 142 During a phone call.

Once communication with a phone number is established, the *PHONE* main menu will switch to the *Phone Call* display. → fig. 142.

Display and function surfaces: action and effect
Tap to disconnect the microphone from the mobile phone preparation during a call (the function button changes for).
(A) Touch to connect the microphone of the mobile phone preparation during a call (the function button changes for).
(B) Display of call duration and of the call number or saved name. Touch to end a call.
Charging level of the paired mobile phone.

Functions during a phone call

Possible functions	
Muting the mobile phone preparation microphone	Tap on the function button . The microphone of the mobile phone preparation is muted (the function button changes to).

COPY

Possible functions	
Reconnecting the microphone of the preparation	Tap on the function button . The preparation microphone
The mobile phone connection is connected to the non-mobile (the function button goes to).	
Making the telephone call by mobile phone	Tap on the function button and then Loudspeaker . The loudspeaker function is deactivated and the call is continued on the mobile phone.
Making the telephone call	Tap on the function button and then Speaker .
The loudspeaker function is activated again by The loudspeaker function is activated and the call is continued by the preparation for telephone by the preparation for telephone. mobil e not mobile.	

Menu enter number of phone

Please note ⚠ and ⓘ, at the beginning of this chapter, on page 177.



Fig. 143 Set phone number menu.



Fig. 144 Enter phone number menu (select contact from the list).

Functions in the menu Enter number of phone.

Tap on the function button to access the *Enter phone number* menu.

Possible functions	
Calling voicemail	Tap on the function button Mailbox to establish the connection. If you have not yet saved a phone number from the voice mailbox, enter the phone number and confirm with OK . An already saved phone number can be changed in **the** menu **User profile settings** → p. 186.
Enter telephone number	Enter phone number using the keypad. Tap on the function button to establish communication.
Select contact of the list	Enter the initial letter of the desired keystroke on the keyboard. In the contact list, you will see shows a possible entry. Search in the contact list and tap on the desired contact. to establish a connection.

COPIA

Possible functions	
Enter country code	When entering a country code, it is possible, instead of the first two numbers (e.g. "**00**"), to enter the symbol "**+**". Tap on the function button 0 for approximately 2 segundos to enter the character **+**.

Phonebook menu

Please note⚠ and ⓘ, at the beginning of this chapter, on page 177.



Fig. 145 Contacts menu (phone book).



Fig. 146 Search mask.

After the first synchronisation process, it may take a few minutes until the contacts[1] of the synchronised mobile phone are available on the device. Depending on the volume of data to be transmitted, the process may take a few minutes.

to take up to approximately one hour. If this is the case, the transmission must be confirmed on the mobile phone.

Contacts can also be accessed during an ongoing call.

Open the Contacts menu

Tap on the function button ▢ to access the *Phonebook (contacts)* menu.

Possible functions	
Select with - tact of the list	Search in the list and tap on the desired contact to establish a connection. **OR:** if several are stored phone numbers for a contact, tap first on the contact and then on the desired phone number to establish a connection.
Search for contact by search mask.	Tap on the function button ▢ → fig. 145 to open the search mask. Put the desired names in the search mask → fig. 146. On the right, next to the insertion field, the appropriate number of events is displayed. Touch the function button to switch to the list display. Search in the list and tap on the desired contact to establish a connection.

ⓘ The availability of the phone menu depends on the mobile phone used

[1] Depending on the model, only contacts from the phone memory are loaded.

COPIA

Call lists menu

Note⚠ and(!) at the beginning of this chapter on page 177.



Fig. 147 Calls menu (call lists).

When a phone number is saved as a contact, the saved name will be displayed instead of the number in the call list.

Open the Calls menu

Tap on the function button ▢ to enter the **Calls** menu.

Touch the function button ▢ → fig. 147(1).

Select the desired frequency band:

All , Lost , Marked o Attended .

Vi- li- za- tio n	Meaning sua
	Missed : displays numbers of missed and unanswered calls.
	Dialed : displays telephone numbers that were selected by means of the mobile phone and the telephone control of the equipment.
	Served : shows the numbers served via the mobile phone and the team's telephone control.

The availability of call lists depends on the mobile phone used

Favourites (speed dial keys)

Note⚠ and(!) at the beginning of this chapter on page 177.



Fig. 148 Telephone main menu.

In total, **4** favourites can be assigned to a telephone number of the telephone agency.

All favourites must be assigned manually and then attributed to a user profile.

Favourites functions

Possible functions	
Assign favourite	In the *PHONE* main menu, tap on the **free** function button. Select the desired contact from the list. If more phone numbers are stored for the desired contact, select the desired number.
Edit bookmark	In the *PHONE* main menu, *press and hold down the favourite* until the *Con- tact* menu opens. Select the desired contact from the list. If more phone numbers are stored for the desired contact, select the desired number. To close the *Contacts* menu without making any changes, click on the function button ▢

COPY

Possible functions	
Delete bookmark	A bookmark can be deleted in the **Settings** menu **of the user's profile** under **Manage bookmarks.** → p. 186.
Establishing a connection with a favourite	In the *PHONE* main menu, **tap quickly** on the function button of the respective *assigned* favourite to establish the connection to the phone number stored there.

Contacts saved as favourites are not automatically updated. If you alter a contact stored in the mobile phone as a favourite, the function button must be assigned again.

Phone settings

Note⚠ and⚠ at the beginning of this chapter on page 177.

Open the Phone Settings menu

– In the *PHONE* main menu, tap on the function button .
– Touch on the function button the track on which the settings are to be made.
– When closing a menu, the changes are automatically assumed.

Function button: effect
Select telephone: select device ® from the list to connect it. **Search for phone**: touch to connect a new Bluetooth® device.
Bluetooth: opens the **Bluetooth Settings** menu → p. 185.
User profile: Opens the menu **User profile settings** → p. 186.
Mobile phone reminder: if there is a Bluetooth® connection to a mobile phone, when the ignition is switched off, the message "**Don't forget your mobile phone**" is displayed.

Bluetooth® settings

Note⚠ and⚠ at the beginning of this chapter on page 177.

Open the Bluetooth Settings menu

In the PHONE main menu, tap on the function button .
Or: press the SETUP key.
Then tap on the **Bluetooth** function button.
Touch on the function button the track on which the settings are to be made. When closing a menu, the
alterations are automatically assumed.

Function button: effect
Bluetooth: Touch to disconnect Bluetooth ®. All established connections are disconnected.
Visibility: Turn Bluetooth® visibility on and off. **Visible**: Bluetooth® visibility is activated. **Hidden**: Bluetooth® visibility is de-activated. Bluetooth® visibility must be switched on for external pairing of a Bluetooth® device with the radio.
Name: displays or alters the device name. This name is displayed on other Bluetooth® devices in the Bluetooth® settings.
Paired devices: Displays the paired device. Disconnection and connection of individual Bluetooth® devices and Bluetooth® profiles.
Search for devices: Search for visible connected Bluetooth® devices within range of the device. The **maximum** range is approximately **10 metres**.
Audio BT (A2DP/AVRCP): If an external audio source is to be connected to the device via Bluetooth®, this function must be active.

COPY

User profile settings

Note⚠ and(!) at the beginning of this chapter on page 177.

Function button: effect
Manage favourites: edit favourites → p. 184. **All**: All favourites are deleted. **Favourite**: touch to delete the saved number. **Free function button**: touch to save a number from the phone book as a favourite.
Mailbox number: enter or change the voice mailbox number.
Sort by: set sort order of phonebook entries (**Surname** or **First Name**).
Import contacts: touch to import the phone book of the connected phone or to update the already imported phone book.
Select ring tone: Select ring tone from a list of preset ring tones. The ring tone is played and, when you exit the sub-menu, stored.
Delete other profiles: delete some or all inactive user profiles

Configurations

Menu settings and system

Depending on the vehicle version and model, the menu and system functions and configuration options may vary.

Open the System Settings menu

– Press the radio button SETUP →⚠ .
– Press the mode function button so that the settings can be entered.
– When closing a menu, the changes are assumed automatically. .

Function button: effect
Sound: make the sound and volume settings. men → p. 187.
Display: make display settings. **Switch off display (within 10 s)**: If the function is active and the device is not in operation, the display switches off automatically after 10 seconds. Touching the display or pressing a key switches the display on again. **Brightness level**: select the brightness level of the display. **Touchscreen sound**: The confirmation sound when touching a function button on the display is active. **Show time in standby mode**: In standby mode, the current time is shown on the display.
Time and date: make time and date settings. **Time**: set current time manually. **Time format**: define the format for the time display (12 or 24 hours). **Daylight saving time**: automatically adjust the time. **Date**: set the current date. **Date format**: select date display format (dd-mm-yyyy, yyyy-mm-dd or mm-dd-yyyy).
Additional keyboard languagesa): select additional keyboard language.
Units: define units for display in the vehicle.
Bluetootha): make Bluetooth ®settings → p. 185.
Safely remove: remove the desired data carrier from the system. The function button is de-activated after the data carrier has been successfully removed from the system.
Factory settings: the return to the delivery condition **clears according to** the selection made **Inputs and settings made**.
System information: display of system information (device number, hardware and software status). **Update software**: update the software edition.
Copyright: copyright information.

a) Depends on the team and the country.

COPIA

⚠ WARNING

Driver distraction can lead to accidents and injuries.

- Never make adjustments while driving.

For the radio to work properly, it is important that the date and time are set correctly.
correctly fitted to the vehicle.

Sound settings and volume

Depending on the vehicle version and model, the functions and options for sound and volume settings may vary.

Press the SETUP and then select Sound.

Function button: effect
Volume: make volume adjustments.
Max. initial volume: determine the maximum initial volume.
Volume matching: Set the intensity of the volume matching in relation to the speed. . The audio volume is automatically increased as the speed increases.
Entertainment reduction: set playback volume of announcements.
AUX volume: set the playback volume of audio sources connected via the AUX-IN multimedia socket (**Low**, **Medium** or **High**). See also → p. 187, *Adapt the playback volume of external audio sources*.
Audio Bluetootha): Set the playback volume of audio sources connected via Bluetooth® (**Low**, **Medium** or **High**). See also → p. 187, *Adapt the playback volume of external audio sources*.
Balance - Fader: adjust the equalisation of the sound.
The grid grid shows the sound equalisation inside the vehicle. To alter the sound equalisation, tap on the desired position in the vehicle interior display or use the arrow keys for step alteration. To centralise the sound equalisation of the

Function button: effect
sound in the display of the vehicle's interior Tap on the function button between the arrows.
Bass - mid - treble: adjust the sound characteristic (bass - mid - treble).
Touchscreen sound: The confirmation sound when touching a function button on the display is active.

a) Depending on country and equipment.

Speed-dependent volume increase (GALA) operating mode

The speed-dependent volume increase (GALA) automatically adjusts the volume according to the vehicle speed.

The volume increase is regulated in levels of **1** a **7**.

If a low value is set, the volume increases slightly at higher speeds; if the value is set low, the volume increases slightly at higher speeds.
If the set value is high, the volume increases sharply. In level **0**, the speed-dependent volume increase (GALA) is switched off.

Adapting the playback volume of external audio sources

If you wish to increase the playback volume of an external audio source, first turn down the basic volume of the device.

If the connected audio source is **too low**, increase the **output volume** on the external audio source. If this is not sufficient, set the **volume on the connected audio source** to **Medium** or **High**.

If the connected external audio source is **too loud or distorted**, decrease the **output volume** on the external audio source. If this is not sufficient, set the **volume on connection** to **Medium** or **Low**.

⚠

Driver distraction can lead to accidents and injuries.

- Never make adjustments while driving.

COPIA

Discover Media

Radio

Introduction to the topic

When using the radio, observe national regulations and legal provisions.

Additional electrical devices connected to the vehicle may interfere with the reception of the radio signal and generate noise in the sound sources.

In car parks, tunnels, buildings or mountains, the radio signal can be interfered with.

The films or stickers are reusable.
The use of metal covers on the windows may limit reception in vehicles with antennae. in the glass.



Fig. 149 RADIO main menu.



Fig. 150 Radio operation: station list.

Press the RADIO button while the unit is switched on. The radio mode is switched on.

To exit the main menu, press the button again. RADIO KEY RADIO (back to main menu above) or press another key on the radio.

The following options are available:

- Return to the preset station.
- Search for the next station.
- Memorise the tuned stations.

The currently tuned radio station is shown in the centre of the display. In the case of radio stations with RDS, the name of the station can be given instead of its frequency in case of good reception, e.g. **RADIO 21**.

Function areas in the main menu RADIO

Function button: effect	
1	Change the key group of this- The display is shown by touching on the function surface.
FM/AM	Select the desired frequency band.
List of issuers.	Opens the list of stations in the radio that can be received today → p. 190.
Manual	Opens the scale of the regulated frequency band (frequency band).
Config.	Opens the settings menu of the active frequency band → p. 192, *Radio settings*.

COPIA

Function button: effect	
< / >	Switch between stored stations or available stations. Settings for the arrow keys in the menu → p. 192, *Radio settings* .
SCAN	The function button is only visible when the automatic search → p. 191 is executed. In order to start the automatic search, press the control button → fig. 120 (4).
From 1 to 18	Station keys for saving stations → p. 189.
	Update station list (**AM** frequency band) → p. 190.

Possible displays and symbols

Exhibition: meaning	
(A)	Display of the frequency of the station.
	The radio station is stored in a station key.

RDS radio data system

RDS (Radio Data System) is a radio data system via the additional FM services, which enables the display of station names and radio text.

RDS is not found on all equipment and is not available everywhere, nor on all FM stations.

RDS can be deactivated in the **FM Settings** menu, depending on the country and device → p. 192.

Without RDS, it is basically impossible to obtain **ser-additional vices**.

Radio text (RDS)

Some RDS-capable stations additionally transmit text information - so-called radio texts.

The radio texts are shown in the upper half of the display above the station keys. → fig. 149 (A).

The radio text display can be deactivated in the menu → p. 192, *Radio settings*.

Broadcasters are responsible for the content of the information transmitted .

Station keys



Fig. 151 RADIO main menu.

In the *RADIO* main menu, the stations of the currently selected frequency band can be stored in 15 numbered frequency bands. These function areas are called "Station keys".

Functions of the station buttons → fig. 1 5 1	
	Touch the station key that displays the desired station.
A single saved station	station can be accessed via the access keys, and can be changed via the station keys, while can be tuned to the current location.
Change the group of station keys	Swipe your finger over the display, in the area of the station keys. ctions → fig. 151 (1) from right to left or from left to right. right.

COPY

Functions of the station buttons → fig. 151

	The station keys are displayed in groups for 6 function areas (1 to 6, 7 to 12 and 13 to 18).
Save this station	See save stations
The station keys	→ p. 190.

Radio-specific displays, menus and symbols

Function areas and corresponding meanings in the main menu RADIO → fig. 149 y → fig. 150:

Select the Station function button me-< or > . The arrow keys are used to	
	Depending on the setting of the arrow buttons, you switch between saved stations or available stations. Settings for the arrow buttons in the menu → p. 192, *Radio settings* .
	To open the list of stations, tap on the function button.
Select station from list of stations	to open the list of stations. **Or:** turn the setting key. Search the list and access the desired station with a tap. To close the list of stations, touch the function button . Without a command, the list of stations is automatically closed after a certain period of time.
Update the list of stations	In the **FM** frequency band, the station list is automatically updated. In the **AM** frequency band, the station list can also be updated manually by the function button .

Manually adjust the frequency of the stations.

Introduce the frequency range	Touch the function button → fig. 149. *Turn* the setting button. **Or:** press the arrow keys to-
Altering the fre- step	The left-hand or right-hand side of the range of frequencies.
Quickly go through the range of frequences	*Touch* one of the arrow keys **at the top of** the dis- play. The next available station is set automatically. **OR:** *Press and hold down* one of the arrow buttons on the display. After *releasing*, the next tunable radio station is automatically tuned in. **Or:** keep your finger on the frequency bank and pull the slider to move it. Press the setting button *lightly*. When a station is selected by means of a station selection button, the manual frequency selection is also closed. Without command, the frequency range is automatically hidden after a while.
Hide the frequency ga- ma- ge	

Save stations

Save the current station being listened to on a station key	*Press and hold down* the desired station button → fig. 149 until you hear an acoustic warning. The station currently being listened to is stored under this station key.
Save station list setting to a station key	Touch the function button or *turn* the configuration key to open the station list. Stations that have already been saved to a station key are identified in the station list by the symbol → fig. 150. *Press and hold* on the dis- play to select the desired station.

COPIA

Save stations

	Touch the station key on the the station is to be saved.
	An acoustic warning sounds and the station is saved to this station key. Repeat the procedure to save other stations in the station list.
	All stored stations of the respective frequency band

Delete the es-

The following are the main reasons for this.

given dually or all together.

tas→ p. 192, *Settings of the radio*.

Saving or deleting station logos on station keys

Depending on the country and device, station logos for the FM frequency band are pre-installed on the radio. If you save station on a station key, the respective station logo can be displayed on the station key if, in the extended settings → p. 192, *Station settings, the station logo* function is activated. Automatically save station logo .

The station logos can usually be attributed to the stations that are stored on the station keys and the logos appear on the station keys.

Broadcaster logos offer images in standard formats (e.g. jpg, bmp or png), with a maximum size of 400 x 240 pixels.

In some versions, the station logos can be downloaded from the Internet via a link from the "Volkswagen station logos" site.

Save station logos to a compatible storage device (e.g. SD card or USB storage media), which can then be imported to the radio.

Automatically save station logos on station keys (FM)

In the main menu *RADIO* (FM frequency band), touch the function button Config. .

Touch the Extended settings function button. Touch to activate the function Automatically save the station logo .

Save station logos to station keys manually

Storing station logos on a unit of

compatible storage (e.g., cards) SD card or USB storage media), and then import them into the radio.

Select the desired frequency band in the main *RADIO menu*.

Touch the function button Config. and then, in Broadcasters logo .

Touch the station key to which you want to assign the station logo.

Select the source in which the logo will be saved (e.g. SD 1).

Select the station logo. Repeat the procedure to assign other logos.

Press the main RADIO to return to the menu *RADIO* key.

Deleting station logos from station keys

Select the desired frequency band in the main *RADIO menu*.

Touch the function button Config. and then on Station logo .

Touch the station key from which you want to delete the station logo.

Or: tap the function button Clear All to delete the station logos of all stations. station keys.

Automatic search (SCAN)

When the automatic scan is activated, all available stations in the current frequency range are played for approx. 5 seconds. SCAN on the display.

COPIA

Start and stop automatic search	
the search **O:** tap the function button to select the desired function. The	Press the setting key li- Start . Config. and then select Scan .
Close the search The automatic station station without The	Press the setting button lightly. **O:** press the function button SCAN to close the search is automatically in the toned. The automatic search is also closed if a station is manually selected by . the station keys.

Radio settings

Function button: effect
Sound : sound settings.
Scan: automatic search (SCAN). When automatic scanning is activated, all available stations in the current frequency band are played back for approx. 5 seconds → p. 191.
Arrow keys : define settings for arrow keys < and > . The setting is assumed for all frequency bands (FM, AM). Memory list : Use the arrow keys to to change **all stored stations** of the selected frequency band. Station list : Use the arrow buttons to change **all tunable stations** in the selected frequency band.
Delete memory : delete all or some saved stations. Exclude all : all saved stations are excluded. To exclude a single station, press the key of the desired station.
Station logo : assign or delete the station logos on the saved station keys. → p. 191.
Radio text : the radio text is activated. → p. 189.

Media

Introduction to the topic

Media sources" refers to the following audio sources containing audio data on different data storage units, e.g. MP3 external player, audio files. These audio files can be

The following are reproduced via the relevant readers

The radio system's audio inputs (USB port, Bluetooth® interface or SD card).

Copyright

In general, audio and video files stored on data media are subject to copyright protection, according to the relevant laws and regulations. .

National and international regulations are applicable. Observe legal determinations.

This product is protected by copyright and other intellectual property rights of Microsoft Corporation. The use or commercialisation of this technology beyond the scope of this document is prohibited. this product without a licence from Microsoft or one of Microsoft's authorised affiliates.

Volkswagen accepts no liability for damaged or lost

fi

les.

Limitations and recommendations on data carriers

Dirt, high temperatures and mechanical damage can render a data carrier unusable. Pay attention to the instructions of the manufacturer of the data carrier.

Differences in the quality of data carriers from different manufacturers may cause playback interference.

The configuration of a data carrier or the hardware and software used in the recording may make some of the titles or data carriers no longer readable. Information on the best way to create audio files and data carriers (compression rate, ID3-tag etc.) can be found, for example, on Inter-
net.

COPIA

Depending on the size, usage status (number of copies and deletions), the folder structure and the type of data carrier file used, the read time may vary substantially.

A **playlist** defines only a certain playback order. **No** files are stored in playlists. Playlists are **not** played back, if the files in the playlist are not stored in the memory.

The data on the data carrier are not stored in the in the location to which the re-production list is forwarded (path-related data)

Databank and file prerequisites

The factory-installed CD units belong to safety class 1 according to DIN IEC 76 (CO) 6/ VDE 0837.

Only standard 12 cm (4.7 inch) CDs and SD cards with a physical size of 32 mm x 24 mm x 2.1 mm (1.26 x 0.94 x 0.083 inch) or 1.4 mm (1.26 x 0.94 x 0.083 inch) can be inserted into the radio.
(0.055 inches).
The file formats that can be played are
The above-mentioned files are known as "audio files". An audio data CD is referred to as an 'audio file'.
"Audio data CD".

Source of repro- means of production	System archi- ves	Requirements for the The
audio CD (up to 80 - min).		– Digital audio CD specification .
CD-ROM-,	ISO 9660	– Constant bitrate files are supported or
CD-R-, CD-	Level 1	variable.
RW-CD of data on how	and 2, Joliet or UDF	– MP3 (mp3) files (32 - 320 kbit/s). – WMA files (.wma)
max. 700 MB (Megabyte).	1.02, 1.5, 2.01	up to WMA 10 (up to 768 kbit/s). – WAV files (.wav) (64 - 1411 kbit/s). – OGG-Vorbis (.ogg) files (32 - 576 kbit/s). – FLAC files (.flac). (up to 96 kHz). – AAC files (.m4a, .m4b, .mp4, .aac) (16 - 400 kbit/s). – Playlists in M3U, M3U8, PLS, ASX and WPL formats.
SD and MMC memory cards of max. 2 GB (gigabyte). SDHC memory cards up to a maximum of 32 GB.		
Memory cards	FAT16, FAT32,	- Playlists (not daisy-chained) of up to
SDHC max. 2TB (Te- rabyte).	exFAT and	20 kB and with at most 20 kB and with at most 20 kB and with at most 20 kB and with at most Maximum 1 000 records. – A maximum of 32 playlists per data set. – A maximum of 1 000 items per folder level. – Maximum 30 000 audio files per data session. Maximum file size on FAT32 system: 4 GB.
Data support, specifically according to USB 1.X, 2.0, 3.0.		
Playback of audio files via Blue- tooth®a).		– The external Media Player must support the Bluetooth® A2DP or AVRCP profile.
Playback of external audio sources via USB connection.		– External data support on USB → p. 200.

a) Bluetooth® is a registered trademark of Bluetooth® SIG, Inc.

COPIA

Do not use SD card adapters.

SD card with navigation data cannot be used for storage for other files, the radio does not recognise the ar- saved goats.

No liability can be assumed for damaged or lost files in the data media.

Playback sequence of storage units audio data

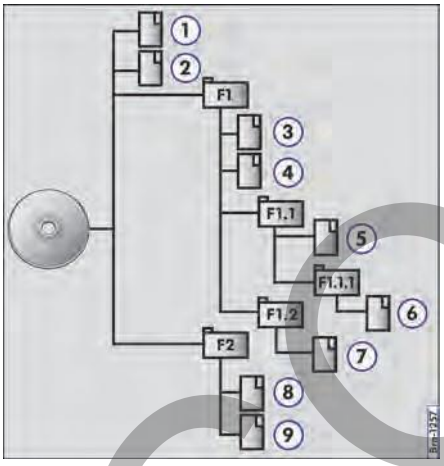


Fig. 152 Possible structure of an audio data CD.

On a data carrier, audio files are separated often by data folders.
and playlists to define a certain sequence of execution.

Tracks, folders and playlists are sorted in numerical and alphabetical order of according to the name on the data carrier.

Figure → fig. 152 shows, as an example, a Typical audio data CD containing tracks folders and subfolders → fig. 152.

The tracks and folders on this data carrier will therefore be played and displayed in the following sequence [1]:

1. Title ① y ② in the main directory (Root).
2. Title ③ y ④ in the **first F1** folder of the main directory (indication: **01**).
3. Title ⑤ in the **first F1.1** subfolder of the folder **F1** (display: **02**).
4. Title ⑥ in the **first** subfolder **F1.1.1** of subfolder **F1.1** (display: **03**).
5. Title ⑦ in the **second** subfolder **F1.2** of folder **F1** (display: **04**).
6. Title ⑧ y ⑨ in the **second** folder **F2** (visualisation: **05**).

The execution sequence can be modified by the selection of different execution modes. reproduction → p. 195.

The playlists are **not** played automatically, but must be selected by the user.
Select a title individually in the title selection menu → p. 197.

Main media menu



Fig. 153 MEDIA main menu.

Via the main *MEDIA* menu, different media sources can be selected and played back.

- Press the radio button MEDIA to open the main menu *MEDIA* → fig. 153.

The playback of the last executed media source continues at the last executed point. tado.

[1] In the **Media Settings** menu, the function Mix/Repeat, including the subfolder , must be activated → p. 198.

COPIA

The currently playing media sources are displayed on the function button at the bottom left → fig. 153 1 .

If no media source can be selected, *MEDIA* appears in the main menu.

Function areas in the main menu MEDIA

Function button: effect	
①	Displays the current media source selected. Tap to select another media source. → p. 196. CD : internal CD drive → p. 198. SD card 1 , SD card 2 : SD card → p. 199. USB : external data carrier on the USB → p. 200. Audio BT : Bluetooth® audio → p. 201.
Selection	Opens the playlist → p. 197.
< / >	Change the title in the media operation → p. 197.
	Playback is interrupted. The function button changes to . → p. 197.
	Playback is resumed. The function button switches to . → p. 197.
Config.	Opens the **Media Settings** menu → p. 198.
	Press to switch between available modes. : repeat current titles. : repeat all titles. All titles that are on the same memory level as the current title will be repeated.
	Shuffle playback. The function button changes to . All titles that are on the same memory level as the currently playing title will be included. In the **Media Settings** menu, you can Mix/Repeat, including the subfolder , de-activate. If this must be activated, the subfolders → p. 198 are also included.

Displays and symbols in the main menu MEDIA

Exhibition: meaning	
Ⓐ	Display of title information (CD text , ID3 tag in MP3 files). Audio CDs: display of the **title** and title number, according to the sequence on the data carrier. Audio files: display of **artist name**, **album name** and **track name**, if available.
Ⓑ	Display of album cover, if available available on the data carrier.
Ⓒ	Track duration, progress bar and remaining duration in minutes and seconds. **VBR**: In audio files with variable bitrate, the remaining duration displayed may vary. *Press* the progress bar or *press and drag* to jump to another position in the track.

COPY

External multimedia unit

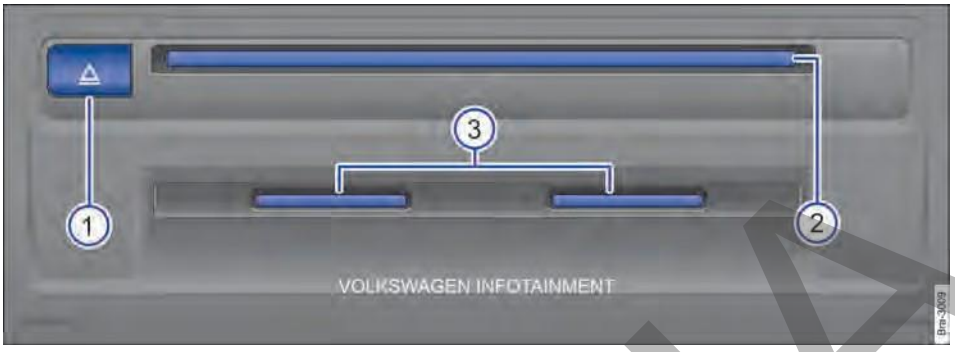


Fig. 154 External multimedia unit: in the glove box.

Legend for → fig. 154: CD

(1) eject key. CD drive.

(2) SD card input:

- An inserted SD card **must** be prepared for removal.

Some external audio sources can be connected to the equipment via wired and wireless connections (if available) in the vehicle.

The type and number of connections with and without cables depend on the country and vehicle. In one model series and, depending on the model, in a special model, the connections may be different.

For cable connections, use only the original cables of the device or - if applicable - the cables supplied ex works for that vehicle.

Only compatible audio files are displayed. Other files are ignored → p. 193.

If a connected device is not recognised, remove all connections and reconnect. the devices again. If necessary, check the function of the connection cable used.

If there are operational problems with the connected equipment, restart the equipment. At
In some cases, this will fix the error.

Change media source

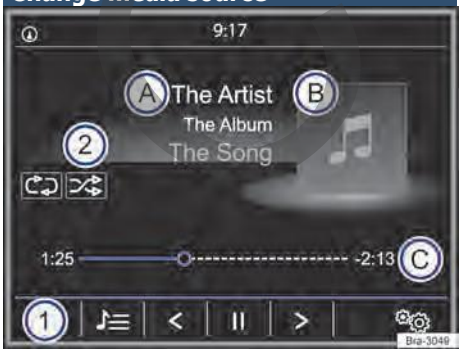


Fig. 155 MEDIA main menu.

– In the *MEDIA* main menu, press the MEDIA radio button again to scroll through all available media sources.

– **Or**: in the main *MEDIA* menu press the button function → fig. 153 (1) and select the source desired media type.

In the pop-up window there are currently no selectable media sources presented as inactive (greyed out).

The media source being used is shown on the display.

If no media source can be selected, *MEDIA*is displayed in the main menu.

SOPIA

If a previously played media source is re-selected, playback resumes at the last played point.

Optional selectable media sources

Media source key	Media source function
CD	Internal CD drive → p. 198.
SD card 1 / SD Card 2	SD card in the slot for target SD → p. 199.
USB	USB storage unit in the USB port → p. 200. For the mounting location of the input → p. 146.
Audio BT	External audio source connected via Bluetooth® → p. 201.

The media source can also be changed in the *Playlist*. → p. 197.

Change the title in the main menu



Fig. 156 MEDIA main menu.

The titles of the media sources in playback can be scrolled through successively using the arrow keys → p. 197.

It is not possible to switch to playback from a playlist using the arrow keys. Playback from a playlist must be started manually via the title selection menu. → p. 197.

Command via main menu MEDIA

Action	Effect
Briefly press the function button < once.	At a re-production duration of less than 3 seconds, the for the start of the title previous. In a time duration of 3 seconds or more, is changed to the start of the current title.
Briefly press the function button > once.	For the next title. From the last title is changed to the first title of the executed data carrier.
Hold down the function button <.	Fast rewind.
Hold down the function button >.	Fast forward.
Click on the function ▢ once *briefly*.	The repro- The repro- The repro- The repro- The repro- The repro- The reprocessing of the duction. The function changes to .
Click on the function ▢ once *briefly*.	Playback is resumed. The function button. The function button cation ▢ switch to .

Track selection from the playlist



Fig. 157 Playlist of a media source (folder view).

To open the list of titles in the main menu *MEDIA* press the function button ▢ **Or** turn the selection key. The title being played is highlighted .

COPIA

Search for the list of titles and click on the desired title. If title information is available, the number and name of the titles or file names (MP3) are displayed instead of **Title + no.** [1]. The list of titles cannot be supported by the source.

Titles, folders and playlists can also be bookmarked by turning the key at setting, and can be accessed and pre-opened. sionando la tecla.

Functions, indications and symbols

Function and effect button:
Open the **Sources** menu. Select another media source with a twist. The currently selected media source appears in the top line of the display. Press to change the media source. CD : internal CD drive → p. 198. Tarjeta SD : memory card → p. 199. USB : external data carrier on the USB → p. 200. Audio BT : External media player connected via Bluetooth® → p. 201.
Click on the function button to open the media source folder above. respectively. The name of the currently open folder is shown to the right of the symbol.
Starts playback of the first title.
Repeat all titles. The function button changes to .
All titles that are on the same memory level will be repeated. than the currently playing title. In the **Media Settings** menu Mix/Repeat, including the sub-folder, must be activated, this also includes the sub-folders → p. 198.
Shuffle playback. The function button changes to .
All titles that are on the same memory level as the currently played title will be included. At the **Media Settings** menu Mix/Repeat, including the sub-folder, must be activated, this also includes the sub-folders → p. 198.
Close the playlist.

Specific configurations of medios

Open the Media Settings menu

In the main *MEDIA* menu, tap on the function button .

Function button: effect
Sound : opens the **Sound Settings** menu → p. 223.
Mix/Repeat, including sub-folders : sub-folders are included in the selected playback mode → p. 194.
Bluetooth : opens the **Bluetooth Settings** menu → p. 223.
Safely remove : Remove the desired data storage unit (USB data carrier or SD card) from the system. The respective function button is de-activated after successful removal of the data storage unit from the system

CD drive

During the journey, the driver must not operate the radio; set up or change the data carrier before starting the journey!

The CD player can play both audio CDs and audio data CDs.

- Playback may be skipped in poor road conditions and intense vibrations.
- On audio CDs without CD text, only the **title** and the track number are shown in the centre line of the display, according to the order on the data carrier.
- If the internal temperature of the equipment is too high, CDs will not be accepted or executed.

[1] Depending on the source.

COPIA

Place CD

– Hold the CD with the printed side facing up.
– After the application, insert the CD into the CD player.

  CD slot of the CD drive → fig. 154 ② until it is automatically pushed in.
– Once entered, playback starts automatically .

Remove CD

The vehicle key must be in the ignition for the CD to be ejected (anti-theft protection).

– Press the eject button → fig. 154 1 .
– The CD is ejected to the ejection position and has about 10 seconds to be removed.

If the CD is not removed within approximately 10 seconds, it is re-entered for safety reasons, without going into CD operation.

CD unreadable or defective

If the data on an inserted CD cannot be read, or if the CD is defective, the CD operation will **not be switched** to CD operation. **CD drive error** appears on the display.

If, after inserting several CDs, **a defect** is displayed **in the CD drive** in the
For each of them, please contact a Volkswagen dealer or a specialised company.

SD card input

Only SD cards with the following dimensions can be inserted in the SD card slot → fig. 154 ③: 32 mm x 24 mm x 2.1 mm (1.26 x 1.26 x 1.5 mm).
0.94 x 0.083 inches **or** 32 mm x 24 mm x 1.4 mm (1.26 x 0.94 x 0.055 inches).

Only compatible audio files are displayed → p. 192. Other files are ignored.

Insert SD card

Carefully insert the SD card into the SD card slot with the cut edge facing upwards and the inscriptions on the left (contact surfaces facing downwards).

If it is not possible to insert an SD card, please check the insertion position and the SD card.

Eject SD card

To avoid data loss, an inserted SD card **must** be prepared for removal by following the process below:

SETUP Withdraw safely SD card .

Then press the inserted SD card. The SD card "jumps" to the ejection position and can be removed.

SD card unreadable

If an SD card is inserted and the data cannot be read, a corresponding orientation appears on the radio display.

Playback from an SD card

– Carefully insert the SD card, with the cut-off edge facing upwards and the inscriptions on the left, into the SD card slot. → fig. 154 ③.
– To remove the SD card → p. 199, first view the system settings and perform the **Safely remove source** action. Press the SD card lightly so that it "jumps" to the exit position.
– Press the radio button MEDIA .

Playback of the last used media source is resumed. To play the SD card, press the key .

While viewing the folders, navigate with the function key selector key. Press to go to the top level of the folders and turn the selector key to select the desired folder.

To change to the previous or next title, press one of the function keys.

Press and hold one of the arrow keys for a few seconds to move forward or backward in the playback.

During SD card playback, some function keys are available at the bottom of the display. The active function buttons are highlighted.

The SD card is **not the** responsibility of Volkswagen and is not offered together with the ra-
gave. You must purchase an SD card for use in the radio.

Do not use any SD card adapters.

COPIA

The SD card with the navigation data cannot be used as a memory for other files, the radio does not recognise the saved files.

Wired and wireless connections

Some external devices can be connected to the radio via wired and wireless connections (if available) in the vehicle.

The type and number of wired and wireless connections depend on the country and vehicle. Within a model range and on special models the connections may differ.

For wired connections, use only the original cables of the device or - if applicable - the cables which are supplied ex-factory for that vehicle.

External data support on USB

The location of the USB inputs depends on the vehicle → p. 146.

Audio files on an external data carrier, connected to the USB input , can be played and controlled via the device.

In this manual, USB data sticks with playable files, e.g. MP3 players, iPods™ and pen drives, are referred to as external data media.
Only supported audio files are displayed. two. Other files are ignored.

Playback starts automatically if there are audio files saved and readable on the data carrier.

The additional control of the external data medium (access to title change, title selection and playback modes) is carried out as described in the respective chapters → p. 192.

Guidelines and restrictions

The number of USB inputs and compatibility with Apple™ devices as well as other media players depends on the device.

Via the USB input , the usual USB voltage of 5 V is provided.

External hard disks with a capacity of more than 32 GB must be reformatted to the FAT32 file system, depending on the conditions. Programs and guidelines for this format can be found, for example, on the Internet.

Due to the large number of different data storage units and the various generations of iPod™, iPad™ and iPhone™, it cannot be guaranteed that all of the functions described can be executed without failure.

Observe other restrictions and guidance to prerequisites for media sources → p. 193.

iPod™, iPad™ and iPhone™

Depending on country and version, iPods™, iPads™ or iPhones™ can be connected to the vehicle's USB input via the appropriate USB cable and used as an audio source.

When an iPod™, iPad™ or iPhone™ is connected, iPod™ specific list displays will be represented at the top level of selection (**Playlists**, **Artists**, **Albums**, **Titles**, **Podcasts**, etc.).

Disconnect connection

The connected data carrier **must be** prepared for removal prior to disconnection of the connection.

– In the main *MENU* menu, press the function button Config. , to open the **Media Settings** menu.
– **O:** press the equipment key MENU and then play in Configurations to open the **Con-** menu **system's figurations**.
– Press the function button Remove safely and then USB . The function button is deactivated after the data carrier has been successfully removed from the system.
– The connection of the data carrier can be stopped.

Unreadable data carrier

If a data carrier is switched on and the data cannot be read, the corresponding message appears on the display.
The radio display.

COPIA

If an external Media Player is connected **at the same time** via Bluetooth® and via the USB input with the radio, the Bluetooth® audio connection is automatically separated.

If a connected device is not recognised, remove all connections and reconnect. the devices again.

Do not use any SD card adapters, USB extension cables, or USB-Hubs (USB distribution). USB drivers)!

Read and follow the operating instructions of the external data carrier manufacturer .

Connect external audio source via Bluetooth®.

Connecting an audio source via Bluetooth

In Bluetooth® audio mode, audio files from a Bluetooth® audio source connected via Bluetooth® (e.g. a smartphone) can be played back using the vehicle's speakers (Bluetooth® audio playback).

Requirements

- The external Bluetooth® audio source must support the A2DP-Bluetooth® profile.
- In the **Bluetooth Settings** menu, the function BT audio (A2DP/AVRCP) , must be enabled → p. 223.

Start Bluetooth® audio streaming

- Connect Bluetooth® visibility to the external Bluetooth® audio source (e.g. mobile phone).
- Reduce the base volume on the radio.
- Press the radio button MEDIA .
- Tap on the function button → fig. 153 ① and to select audio BT .
- Tap on the function button Search for device

  to pair an external Blue- tooth® audio source for the first time.
- **O:** select an external Bluetooth® audio source from the list.
- **Or:** Establish a connection via the **Bluetooth settings** menu → p. 223.
- Observe the instructions for further procedures on the display of the device and on the display of the Bluetooth® audio source.

If necessary, playback must still be started manually on the Bluetooth® audio source.

When playback on the Bluetooth® audio source ends, the device remains in Bluetooth® audio operation.

Controlling reproduction

The control of the Bluetooth® audio source via the radio depends on the connected Bluetooth® audio source.

On media players that support the Bluetooth® AVRCP profile, playback can be started or stopped automatically on the Bluetooth® audio source, if it is switched to Bluetooth® audio operation or to another audio source.
In addition, the title or a title change can be displayed via the computer.

Due to the great diversity of Bluetooth® audio sources, it is not possible to guarantee that all the described functions can be executed flawlessly.

To operate the multimedia mode with the Bluetooth® positive device connected, read and respect the
The manufacturer's instructions in the corresponding instructions for use must be followed.

Only use equipment compatible with Bluetooth® technology. To obtain
For more information about the compatibility of Bluetooth® products, please contact a Volkswagen dealer or search for Bluetooth® products on the Volkswagen website.
Internet.

Images

Introduction to the topic

Premises and supported image formats

Image files must be saved on a compatible data carrier (e.g. *CD*, *SD Card* or *USB*) .

COPIA

Supported image formats:
BMP (.bmp) up to 4 megapixels.
GIF (.gif) up to 4 megapixels.
JPEG (.jpg, .jpeg) up to 64 megapixels (non-progressive mode, up to 4 megapixels).
PNG (.png) up to 4 megapixels.

Main image menu



Fig. 158 Main menu images.

In the main menu *Pictures*, image files (e.g. photos) can be displayed individually or as slideshows.

Open the main menu Pictures.

Press the MENU button .

Then tap on the Pictures function button .

Touch the function button → fig. 158 1 to select the desired source from the saved picture files.

Function button: effect	
1	Display of source selection. Only the following can be selected sources in which the supported image formats are stored → p. 201, *Premises and supported image formats*.
/	Rotate the image display 90 degrees to the left or right.
	Restore the display of the image gen.
Selection	Opens the display of the list of
	the image archives.
/	To switch to the previous image or to the next image.
	The playback of slides. The function button switch to .
	The playback of slides is resumed. stivas. The function button changes to .
Config.	Picture settings → p. 202.

Increase, decrease or restart display

To increase or decrease the display of the displayed image:

– Turn the setting button.

– **O:** compress or stretch the displayed image with two fingers on the display.

To restart the display of the displayed image:

– Tap on the function button .

Image configurations

Open the Picture Settings menu.

In the main image menu, tap on the function button Config. .

Function button: effect
Image display : adjust display format. **Auto**: The picture is adjusted to the size of the display (if necessary, the picture is not completely displayed). **Full**: the images are shown in full on the display.
Display time : adjust the display duration of the images during a slide show.
Repeat slideshow : a slideshow of active slide continuously repeats the images.

COPIA

Navigation

Introduction to the topic

The current position of the vehicle is determined by the GPS satellite system (Global Positioning System). Sensors in the vehicle measure the distance travelled. All the measured values are equalised with the detailed map material and in accordance with the stored traffic guidance. With all available data, the radio establishes an ideal route to the journey destination.

A destination or a special destination, e.g. service station or hotel, can be entered as the destination of the trip.

Audible navigation warnings and graphical displays on the navigation equipment and on the combined instrument lead to the destination of the journey.

Depending on the country, some functions of the radio may no longer be selectable on the display above a certain speed. This is not a malfunction of the function, but corresponds to legal

r

equirements.

Navigation guidelines

When the radio cannot receive GPS satellite data (dense foliage, underground garages), navigation will still be possible by means of the vehicle's sensor system.

Navigation warnings cannot be issued if they have been muted.

After the route has been calculated, the first navigation instruction is given. Before turning, 3 navigation instructions are issued, e.g. in the urban cycle "Turn next left", "Turn left after 300 m" and "Turn left".

The distances that are announced depend essentially on the type of road and the speed at which the vehicle is travelling. On a road, for example, navigation instructions are anticipated in relation to urban sections.

On roads with several lanes or branches as well as roundabouts, corresponding navigation instructions are also issued, e.g. "Exit the roundabout at the second exit".

When the destination is reached, a navigation signal is emitted that the "Destination" has been reached.

If the destination cannot be reached with rigour, because it is in a non-digitised area, a navigation indication is given that the "Destination area" has been reached. An additional indication is given about the cardinal point towards which you are driving and the distance to the predefined destination. Navigation continues "off-road".

During **dynamic navigation to the destination**, attention is drawn to the congestion announced in the itinerary. If, due to traffic congestion, the route is recalculated, an additional navigation message is issued.

During the transmission of a navigation message, the corresponding volume can be changed with the sensor fields , up to a defined minimum or maximum value. All other navigation messages are then transmitted with this volume.
lumen.

Limitations on navigation

If the device cannot receive GPS satellite data (dense tree foliage, underground garages), navigation is still possible by means of the vehicle's sensor system.

In regions that have not been digitised or have been incompletely digitised on the data carrier, the Infotainment system also aims to enable a drive to the destination.

In the case of missing or incomplete navigation data, the position of the vehicle may not be accurately determined. This may result in the navigation not being as accurate as it usually is.

Driving through the streets is subject to constant alterations, e.g. new streets, road works, blockages at entrances, alterations of street names and house numbers. Especially in the case of outdated navigational data, errors or mismatches may occur, e.g. in the case of new streets, construction work, blockages at entrances, alterations of street names and house numbers.
The following is a list of the most common reasons for the delay in driving to the destination.

COPIA

Update and use navigation data from an SD card

For the radio, the navigation data currently valid for this device is always required in order to be able to use the functions in their full range. When using an older version of the navigation data, limitations may occur during navigation.

Update navigation data

This data can also be transferred and saved to an SD card compatible with the device by accessing www.volkswagen.com.

Suitable SD cards are available from your Volkswagen dealer.

A description of the procedure is available at www.volkswagen.com.

Afterwards, navigation data must be installed. It is not possible to navigate on the SD card.

Install the navigation data

During the copying process the power must be switched on. Due to the large amount of data and the SD card used, the process can take up to 4 hours.

If the device is switched off, the installation process stops and restarts automatically after the device is switched on again.

Always install navigation data when the vehicle is stationary:

– Switch on the ignition.
– Insert the SD card with the saved navigation data.
– Import stored navigation data:
MENU Version information Upgrade (SD/USB) .
– Follow the instructions on the display.

Once the installation procedure has been completed, remove the SD card [1].

NOTICE

Do not remove the SD card while the navigation data is being installed, as this may damage the navigation data and the SD card!

Volkswagen recommends that the navigation data be updated regularly.

SD card with navigation data cannot be used as storage for other files, the device does not recognise the saved files.

Volkswagen recommends to use only Volkswagen Genuine SD cards for the use of navigation data. The use of other SD cards may cause function limitations.

[1] Speed class of an SD card.

COPIA

Navigation homepage



Fig. 159 Home page: symbols and function areas of the navigation.

Find home page: Legend for MENU .

→ fig. 159:

1. Flexible function button:
   - Enter destination prior to sailing
   - Route menu during navigation My
2. destinations (destination memory)
3. Search by special destination
4. Change map display Operation of audio or
5. media source Repeat navigation messages
6. Access the configuration menu
7.
8. Current map scale.
9. Indication of altitude in metres above sea level.
10. Flexible function button behind the slide manual navigation mapping:
    - Centre the position of the vehicle on the map.
    - Centre the travel destination or the travel route on the map leg
11. Function button for directing the map to the north or direction of the vehicle
12. Additional window

Meaning of function surfaces and symbol

Some symbols and function areas are only visible during active navigation and are not available in all countries. Inactive symbols and function areas are shown in grey.

For execution, touch the symbols and function surfaces:

General symbols:

--:-- Display of the current time, provided it is correctly set.

Display of manually saved destinations and imported vCards.

Viewing saved destinations as favourites .

COPIA

For execution, touch the symbols and function surfaces:

Estimated time of arrival at the destination of the travel.

Display of trip duration. Calculated distance to the journey destination.

Close the window, return to the previous screen.

① Before navigation:

Opens the data entry template of a destination (before the start of navigation).

Function button for toggling the search options.

Alternative routes.

① Functions during navigation:

Route planning based on individual destinations.

Change the route on the map. To do this, move your finger to the desired point on the route and drag it. The navigation continues after confirming the entry of the new route.

Avoid forward traffic congestion. To do this, indicate the expected size of traffic congestion.

Entry of a new destination.

Stop navigation.

② My Destinations (destination memory):

This function button opens a list with various functions.

Save current position as destination.

Search for routes, change or enter a new route.

Destination memory (by drop-down menu).

Access the latest destinations.

Home address. If it does not yet exist, a home address can be assigned. A new entry overwrites the previous home address.

Display of manually saved destinations and imported vCards.

Display of the destinations saved as favourites.

Display of calendar entries with saved address data (postcode).

③ Search by special destination:

For execution, touch the symbols and function surfaces:

Search for a special destination in the proximities. The following categories are available:

Fuel stations/refuelling stations.

Parking.

Restaurants.

④ Change the display:

Change the map display with the following options.

Display general route section on the map.

Display trip destination on the map.

Select 2D or 3D view of the map.

Show and hide the additional window display 9 .

Activate/deactivate automatic/manual day/night view selection.

Show and hide POIs.

⑤ Operation of the audio or media source:

Media operation: starting and stopping the playback and skip to the next previous track.

Radio operation: change tuning between memorised or tuned stations.

zable.

⑥ Voice message:

Change the volume of the voice message.

Repeat the last navigation message.

Switch navigation messages to mute.

touch or *touch and move* the progress bar to change the volume of the navigator's voice messages.

⑦ Configurations:

Open the configuration menu.

⑧ Change the map scale:

Indication of the scale of the map.

COPIA

For execution, touch the symbols and function surfaces:

Manual zoom to zoom out of the map.

Manual zoom for ma approach
pa.

The map is zoomed in for a short time. After a few seconds, the map is automatically re-presented for the last selected location.

Automatic scaling. If the function is activated
goes, the blue symbol is displayed. The symbol changes from to .

⑨ Flexible function button:
Indication of altitude in metres above sea level.

⑩ Flexible function button:
Centre the position of the vehicle on the road.
mo of the map. Only appears when the map was moved with the finger.

Centre the destination or route on the map. The
function button is displayed only when you select *show trip destination on the map* and display *the route on the map*. .

⑪ Change the map display:
Orient the map towards the march or towards the north.

⑫ Additional window
.

Destination data entry



Fig. 160 Insertion mask of the destination.

Access the input mask:
MENU . .

Legend for → fig. 160:
① Access the list for the entry of the
② destination. Destination entry field.
③
Cursor to delete the characters entered in 2 .
④ Access the list of the most recent destinations.
⑤ Virtual keyboard.

An alternative way to register the destination is by tapping on the map → p. 207.

Texts can be used for navigation only when they are stored as target data in the navigation data.

Define settings, destination entry and other changes for navigation only when the vehicle is stationary.

A search for a specific destination can be made on the basis of any text. During data entry, the system makes suggestions for possible destinations.

Enter the destination as accurately as possible. If you enter incorrectly, navigation will not be possible.
or, it will lead you to the wrong destination.

List of destination entry options

Access list of options: MENU . .

The list offers the following options for destination entry:

– Enter special destinations or address → p. 207.
– Enter the address step by step.
– Search by POI online.
– Search for special destinations along the route.
– Select the destination on the map.

COPIA

Registration of the destination directly from the map



Fig. 161 Touch the desired point on the map for direct registration of the destination.

Access the map: MENU . ▢

– The sector of the map with your location is displayed. Move the map by dragging it with your finger until you can select the desired destination.

Destination registration directly via the map is not possible for all locations within the country. According to the actuality of the data, the number of possible destinations varies.

The navigation map for your country contains active areas in several places that are suitable for data entry directly from the map. To do this, tap with your finger on the desired location on the map, and if there is active data for this location, an additional window will open for the location you have tapped → fig. 161 1 .

Select the function in the additional window → fig. 161 1:
Divide the map representation and opens an additional window with more functions and information.
It splits the map display and opens an additional window with more functions and information about the selected destinations.
Start driving to destination.
Search in the vicinity.
Enter as an intermediate destination (so- (only with navigation activated).

Route plan

In the route plan, several intermediate destinations can be defined in succession. A route in which several intermediate destinations are visited is designated as a "Journey".

The "starting point" of a route is always the position of the vehicle, set by the device. The "Trip Destination" designates the end point of a route. Intermediate destinations' are visited before the trip destination.

You can also change the position of an intermediate destination in the list.

Access the route plan with navigation active: MENU ▢ ▢ ROUTE DETAILS .

Symbol and meaning:
Starting point of the route.
Intermediate destination of a route. With more than one intermediate destination apa- The route sequence of the route is given a small number that corresponds to its sequence in the route.
Move the intermediate destination. Touch the symbol in the list, hold the contact and drag.
Destination of the journey. End point of the route.

Symbols displayed after touching a destination:
Delete destination.
Start driving directly to the destination, to the selected destination. The destinations before the selected destination are abandoned.
Open detail view for the respective destination.

COPIA

Alternative routes



Fig. 162 Overview window for alternative routes.

In the settings menu the display of alternative routes must be activated.

When alternative routes are activated, the window adds: Alternative routes are displayed after the guided navigation starts.

In the additional window, the possible toll rates and the use of tunnels and motorways are shown next to the alternative routes.

Legend for → fig. 162:

1. Economic route. Route calculation considering economic aspects (indicated in light blue).
2. Fastest route. Calculation of the fastest route to the destination, even if this requires detours (indicated in red).
3. Shortest route: calculation of the shortest route to the destination, even if this requires a longer travel time (indicated in orange).
4. Information field with data for all routes.

Additional window



Fig. 163 Schematic representation: additional window

The additional window can be displayed or hidden via the function button. → table on p. 209 The information displayed depends on the function selected in the drop-down menu:

Function and significance:
Audio
Compass: indication of the direction of locomotion based on North-South orientation.
Manoeuvre: indication of driving manoeuvre.
Indication of the current position:
Latitude.
Length.
Indication of altitude in metres above sea level.
Number of satellites whose signals are are currently receiving, for example, 3 of 16
Close additional window.

COPY

Navigation settings

Open the Navigation Settings menu.

In the main *Navigation* menu, touch the function button Config. .

Touch the function button for the area in which the settings are to be made. When closing a menu, the alterations are automatically assumed.

Function button: effect
Trip options : make trip calculation settings.
Suggest 3 alternative routes: After starting the journey to the destination, 3 alternative routes will be suggested.
Journey : selection of the type of journey.
Economic: calculation of the journey taking into account the economic aspect.
Fast : fast journey to the destination.
Short: journey to the destination, even if a longer travel time is necessary.
Frequent trips: Frequent trips in the additional window are activated when navigation is not active.
Dynamic route : dynamic driving to destination with traffic is active.
Avoid motorways: where possible, motorways are not considered in the calculation of the journey.
Avoid ferries and trains: whenever possible, ferries and trains for vehicles are not considered in the calculation of the journey.
Avoid tolls: whenever possible, roads with tolls are not considered in the calculation of the journey.
Avoid tunnels : where possible, tunnels are not considered in the route calculation.
Avoid routes with toll stamps: Whenever possible, roads requiring toll stamps are not considered in the calculation of the route.
Show available toll stamps :
Attention to the trailer : mark available bullets on the list
(Avoiding roads with toll stamps should be
active).
In the path calculation, tracks are considered that require vignettes, for which a vignette was marked as available.
Map : make adjustments to the representation of the map.
Show Traffic Sign Recognition System displays the traffic signs stored in the navigation data during a drive to the destination for the route being travelled.
Stripe recommendation: During a drive to destination, an additional indication with the recommended stripe is displayed when driving and swerving for multi-stripe streets. Only if information on the current driven area is stored in the database.
Display favourites : destinations saved in favourites are displayed on the map (orange symbol).
Display POIs : the selected POI categories and marks are displayed on the map.
Select category for special destinations : selection of special destination categories, which are to be displayed on the map.
Show logos for special destinations : display of brand logos for selected special destination categories (e.g. display of brand logos at petrol stations).
Manage memory : make adjustments to the saved destinations.
Sort contacts : select the sort order of the contacts in the phone book with the stored address data (postal address).
Define home address : assign or edit home address, see also.
Delete my POIs : delete the saved POIs from the POI memory.
Update my POIs (SD / USB) : update the saved POIs.
Import destinations (SD / USB) : import destinations with the help of a data carrier.

COPIA

Function button: effect
Delete user data : delete saved destinations (e.g. **Last Destinations**, **Destination Memory** and etc.).
Navigation instructions : make settings for navigation announcements.
Volume : set the volume of the sound conduction recommendations.
Entertainment reduction (info nav.) :
No instructions on the phone call : during a phone call, no audible driving instructions are generated.
Indication: My POIs : When is approaching one of the stored POIs with an activated beep sound, a beep sound is emitted.
Maximum speeds : display of any time limit of the current driving country.
Charging options : make settings for charging options.
Select preferred service station : the selected service station brand is displayed as preferred service station in the POI search.
Refuelling alert : The refuelling alert is activated. If the fuel tank is used up to the reserve, an orientation is generated so that a service station can be found.
Version information : version information of the saved navigation data.
Update : update the version of the navigation data, if updates are available.
Advanced settings : make extended navigation settings.
Time indication : displays during a drive to the destination.
Arrival time : indicates the estimated time of arrival at a travel destination.
Travel time : the expected travel time to a travel destination is indicated.
Status line : shows during a con- duction to the destination.
Destination : the calculated distance to the destination of the trip is displayed.

Function button: effect
Next stop : the calculated distance to the next intermediate destination is displayed.
Indication: border crossed: shows the time limit, for each country, when crossing country borders.
Demo mode : if the Demo mode is active, a virtual drive to the entered destination can be started after starting a driving to destination.

Voice command

Introduction to the topic

The functions in the navigation[1], telephone, radio and media areas can be accessed by speaking the command (voice commands).

During the voice command, spoken instructions are given as an aid to operation. These can be given in long or short dialogues → p. 213.

Available languages

A voice command is available for most of the languages configurable on the radio.

If a voice command is not available for a configurable language, an indication appears on the display when activation is experienced.

The voice command must be operated in the language that is configured for the radio.

- In the **System settings** menu, set the desired language → p. 224.

A voice command is not possible during a phone call. A call received da interrupts the voice command.

Voice command guidance

In order for the voice command to work ideally, please observe the following instructions :

[1] It depends on the team and the country.

COPIA

– Avoid external and parallel noises (e.g. conversations in the vehicle). Keep all windows, doors and sunroof closed.
– **Do not** direct the air flow from the deflectors in the direction of the roof lining.
– The voice commands should only be pronounced when the audio signals and the spoken instructions are finished and the symbol
→ fig. 164 1 appears on the display.
– If possible, speak clearly and at normal speed. The system cannot recognise incomprehensible words and numbers or words whose syllables have been *slurred*.
– Speak at a normal volume without much emphasis or long pauses in diction. **No** mumbling, whispering, shouting, over-articulation or over-emphasis.
– Speak a little louder at higher speeds.
– Telephone numbers can be pronounced as individual digits or in blocks of numbers. 1-999.
– The voice command adapts to the person speaking after a few commands,

and recognises voice commands better.

Voice command operation



Fig. 164 Voice command: display of help menu and spoken items.

Initiate voice command

– To activate the voice command, press lige- The radio button on the VOICE or the multi-function steering wheel can be used to operate the radio.

The voice command is activated by an increasing acoustic warning.

An auxiliary menu is displayed with the most important voice commands of the active areas (e.g. navigation) → fig. 164 A . The auxiliary menu display can be switched on and off in the **Voice command settings** menu.
→ p. 213.

Pronouncing the voice command

The voice commands should only be pronounced when the audible signals and spoken instructions are finished and the symbol → fig. 164 1 appears on the display.

– Say the desired voice command (e.g. "*Start introduction*"), to hear the voice command introduction. See also → p. 213, *Voice command help*.
– Spoken guidance is given through the voice dialogue that is being followed.
– When an action is completed, the voice command closes with an acoustic warning with decreasing volume.
– To interrupt a spoken voice command guidance and speak the next voice command directly, lightly press the Multifunctional VOICE or the in the vo- radio key on the front.

The list views are listed during voice command. The numbers are indicated on the left on the function button. Access the desired entry, e.g. digit 5, via the voice command "*line 5*".

The voice command "*Back*" always returns to the previous dialogue step.

Close voice command

To close the voice command manually, lightly press and hold, or press in sequence, the VOICE radio key or the on the multifunction steering wheel until an acoustic warning sounds with decreasing volume.

The voice command is closed under the following conditions:

– By tapping on a function button.
– Pressing a key on the VOICE radio
– Activation of Park Pilot.
– When receiving a phone call.
– By pressing the key .

SOPIA

Introduction to voice command

The first time you operate it, it is necessary to read the auxiliary menus. It is recommended to do this when the vehicle is parked. In addition to the top help menu, which shows the most important voice commands for all areas, there is a detailed menu for each area and each function. These menus can be searched by clicking on the corresponding item.

Voice command help

In addition to the help menus, you can also search for audio help.

Press the radio button lightly VOICE or the button button on the multifunction steering wheel.

Speak one of the following voice commands in the language set on the radio.

Language	Voice command
German	Hilfe
English	Help
English	Help
French	Aide
Portuguese	Help
Italian	Aiuto
Czech	Nápověda
Dutch	Help
Russian	Справка
Swedish	Hjälp
Turkish	Yardım
Polish	Pomoc
Chinese	帮助

voice command settings

Open the Voice Command Settings menu

Press the MENU button or the radio.

Touch the Settings function button. Then touch the function button Voice command .

Function button: effect
Show commands (Infotainment System): a auxiliary menu with commands from the current operating area on the display when accessing the voice command.
Display commands (Combined instrument) : it s exhi- An auxiliary menu with commands of the combined instrument is shown on the display when accessing the voice command.
Initial tone of the voice command: when the coman- If the voice command is activated, an acoustic warning sounds with increasing volume. Touch to deactivate the acoustic warning.
Final tone of the voice command: when the command If the voice message is deactivated, an acoustic warning sounds with decreasing volume. Touch to deactivate the acoustic warning.
Initial tone of the voice command: when the coman- If the voice command is activated, an acoustic warning sounds with increasing volume. Touch to deactivate the acoustic warning.
Final tone of the voice command: when the command If the voice message is deactivated, an acoustic warning sounds with decreasing volume. Touch to deactivate the acoustic warning.

The volume of the spoken guidance of the voice command can be adjusted in the me- **Sound settings** → p. 225 or during a spoken guidance via the sound control → p. 225 or during a spoken guidance via the sound control → p. 225. volume .

Telephone

Introduction to the topic

The phone functions described below can be controlled by the equipment if an activated mobile phone is synchronised and connected.

The prerequisite for a connection between a mobile phone and the device is that the mobile phone supports the **Bluetooth® function**.

If no telephone is connected to the equipment, the telephone control is not available.

Observe the guidelines for using a mobile phone in the vehicle without a connection to the external aerial → p. 319.

COPY

WARNING

while travelling can distract attention from traffic and lead to accidents.

- Always drive responsibly and pay the utmost attention to traffic.
- Select the sound volume settings so that sound signals (e.g. sirens of emergency services) can always be heard.
- In regions with no or poor mobile network service and, depending on the circumstances, in tunnels, garages and subways, it may not be possible to make calls or telephone conversations may be interrupted, even in the case of emergency calls!

An unsecured or improperly secured mobile phone can be thrown from inside the vehicle by a sudden steering or steering manoeuvre, as well as in an accident, and cause serious injury.

- Secure mobile phone, other equipment and phone accessories, e.g. phone holders, notepads, and keep them safely stowed while driving and out of the airbag expansion areas.

WARNING

When using a mobile phone or radio equipment without a connection to an external antenna, the electromagnetic radiation limits in the vehicle may be exceeded and thus the health of the driver and passengers may be affected. This also applies to an improperly installed external antenna.

- Maintain a minimum distance of 20 cm between mobile phone antennas and an active medical implant, e.g. a cardiac pacemaker, as mobile phones may adversely affect the functioning of active medical implants.
- Do not carry a ready-to-use mobile phone in the immediate vicinity or directly above an active medical implant, e.g. in a shirt pocket.
- In case of suspected interference of the mobile phone with an active medical implant or other medical device, switch off the mobile phone immediately.

WARNING

An open armrest can restrict the freedom of movement of the driver's arms and thus cause accidents and serious injuries.

- Always keep the armrest closed when driving.

NOTICE

High speeds, weather conditions and poor road conditions, as well as the quality of the network, can impair an in-vehicle phone call

General information

Please note⚠ and⓵ at the beginning of this chapter on page 214.

The displays of the phone's menu display depend on the range of functions of the mobile phone used. There may be differences.

Observe the guidelines for using a mobile phone in the vehicle without a connection to the external aerial → p. 319.

Only use Bluetooth® -compatible equipment. Information on Bluetooth® compatible products can be obtained from a Volkswagen Dealer or via the Internet.

Observe the operating instructions of the mobile phone and the accessory provider.

In "transmit blocking areas", reception failure and call interruption may occur.

Most electronic equipment is shielded against HF (high frequency) signals. However, in rare cases, electronic equipment may not be shielded against HF signals from the telephone control. Damage may occur.

In some countries there may be restrictions on the use of Bluetooth® equipment. Information can be obtained from local bodies.

COPIA

By connecting the phone control to a computer via Bluetooth®, read the respective instruction manual for detailed safety information. Use only compatible products.
bles with Bluetooth®.

Places with special indications

Please note ⚠ and ⓘ at the beginning of this chapter on page 214.

Switch off the mobile phone and mobile phone preparation in potentially explosive atmospheres. These locations are usually, but not always clearly identified.
→ ⚠ in *Introduction to the topic* on p. 214. These are places of this type, for example:

- The vicinity of pipelines and tanks, in which chemicals are contained.
- Lower decks on ships and rafts.
- The vicinity of vehicles running on liquid gas (e.g. propane or bu- tane).
- Places where chemicals or particles such as flour, dust or metal dust are present in the atmosphere.
- Any other place where the vehicle's engine must be switched off.

⚠

Switch off the mobile phone in potentially

ⓘ *NOTICE*

In environments with special indications and where the use of mobile phones is prohibited, the phone must always be switched off. The radiation emitted by a switched-on mobile phone may cause interference with medical equipment and equipment that is not in use. This can lead to malfunctions or damage to equipment.

Bluetooth®

Note ⚠ and ⓘ at the beginning of this chapter on page 214.

Bluetooth®

Bluetooth® technology is used to connect a mobile phone to the vehicle's phone control. To use the phone control with a Bluetooth® mobile phone, a single pairing process is required.

Some mobile phones with Bluetooth® are known and connect automatically when the ignition is switched on, if there was already a connection. At the same time, the mobile phone itself as well as the Bluetooth® in the mobile phone must be switched on and all active Bluetooth® connections to other devices must be disconnected. Under certain conditions, further insertions must be made in the mobile phone.

Bluetooth® radio communication is free of charge.

Bluetooth® is a registered trademark of Bluetooth® SIG, Inc.

Bluetooth® Profiles

If a mobile phone is connected to the phone controller, data can be exchanged via the following Bluetooth® profiles.

The availability of Bluetooth® profiles depends on the vehicle and mobile phone version.

Bluetooth® profile: clarification	
HFP	**Hands-Free-Profile** If a mobile phone is connected via HFP with the telephone control, the call can be made wirelessly via the loudspeaker device.
MAP	**Message-Access-Profile**
PBAP	**Phonebook Access Profile** PBAP allows access to the phonebook of a connected mobile phone.
A2DP	**Advanced Audio Distribution Profile** Profile for transferring audio signals in stereo quality (stereo playback). music).

COPY

Bluetooth® profile: clarification	
	Audio Video Remote Control Profile
AVRCP	Profile for the display of band information and control of playback on mobile equipment.

Synchronising and connecting the mobile phone to the radio

Note⚠ and(!) at the beginning of this chapter on page 214.

Up to **2** Blue- tooth® devices can be connected to the system at the same time.

In order to be able to operate the mobile phone via the radio, the mobile phone must be synchronised with the radio **once.**

The linkage must be made with the vehicle stationary.

Premises

– The ignition is switched on.
– If necessary, disconnect the connected headset from the mobile phone.
– The **Bluetooth®** function must be active and visible on the phone and the device.
– The **key lock** on the mobile phone must be deactivated.

Observe the instruction manual of the mobile phone.

During the pairing process, it is necessary to make entries on the keypad of the mobile phone. The mobile phone must be prepared for this.

Initiate mobile phone pairing

– Press the PHONE key.
– Touch the Find Phone function button .

When the process is closed, the names of the Bluetooth® devices found are shown on the display.

– Access the mobile phone in the list of Bluetooth® devices found.

This connects the radio and the mobile phone. To complete the connection of the two devices, it may be necessary to make further entries on the mobile phone and the radio.

– If applicable, confirm the pairing on the mobile phone.

Depending on the mobile phone:

– Providing via mobile phone the
The PIN code is shown on the display and with the sign.

OR:

– Compare the PIN code displayed on the display with the PIN code displayed on the phone.
mobile phone. If it matches, it must be confirmed on **both** devices.

After successful pairing, the *PHONE* main menu and the phonebook are displayed and the call and SMS lists stored in the mobile phone are automatically loaded. If necessary, the mobile phone must be confirmed.

The duration of the charging process depends on the amount of data stored in the mobile phone. After the charging process is completed, the radio data will be available.

Pairing and connecting mobile phones

Multiple mobile phones can be paired to the radio, although only up to **2** handsets can be connected to the device at the same time.

When the device is switched on, a connection is automatically made to the last connected mobile phones. If it is not possible to establish a connection with these mobile phones, the phone control automatically attempts to make a connection with the next mobile phone in the list of paired devices.

The **maximum** range of a Bluetooth® connection is approximately **10 metres (11 yards)**. Existing Bluetooth® connections are interrupted if this distance is exceeded. The connection is **automatically** re-established as soon as the device is within the Bluetooth® range.

For further information on the pairing and connection of mobile phones, please contact Ask a Volkswagen Dealer.

COPIA

Disconnecting p h o n e control

Please note ⚠ and ⓘ at the beginning of this chapter on page 214.

– Close the active conversation.
– Switch off the ignition.
– Remove the vehicle key from the ignition lock.
– Switch off the mobile phone.

If the vehicle key is still in the ignition after the ignition has been switched off, the telephone control is **not** switched off. Only after the switch-off time has elapsed (approx. 15 minutes, factory setting), the telephone control is switched off.

If a mobile phone was connected with the control of the phone, after it is
If you switch off the telephone control, the transmission unit of the mobile phone remains switched on. The mobile phone may have to be switched off.

Phone main menu

Please note ⚠ and ⓘ at the beginning of this chapter on page 214.



Fig. 165 PHONE main menu.



Fig. 166 Detailed calls.

Open the PHONE main menu

Press the PHONE key.

Function areas in the PHONE main menu

Function button: effect	
①	Priority mobile phone[a] and connected. Touch to connect or pair another or a new mobile phone.
②[b]	Associated mobile phone[a] and connected. Touch to change priority. The associated mobile phone becomes priority and vice versa.
③	Favourites (speed-dial keys) that can be used with a touch → p. 222.
Dial nr.	Open a numeric keypad to enter a phone number → p. 219.
Contacts	Open phone contacts coupled mobile → p. 220.
Calls	Open the call list of the paired mobile phone → p. 221.
Config.	Open **Phone settings** menu → p. 223.
☐	Touch to **accept** a call.
☐	Touch to **end** a call.

OPEL

Function button: effect	
	Or: touch to **reject** an incoming call.
☐	Touch to mute the ringtone during a call or to unmute the ringtone. Touch to mute the ringtone during a call or to unmute the ringtone.

a) More information on priority or associated mobile phones and user profile → p. 224.

(b) Only displayed on the paired and connected mobile phone.

Displays and symbols of the control of phone

Indication: meaning	
◯ A	Name of the operator of the mobile communication network (operator) in the which the mobile phone is registered aco- plado.
◯ B	Display of the saved phone number or name. If a picture is saved for a contact, it can be displayed → p. 223. When a call is received, the name of the mobile phone to which the call was made (private or partner mobile phone).
	Charging level of the attached mobile phone.
	Signal strength of the station mobile communication transmission available at the moment

During a phone call



Fig. 167 During a phone call.

Once communication with a phone number is established, the *PHONE* main menu will switch to the *Phone Call* display. → fig. 167.

Display and function surfaces: action and effect	
☐	Touch to disconnect the microphone from the mobile phone preparation during a call (the function button changes to ☐).
Ⓐ ☐	Touch to connect the microphone of the mobile phone preparation during a call (the function button changes to ☐).
a)	Touch to make the call via the mobile phone preparation.
Ⓑ	Display of the saved phone number or name. If a picture is saved for a contact, it can be displayed → p. 223. When a call is received, the name of the mobile phone to which the call was made (priority or partner mobile phone) is displayed. Touch to open the contact detail view.
☐	Touch to put a call on hold.

COPIA

Display and function surfaces: action and effect	
	While on a call, audio transmission is interrupted. Calls in the vehicle are not transmitted.
	Touch to end a call.

a) The function button is only displayed when the call is made by the mobile phone.

Functions during a phone call

Possible functions	
Muting the mobile phone preparation microphone	Tap on the function button . The microphone of the mobile phone preparation is muted (the function button changes to).
Reconnecting the microphone of the preparation	Tap on the function button . The preparation microphone is connected to the mobile phone (the function button goes to).
To carry out the la- non-mobile mobile phone call	Tap on the function button Config. and then in Speaker . The loudspeaker function is deactivated and the call continues on the mobile phone (the function button switches to).
Re-establish the telephone call via the mobile phone set-up	Tap on the function button . **Or:** tap on the function button Config. and then on Speaker . The loudspeaker function is activated and the call is continued by the mobile phone preparation (the function button cambia to).

Set phone number menu

Please note⚠ and ⓘ at the beginning of this chapter on page 214.



Fig. 168 Set phone number menu.

Open the Set Phone Number menu

Tap on the function button Select no. pa- To access the **Set Phone Number** menu.

Possible functions	
SOS **Service calla**)	Tap on the function button to set up a call. service.
Call for in- formationa)	Tap on the function button to get help with the information line. The Volkswagen Dealer network is available with its mobile service units.
Call for in- formationa)	Tap on the function button for information about the Volkswagen brand and value-added services, transit and travel.
Call voicemail	Tap on the function button Mailbox to establish the connection. **Or:** tap on the function button for approx. 2 seconds to establish the connection. If a voicemail phone number has not yet been saved, enter the phone number of the voicemail number. no and confirm with OK .

COPY

Possible functions	
	A telephone number already can be changed in the menu **User profile settings** → p. 224.
[+0../] [b] Function of the code digo	The code function allows you to pre-set a number by selecting the phone number you have stored or saved, e.g. to call from another profile. SIM (Dual/TwinBill) or to perform the service and control command in the mobile phone network (e.g. deletion of the phone number). Enter phone number without code and tap on the function button +0../[.] In the menu **User profile settings** → p. 224, the saved code is automatically placed before the entered phone number and establishes a connection.
[a] Voice command	Tap on the function button to set with a number of numbers. ro telephone command via voice co- command.
Enter telephone number	Enter phone number via the keyboard. Tap on the function button to [ ] establish communication. cation.
Select con- tact of the list	Enter the initial letter of the con- tact sought by the keyboard. In the contact list, you will see shows a possible entry. Search in the contact list and tap on the desired contact to establish a connection.

Possible functions	
Enter country code	In the introduction of a code The country code, unlike the first two numbers (e.g. "**00**"), can be followed by the "**+**" symbol. Touch the function button for [0] approximately 2 seconds. seconds to enter the **+** character.

[a] Depends on the team and the country.

[b] The function button is only visible when the code function in the **Settings** menu **of the user profile** is set to "On". active → p. 224.

Contacts menu (phone book)

Please note ⚠ and ⓘ at the beginning of this chapter on page 214.

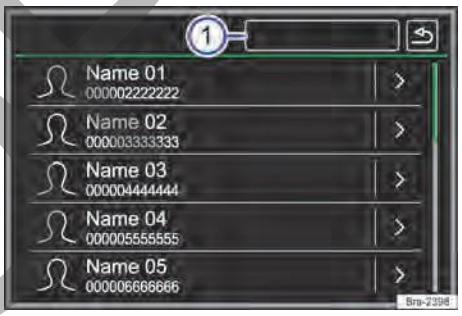


Fig. 169 Contacts menu (phone book).



Fig. 170 Search mask.

COPIA

After the first synchronisation, it may take a few minutes for the device to have the contact data [1] from the mobile phone available, depending on the volume of data to be transmitted, the process may take up to about one hour. If this is the case, the transmission must be confirmed on the mobile phone.

Contacts can also be accessed during an ongoing call.

If a picture is saved for a contact, it may be displayed in the list next to the entry → p. 223.

Open the Contacts menu

Touch the function button to Contacts for enter the **Contacts** menu.

Possible functions	
Select with - tact of the list	Search in the list and tap on the desired contact to establish a connection. **OR:** if several are stored phone numbers for a contact , tap first on the contact and then on the desired phone number to establish a connection.
Search for contact by search mask.	Press the function button Search → fig. 169 (1) to open the search mask. Put the desired names in the search mask → Each time a symbol is inserted, a contact is displayed in the input field. On the right, next to the insertion field, the appropriate number of events is displayed. Touch the function button to switch to the list display. Search in the list and tap on the desired contact to establish a connection.
Open the detail display of a contact	Tap on the function button > → fig. 169 next to the entry in the touch list.
	In the detailed display, all telephone numbers and, if applicable, the address data saved for this contact are shown.
[a]Reading the name of the con- tact	In the detailed display, tap on the function button)) The name of the contact is pronounced by voice command.
Calling the con- tact	In the detailed display, tap on the desired phone number to establish a connection.
[a]Initiate a drive to the cation to the destination of the contact	If complete address data is stored for the contact address, you can destination of the contact. In the detailed display, tap on the function button to start driving to destinati on.

[a] Depends on the team and the country.

The availability of contacts depends on the mobile phone used

Calls menu (call lists)

Please note⚠ and ⓘ at the beginning of this chapter on page 214.



Fig. 171 Calls menu (call lists).

[1] Depending on the model, only contacts from the phone memory are loaded.

COPY

When a phone number is saved as a contact, the saved name will be displayed instead of the number in the call list.

If a picture is saved for a contact, it can be displayed in the call list next to name → p. 223.

Open the Calls menu

Touch the function button Calls for in- to go to the **Calls** menu.

Touch the function button ▢ → fig. 171 (1).

Select the desired frequency band: All , Lost , Marked o Attended .

Indication: meaning
Missed : displays phone numbers of missed and unanswered calls.
Numbers dialled : shows numbers dialled : shows numbers dialled : shows numbers dialled : shows numbers dialled : shows numbers dialled : shows numbers dialled : shows numbers dialled
The following are the main features of the mobile phone and the team's telephone control.
Attended : shows numbers attended
The mobile phone and the telephone control of the equipment.
+0../ The saved code is automatically placed in front of the phone number and a connection is established. See also → p. 219, *Set phone number menu*.
Open the detail display of a contact.
> In the detail display, all phone numbers and, if applicable, the saved address data for this contact are displayed.
The phone number is assumed in the *Set phone number* menu.
→ p. 219.

The availability of call lists depends on the mobile phone used

Favourites (speed dial keys)

Please note ⚠ and ⓘ at the beginning of this chapter on page 214.



Fig. 172 PHONE main menu.

Favourites (speed dial keys) → fig. 172 (1) can be occupied with an input from the contact list.

If a picture is saved for a contact, it can be displayed on the respective key → p. 224.

All favourites must be assigned manually and then attributed to a user profile.

Favourites functions

Possible functions	
Add bookmark	In the *PHONE* main menu, tap on the **free** function button. Tap on the function button Search to select a contact. Select the desired contact from the list. If more phone numbers are stored for the desired contact, select the desired number.
Edit bookmark	In the *PHONE* main menu, press and hold the Favourite until the contact list opens. Select the desired contact from the list. If more phone numbers are stored for the desired contact, select the desired number

COPIA

Possible functions	
Delete bookmark	A bookmark can be deleted in the **Settings** menu **of the user's profile** under **Manage bookmarks.** → p. 224.
Establishing a connection with a favourite	In the *PHONE* main menu, tap on the function button of the respective **assigned** favourite to establish the connection to the phone number stored there.

Contacts saved as favourites do not are automatically updated. If a contact stored in the mobile phone is altered as a favourite, the function button must be assigned to it.
again.

Phone settings

Please note⚠ and ⓘ at the beginning of this chapter on page 214.

Open the Phone Settings menu

In the *PHONE* main menu, touch the function button Config. .

Touch the function button for the area in which the settings are to be made. When closing a menu, the alterations are automatically assumed.

Function button: effect
Loudspeaker [a]: The loudspeaker function is activated. Touch the function button during a phone call to make the call on the mobile phone.
Select phone : select Bluetooth equipment ® from the list, to connect it to the equipment. Search for phone : touch to connect a new Bluetooth® device.
Bluetooth : opens the **Bluetooth Settings** menu → p. 223.
User profile : Opens the **User profile settings** menu → p. 224.

[a] The function areas are only active during the following periods a phone call.

Bluetooth® settings

Please note⚠ and ⓘ at the beginning of this chapter on page 214.

Open the Bluetooth Settings menu

In the *PHONE* main menu, touch the function button Config. .

Or: press the MENU key.

Touch the Settings function button. Then tap on the Bluetooth function button.

Touch the function button for the area in which the settings are to be made. When closing a menu, the alterations are automatically assumed.

Function button: effect
Bluetooth : touch to disconnect Bluetooth ®. All established connections are disconnected.
Visibility : switch Bluetooth® visibility on and off. Visible : Bluetooth® visibility is activated. Hidden : Bluetooth® visibility is de-activated. Bluetooth® visibility must be switched on for external pairing of a Bluetooth® device with the device.
Name : Displays or alters the device name. This name is displayed on other Bluetooth® devices in the Bluetooth® settings.
Paired device : Displays the paired device. Disconnection and connection of individual Blue- tooth® devices and Bluetooth® profiles.
Search for devices : Search for visible connected Bluetooth® devices within range of the device. The **maximum** range is approximately **10 metres**.
Audio BT (A2DP/AVRCP) : if an external audio source is to be connected to the device via Blue- tooth®, this function must be active .

SOPIA

User profile settings

Note⚠ and ⓘ at the beginning of this chapter on page 214.

Open the User Profile Settings menu

In the *PHONE* main menu, touch the function button Config. .

Then tap on the function button User profile .

Touch the function button for the area in which the settings are to be made. When closing a menu, the alterations are automatically assumed.

Function button: effect
Manage favourites : edit favourites → p. 222.
Exclude all : all favourites are excluded.
Free function button: tap to save a contact from the contact list as a favourite.
Busy function button: touch to delete stored numbers.
Mailbox No. : enter or alter the voice mailbox number.
Sort by : set the sort order of the contacts (**Surname** or **First name**).
Import contacts : touch to import the phonebook of the connected phone or to update the already imported phonebook.
Reminder: don't forget your mobile phone : if there is a Bluetooth® connection to a mobile phone, the message "**Don't forget your mobile phone**" is generated when the ignition is switched off.
Show pictures for contacts [a]: if a picture is saved for a contact, can be displayed in call lists, in the phone book and as a favourite.

[a] Depends on the mobile phone used.

Configurations

Introduction to the topic

Configuration options vary by country and equipment, and depending on the vehicle version.

System configurations

Open the System Settings menu

Press the MENU key and then touch the Settings function button.

Touch the function button for the area in which the settings are to be made. When closing a menu, the alterations are automatically assumed.

Function button: effect
Display: make display settings.
Switch off display (within 10 s): if the function is- is active and the radio is not operating, the The display switches off automatically after 10 seconds. Touching the display or pressing a key on the radio switches the display on again.
Brightness level : select the brightness level of the display.
Touchscreen sound : The confirmation sound when touching a function button on the display is active.
Menu button tone : the confirmation sound when touching a button on the function button on the display is active.
Display tone sensor : the approach sensors are activated.
Display time in standby mode : in standby mode, the current time is shown on the display.
Time and date : make time and date settings.
Reference source : select time source (GPS or manual).
GPS: The time and date can be selected using the Time zone function button. The time and date function surfaces are deactivated for insertion. manual operation.

COPIA

Function button: effect
Manual : The time and date can be entered manually using the time and date function button.
Time: set current time manually.
Daylight saving time : automatically adjust the time.
Time zone : select the desired time zone.
Time format : define the format for the time display (12 or 24 hours).
Date : set the current date.
Date format : select date display format (**DD.MM.YY**, **YY-MM-DD** or **MM-DD-YY**).
Language/Lang. Language/Lang. : select the desired language for text or voice output.
Additional keyboard languages [a]: select additional keyboard language.
Units : define units for display in the vehicle. **Distance**, **Speed**, **Temperature**, **Volume**, **Consumption** and **Pressure**.
Data transmission to mobile devices [a] Settings for radio control via Apps on mobile end devices (e.g. track change on the mobile end devices)
the media operation).
Activate data transmission to VW applications : the The application protocol interface is activated on mobile end devices. Deactivating this function prevents further settings.
Command by apps
Disable : actions are **not** performed through an application.
Confirm : Actions performed through an application need to be confirmed before being executed.
Authorise : actions are performed through an application **without** further confirmation.
Voice command [a]: make voice command settings → p. 211.
Safely remove : prepare the desired data carrier from the system. The function button is deactive after successful removal of the data carrier from the system.
Factory settings : the return to the delivery condition **clears** according to the selection made **Inputs and settings made**.

Function button: effect
Bluetooth : opens the **Bluetooth Settings** menu → p. 223.
System information : display of system information (device number, hardware and software status).
Update software [a]: update the software edition. **Do not** remove the SD card while the software version is being installed.
Copyright: copyright information.

[a] Depends on the team and the country.

WARNING

Driver distraction can lead to accidents and injuries.

- Never make adjustments while driving.

For the radio to work perfectly, it is important that the date and time are set correctly.
rrectly fitted to the vehicle.

Configure sound and volume settings

Open the Volume Settings menu

Press the function key MENU and then select Sound .

Touch the function button for the area in which the settings are to be made. When closing a menu, the alterations are automatically assumed.

Function button: effect
Volume : make volume adjustments.
Navigation instructions [a]: adjusting the volume of reproduction of the sound conduction recommendations.
Voice command [a]: set re-production volume of the voice command.
Maximum ignition volume : set maximum initial volume.
Volume Adaptation (GALA): Set the intention- sity of the volume adjustment in relation to the speed. The audio volume automatically increases as the speed increases.
Entertainment reduction (parking) : set the playback volume of the announcements when parking.

COPIA

Function button: effect
Entertainment reduction (nav. info.) : set playback volume of navigation system warnings.
Bass - Mid - Treble : adjust sound characteristic.
Balance - Attenuator : adjust the equalisation of the sound. The grid grid shows the current balance point of the sound inside the vehicle. To alter the sound equalisation, touch the desired position on the in-vehicle display or use the arrow keys for step alteration. To focus the sound equalisation on the vehicle interior display, touch the function button between the arrows.
Touchscreen sound : the confirmation sound when touching a function button on the display is active.
No navigation instructions during phone call
(a): during a telephone call, no audible driving recommendations are generated.

a) Depends on the team and the country.

Adapt the playback volume of external audio sources

If you want to increase the playback volume of an external audio source, first turn down the base volume of the device.

If the connected audio source is **too low**, increase the **output volume** on the external audio source. If this is not sufficient, set the **volume on the connected audio source** to **Medium** or **High**.

If the connected external audio source is **too loud or distorted**, decrease the **output volume** on the external audio source. If this is not sufficient, set the **volume on connection** to **Medium** or **Low**.

⚠

Driver distraction can lead to accidents and injuries.

- Never make adjustments while driving.

Transport

Accommodating luggage volumes

Always stow heavy loads securely in the luggage compartment and ensure that the rear seat backrests are correctly fitted. Use suitable lashing straps to secure heavy objects. Never overload the vehicle. Both the load and its distribution in the vehicle influence the steering behaviour and braking performance →⚠ .

Securely stow all volumes of luggage in the vehicle

- Distribute the loads on the vehicle as evenly as possible.
- In the luggage compartment, heavy objects should be placed as close as possible to the rear seat backrest, and the backrest should be securely locked.
- Secure luggage volumes in the luggage compartment using suitable tensioning straps.
- Adjust the tyre pressure according to the load. Observe the tyre pressure sticker → page 290.
- On vehicles with tyre monitoring system, if necessary, set the new loading conditions → p. 284.

⚠ WARNING

Loose or incorrectly attached objects can cause serious injuries in the event of sudden steering and braking manoeuvres or in the event of an accident. This applies in particular in cases where the airbag impacts objects that are thrown out of the vehicle interior when the airbag is deployed. To reduce the risk of injury, observe the following:

- Securely stow all objects in the vehicle. Always place luggage and heavy objects in the luggage compartment.
- Always secure objects with tie-down straps or suitable tensioning straps so that objects cannot reach the expansion area of the front airbags during sudden steering and braking manoeuvres.

COPIA

- Arrange objects inside the vehicle in such a way that they never reach the airbag expansion area while driving.
- Always keep the slides closed when driving.
- The seating arrangements must never cause the occupants to assume an incorrect seating position.
- If objects are placed to block a pavement, the sidewalk should never be occupied by a person.

WARNING

The steering behaviour, as well as the braking performance, is significantly altered when transporting large and heavy objects.

- Adjust speed and driving style according to visibility, weather, runway and traffic conditions.
- Accelerate particularly cautiously and carefully.
- Avoid sudden steering and braking manoeuvres.
- Brake earlier than usual.

NOTICE

Window defroster filaments
The seat can be damaged by rubbing against objects placed on the back surface of the seat.

Observe the information when loading a trailer → p. 232, *Driving with a trailer*.

Boot

Introduction to the topic

Always accommodate the heavy load in a way that is securely in the luggage compartment and make sure that the The backrests of the rear seat are correctly fitted. Always use suitable lashing straps. Never overload the vehicle. Both the load and its distribution in the vehicle influence the steering behaviour and the braking performance →⚠ .

WARNING

When the vehicle is not in use, always lock the doors and tailgate to reduce the risk of serious or fatal injury.

- Never leave children unattended, especially when the tailgate is open. Children can get into the luggage compartment and close the rear lid. In such a situation, a child would not be able to get out of the luggage compartment on its own. This can cause serious or fatal injuries.
- Never allow children to play in or near the vehicle.
- Never carry people in the luggage

WARNING

Loose or incorrectly attached objects can cause serious injuries in the event of sudden steering and braking manoeuvres or in the event of an accident. This applies in particular in cases where the airbag impacts objects that are thrown out of the vehicle interior when the airbag is deployed. To reduce the risk of injury, observe the following:

- Securely stow all objects in the vehicle. Always place luggage and heavy objects in the luggage compartment.
- Always secure objects with lashing straps or tensioning straps so that objects are not thrown around inside the vehicle and cannot reach the expansion area of the front airbags during sudden steering and braking manoeuvres.
- Always keep the slides closed when driving.
- Do not place hard, heavy or sharp-surfaced objects in open slides inside the vehicle, on the parcel shelf or on the instrument panel unless they are properly secured.
- Remove rigid, heavy or sharp objects from items of clothing and bags inside the vehicle and arrange them safely.

COPY

WARNING

When carrying heavy objects, the driving characteristics of the vehicle are altered and the braking distance increases. Unaccommodated and improperly secured heavy loads can cause the driver to lose control of the vehicle, resulting in serious injury.

- When transporting heavy objects, the driving characteristics of the vehicle are increased due to the displacement of the centre of gravity.
- Always distribute the load evenly and as far back in the vehicle as possible.
- Place heavy objects as far back in the

NOTICE

The filaments of the windscreen defroster can be damaged by friction with objects.

In order to allow the air inside the vehicle to be renewed, do not obstruct the air vents. ventilation between the rear window and the rear parcel shelf.

Luggage compartment cover

Note⚠ and⓵ at the beginning of this chapter on page 227.



Fig. 173 In the luggage compartment: Remove and fit the rear parcel shelf.

When the rear cover is opened and closed, the ban- dej is automatically raised or lowered, if the retaining cords are locked.

The rear tray can be used for light clothing. Ensure that visibility to the rear is not impaired.

Removing the rear tray

– Detach the retaining cords from the tailgate holder → Fig. 173 (arrows on top).
– Pull the rear tray backwards and outwards out of the side supports → fig. 173 (lower brackets).

Fitting the rear tray

– Push the rear tray forward and insert it into the side supports. → fig. 173 (lower arrows).
– Fit the retaining cords to the tailgate → fig. 173 (upper arrows).

⚠

Loose or improperly secured objects and animals on the parcel shelf can cause serious injuries in the event of sudden steering and braking manoeuvres or in the event of an accident.

- Do not place hard, heavy or sharp objects in clothes pockets, in bags or loose on the rear tray.
- Never transport animals on the rear tray.
- Never drive with the rear parcel shelf raised. Fold it down or remove it before driving.

NOTICE

To prevent damage to the rear tray:

- Always make sure that the tray is firmly held by the side supports.
- Only load the luggage compartment upwards so that the rear tray is not pressed against the load when the rear lid is closed. rrada.

COPIA

Variable luggage compartment floor

Note⚠ and⓵ at the beginning of this chapter on page 227.



Fig. 174 In the luggage compartment: Lift the luggage compartment floor.

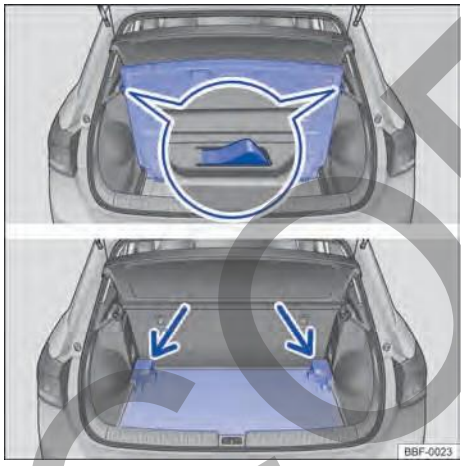


Fig. 175 In the luggage compartment: adjust the height of the luggage compartment floor.

Depending on the vehicle version, the variable luggage compartment floor may not be available.

Opening and closing the variable luggage compartment floor

To *open*, lift the handle → Fig. 174 in the direction of the arrow and fold the floor of the case all the way up.

To *close*, fold down the luggage compartment floor.

Adjusting the height of the luggage compartment floor

– Lift the luggage compartment floor and push it backwards by pulling the guides on the sides of the luggage compartment → fig. 175 .
– Position the luggage compartment floor in the guides at the desired height and pull it forward as far as it will go.

Expanding the luggage compartment downwards

– Lift the luggage compartment floor and push it down towards the guide → fig. 175 (arrows).
– Place the luggage compartment floor on the carpet.
– If necessary, fold the rear seat backrests forwards → page 80.

NOTICE

When closing, do not let the luggage compartment floor drop down sharply ; always follow it downwards. The lining or floor of the luggage compartment could be damaged.

Bag hooks

Note⚠ and⓵ at the beginning of this chapter on page 227.



Fig. 176 In the luggage compartment: bag hooks.

Bag hooks may be provided on the upper left and right side of the luggage compartment. → fig. 176.

⚠

Never use the bag hooks as a lashing device. In the event of sudden braking manoeuvres or in the event of an accident, the bag hook may break.

COPIA

A.5L1.TCR.60

NOTICE

Each of the hooks for hanging bags can be used to hang the bags.
to withstand a maximum load of 2.5 kg.

roof boxes

Introduction to the topic

The vehicle is equipped with two longitudinal longitudinal beams and the cross-members are available from a Volkswagen dealer.

Only additional roof luggage racks released by Volkswagen may be used.

If heavy or bulky objects are transported on the roof rack, the driving characteristics of the vehicle are altered due to the displacement of the centre of gravity and the increase of the wind resistance surface.

- The load shall be properly secured with suitable straps or tensioning straps in good condition.
- Large, heavy, long or flat loads have a negative effect on the vehicle's aerodynamics, centre of gravity and steering behaviour.
- Avoid sudden and abrupt steering and braking manoeuvres.
- Adapt speed and driving style to visibility, weather, runway and traffic conditions.

NOTICE

- The roof carrier crossbars are mounted on the roof racks. must be dismantled before the vehicle is subjected to an automatic washing system.
- The body height increases with the mounting of a roof rack and the load carried on it. Compare the height of the bodywork with the available heights, e.g. of viaducts and overpasses.
tones of garages.
- The roof antenna, the range of the sunroof and the rear cover must not be damaged by the roof carrier or the load carried on the roof carrier.
- Make sure that the rear cover, when opened, does not collide with the roof rack.

Remove the roof rack cross members when not in use,
to avoid unnecessary fuel consumption due to increased aerodynamic drag.

Using the roof box

Please note⚠ and ⓘ at the beginning of this chapter on page 230.

The longitudinal supports are only the basis of a complete load transport system and are supplied with the vehicle. For safety reasons, it is necessary to use **additional cross beams** for transporting luggage. For the transport of bicycles, surfboards, skis and boats, special additional carriers are required. Suitable accessories are available from your Volkswagen dealer.

Conventional luggage racks must not be mounted on the longitudinal supports. We recommend that you only use roof luggage racks approved by Volkswagen.

WARNING

Incorrect attachment and use of the roof rack tra- gages can cause the entire system to become detached from the roof, resulting in accidents and injuries.

- If the additional cross members approved by Volkswagen are not used or if they are not fitted correctly, the load being transported or the luggage compartment itself could fall off the roof.
- The manufacturer's installation instructions must always be observed.
- Use the roof rack only when the crossbars are correctly attached and the roof rack is in good condition.
- Mount the roof rack cross members correctly.

COPIA

- Check the fastenings before setting off and, if necessary, retighten them after a short journey. For longer journeys, check the fastenings at each stop.
- Always mount the special roof rack holders for bicycles, skis, surfboards, etc. correctly.
- Do not make any modifications or repairs to the basic supports or the roof rack.

NOTICE

Always observe the installation instructions of the roof luggage carrier cross member manufacturer.

- Keep the manufacturer's installation and operating instructions for the roof rack cross members together with the on-board documentation in the vehicle.

NOTICE

Damage caused by improper attachment of the roof rack cross members is excluded from the warranty.

- The body height increases with the use of the roof rack cross members and the load carried on the roof rack. Compare the body height with the available clearance heights, e.g. of driveways and garage doors.

Read and follow the installation instructions provided with the crossbars of the por- tion. Always keep them in the vehicle.

It is important to be aware of the legislation regulating the dimensions of loads. transported on the roof of vehicles.

Loading the roof box

Please note⚠ and⚠ at the beginning of this chapter on page 230.

The load can only be securely fastened when using a roof luggage compartment system approved by Volkswagen and when correctly mounted →⚠ .

Maximum permissible roof load

The maximum permissible roof load is **50 kg**. The roof load consists of the weight of the roof rack and the load carried →⚠ .

Always check the weight of the roof rack and the load to be transported and, if necessary, weigh them. Never exceed the maximum permissible roof load.

If the roof rack with the lowest load capacity is used, the maximum permissible roof load may not be used. In this case, the roof rack may only be loaded up to the weight limit specified in the installation instructions.

Load sharing

The load must be evenly distributed over the entire length of the cross members →⚠ .

Check the fixings

Once the roof carrier cross members have been fitted, they should be checked after a short distance of travel and at regular intervals thereafter.

⚠

Exceeding the maximum permissible roof load can lead to serious accidents and considerable damage to the vehicle.

- It must never exceed the maximum permissible roof load, the maximum permissible axle loads or the permissible total weight of the vehicle.
- The load capacity of the roof rack used must never be exceeded, even if the maximum roof load has not been reached. In this case, only load the roof carrier traverse up to the weight limit specified in the installation instructions.
- Secure heavy objects as far forward as possible and distribute the load evenly.

⚠ WARNING

Loose or incorrectly secured loads can fall from the roof carrier and cause accidents or injuries.

- Suitable and well-maintained straps or tensioning straps must always be used.
- The load shall be properly secured.

COPIA

Sometimes the roof rack crossbars remain mounted when the roof rack is already in place.

are not necessary. Due to the increased aerodynamic resistance , your vehicle unnecessarily consumes more fuel. Therefore, remove the roof rack cross members when they are no longer in use.

The load carried on the roof must be securely fastened. The transport of cargo on the

roof alters the behaviour of the vehicle.

Guidelines for use

Please note ⚠ and ⓘ at the beginning of this chapter on page 230.

Cases in which the roof carrier cross members should be removed:

- When they are no longer needed, this saves fuel, reduces wind noise and prevents theft from the boot.
- When the vehicle passes through an automatic car wash system.
- Where the height of the bodywork exceeds the al-
  The necessary passageway width, e.g. in a gorge.

NOTICE

- The height of the vehicle is modified by the installation of the roof luggage compartment system and the volume of luggage that is fixed to the roof. Compare the height of the vehicle with the heights available at passages, e.g. viaducts and garage doors.
- The roof antenna, the glass roof and the luggage compartment lid cannot be compromised by the roof luggage compartment system and the load attached to it.

The fuel consumption of the vehicle increases when the vehicle is equipped with a

The roof boot mounted, due to the increased air resistance

Driving with a trailer

Introduction to the topic

Observe country-specific regulations for driving with a trailer and for the use of a towing device.

As a rule, the vehicle was developed for the transport of persons and can be used to pull a trailer, provided that this is done with the appropriate technical equipment. This additional maximum towable weight influences the strength, fuel consumption and performance of the vehicle and may, under certain conditions, shorten the maintenance intervals.

Driving with a trailer puts more strain on the vehicle and, in turn, requires more concentration from the driver.

Vehicles with Start-Stop system

Before driving with the trailer, deactivate the Start-Stop system manually by means of the Start-Stop button.

The key in the upper part of the con-

single central unit and keep the system deactivated during the whole driving with trailer →⚠ .

⚠

Transporting passengers in a trailer is life-threatening and may be illegal.

⚠ WARNING

Improper use of the towing device can cause injuries and accidents.

- The trailer coupling shall only be used if it is in perfect condition and correctly attached.
- Do not make any modifications or repairs to the towbar.

⚠ WARNING

Driving with a trailer and transporting heavy or bulky objects can change driving characteristics and cause accidents.

- It is therefore essential to comply with the following instructions in order to ensure the safety of the driver, passengers and other drivers.

COPIA

- Always secure the load correctly with suitable lashing straps or tensioning straps in good working order.
- Adjust speed and manner of driving according to visibility, weather, runway and traffic conditions.
- Trailers with a high centre of gravity are more likely to tip over than those with a low centre of gravity.
- Avoid abrupt and sudden steering and braking manoeuvres.
- Use extreme caution when overtaking.
- Reduce speed immediately when you notice the slightest swaying of the trailer.
- When towing a trailer, do not drive faster than 80 km/h! This also applies to countries where the maximum permissible speed is higher. Please note that country-specific maximum speeds for vehicles with trailers may be lower than those for vehicles without trailers.
- Never attempt to "straighten" a swaying tractor-trailer combination by accelerating.

WARNING

If a rear towing device is installed, the start-stop system must always be manually de- activated when towing a trailer. Otherwise, a malfunction may occur in the braking system, which can lead to serious accidents and injuries.

In the first 1,000 km of a new engine, do not drive with a trailer.
→ p. 232.

Technical requirements

Please note⚠ and⚠ at the beginning of this chapter on page 232.

Use only a trailer hitch released for the permissible gross weight of the trailer to be towed. The towing device must be suitable for the vehicle and the trailer and must be securely attached to the chassis of the trailer.

vehicle. Always check and observe the towbar manufacturer's instructions.

Bumper-mounted towing hitch

Never fit a towbar to the bumper or its mounting. A towbar must not reduce the effect of the bumper. Do not make any modifications to the exhaust or braking system. Periodically check that the towbar is securely attached.

Engine cooling system

Driving with a trailer puts a great strain on the engine and cooling system. The cooling system must have sufficient coolant and be prepared for the additional strain of driving with a trailer.

Trailer brake

If the trailer is equipped with its own braking system, the relevant regulations must be observed. The trailer braking system must never be connected to the vehicle braking system.

Towing cable

Always use a tow rope between the vehicle and the trailer → p. 234.

Trailer rear lights

The rear lights of the trailer must comply with the statutory regulations → page 234.

Never connect the rear lights of the trailer directly to the vehicle's electrical system. If in doubt as to whether the trailer is correctly connected to the electrical system, contact a specialist company. Volkswagen recommends the Volkswagen Dealers for this.

Exterior rear-view mirrors

If the standard exterior rear-view mirrors on the towing vehicle do not provide sufficient visibility to the area behind the trailer, additional exterior rear-view mirrors must be fitted in accordance with the country-specific mirror regulations. The exterior rear-view mirrors must be adjusted before setting off and must provide sufficient visibility to the rear.

COPIA

⚠ WARNING

An inadequate or incorrectly mounted towing device can cause the trailer to become detached from the vehicle and cause serious injury.

NOTICE

- If the rear lights of the trailer are not switched on correctly, the electronic components of the vehicle may be damaged.
- If the trailer draws too much current, the electronic components of the vehicle may be damaged.
- Never connect the trailer electrical system directly to the electrical connections of the rear lights or other power sources. Use only suitable connections for the power supply to the trailer .

Because of the increased demand for the vehicle with frequent towing, Volkswagen recommends that maintenance should also be carried out between service intervals.

- All work on the electrical system can only be carried out by a Volkswagen dealer or a specialist company.
- The electrical system of the trailer must never be connected directly to the electrical connections of the rear lamps or other power sources.

NOTICE

A trailer parked on the support wheel or on the trailer brackets must not remain attached to the vehicle. For example, the vehicle is raised and lowered due to load changes or tyre damage. In this case, strong forces act on the towbar and trailer and can cause damage to the vehicle and trailer.

If there is an electrical connection from the trailer socket to the trailer's power supply, the trailer must be connected to the mo-

If the vehicle battery is

s

witched off and the accessories are connected in the tank, the vehicle battery will be discharged .

Hitching and connecting the trailer

Please note⚠ and⚠ at the beginning of this chapter on page 232.

Towing cable

Always attach the tow rope correctly to the towing vehicle. In this case, leave the tow rope a little slack to allow for driving around bends. However, the cable must not hang down so far that it rubs against the ground when driving.

Trailer rear lights

Make sure that the rear lights of the trailer are in proper working order and comply with the legal requirements.

⚠ WARNING

Inadequate or improperly connected electrical leads can energise the trailer, cause vehicle electronics to malfunction and cause serious injury.

Loading the trailer

Please note⚠ and⚠ at the beginning of this chapter on page 232.

Maximum towable weight and drawbar load

The maximum towable weight is the load that the vehicle can tow →⚠ . The drawbar load is the load that exerts vertical pressure on the ball joint of the towbar → p. 232.

The maximum towing weight and drawbar load stated on the towbar identification label are only reference values. The vehicle-specific values, which are often *lower* than these values, can be found in the vehicle documentation. The information in the vehicle licensing documents always takes precedence.

To ensure safe driving, Volkswagen recommends always using the maximum permissible **drawbar load.** Insufficient drawbar load limits the steering behaviour of the vehicle.

The existing drawbar load increases the weight on the rear axle and reduces the payload of the vehicle.

COPIA

Weight of tractor-trailer combination

The weight of the tractor-trailer combination is composed of the actual weights of the loaded towing vehicle and the loaded trailer.

Loading the trailer

The whole assembly must be balanced. To do this, use the maximum permissible drawbar load and do not load the trailer with the load to the front or rear:

– Distribute the load on the trailer so that heavy objects are as close to or on the axle as possible .
– Secure the trailer load correctly.

Tyre pressure

The trailer tyre pressure is based on the recommendation of the trailer manufacturer.

Inflate the wheels of the towing vehicle to the maximum tyre pressure when driving with a trailer → page 286.

⚠ WARNING

Exceeding the maximum permissible axle load and drawbar load as well as the maximum or total towing capacity of the vehicle and trailer can lead to accidents and serious injuries.

- Never exceed the indicated values.
- Never exceed the maximum permissible axle load with the actual weight on the front and rear axle. Never exceed the maximum permissible gross vehicle weight with the front or rear vehicle weight.

⚠

If the load slips, the stability and driving safety of the assembly may be considerably reduced, leading to accidents and serious injuries.

- Always load the trailer correctly.
- Always secure the load with suitable lashing or tensioning straps in good working condition.

Driving with a trailer

Please note⚠ and⚠ at the beginning of this chapter on page 232.

Adjustment of headlamps

When towing a trailer, the front of the vehicle can be raised and the low headlamp can dazzle other drivers. The headlamps should be adjusted by a Volkswagen dealer or a specialist company.

Particularities of driving with a trailer

– On a trailer with **supplementary brakes**, the brakes must *first be* applied *gently* and then continuously. This avoids jerking under braking due to the trailer wheels locking.
– The braking distance increases due to the weight of the tractor-trailer combination.
– Before driving on steep gradients, select a lower gear (manual transmission or Tiptronic mode of the automatic transmission) to additionally use the engine as a brake. Otherwise, the brake system could overheat and even fail.
– The vehicle's centre of gravity and driving characteristics were altered due to the maximum towable weight and the increased gross vehicle weight.
– With the towing vehicle unladen and the trailer loaded, the weight distribution will be inappropriate. With this combination, drive slowly and with special care.

Starting with trailer on slopes

Depending on the inclination and gross weight of the assembly, a parked assembly may move slightly backwards when starting up.

On slopes, start with trailer as follows:

– Depress the brake pedal and hold it down.
– Apply the parking brake.
– *Vehicles with manual transmission:* depress the clutch pedal fully.
– Engage 1st gear → page 118 or the position of the selector lever **D/S** → page 120.
– Release the brake pedal.

COPIA

– Start slowly. With manual transmission , release the clutch pedal slowly.
– Release the parking brake only when the engine has sufficient tractive power to start.

WARNING

Improper towing of a trailer can cause loss of control of the vehicle and result in serious injury.

- Driving with a trailer and carrying heavy or bulky objects can change the driving characteristics and increase the braking distance.
- Always drive cautiously and defensively. Brake earlier than usual.
- Adjust speed and driving style according to visibility, weather, runway and traffic conditions. Reduce your speed, especially in slow-moving traffic.
- Accelerate particularly cautiously and carefully. Avoid abrupt and sudden steering and braking manoeuvres.
- Use extreme caution when overtaking. Reduce speed immediately when you notice the slightest swaying of the trailer.
- Never attempt to "straighten" the swaying tractor-trailer combination by accelerating.
- Note that maximum speeds for vehicles with trailers may be lower than for vehicles without trailers.

Rear mounting of the towbar

Please note⚠ and⚠ at the beginning of this chapter on page 232.

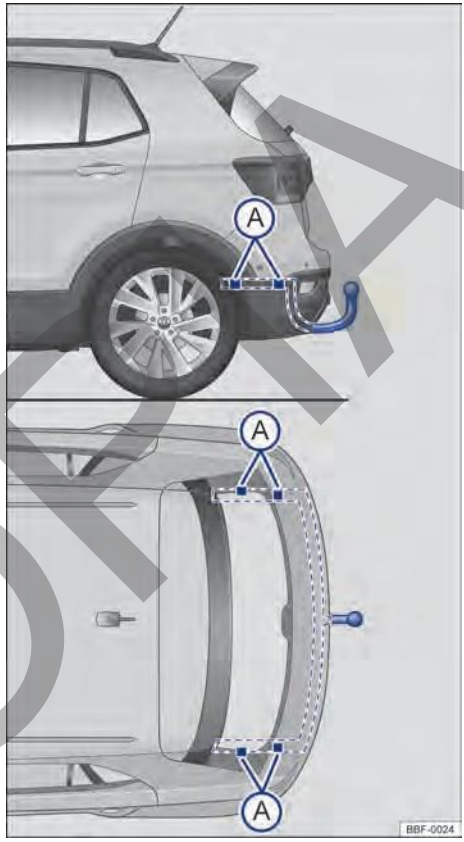


Fig. 177 Mounting points for the rear mounting of a trailer hitch.

Figure → fig. 177 shows an example of the attachment point for mounting a towing device for the T-Cross model.

The retrofitting of a towing device shall be carried out in accordance with the instructions of the respective towing device manufacturer and in compliance with the fixing points of the towing device.
shown in → fig. 177 A .

COPIA

The existing fixing points for the tow hitch are visible from underneath the vehicle. The towbar must be fixed at these points .

Mounting the towbar

– Observe the legal regulations in force in the country in which the vehicle is being driven.
– It may be necessary to remove and fit the rear bumper. It is also necessary to tighten the screws securing the trailer hitch with a torque spanner and to connect a power socket to the vehicle's electrical system. This requires special knowledge and tools.
– The data in the figure indicate the fixing points which must always be observed when retrofitting the trailer coupling.

WARNING

Inadequate or incorrectly connected electrical leads can cause malfunctions of all electronic components of the vehicle and lead to accidents and serious injuries.

- Never connect the electrical system of the trailer directly to the electrical connections of the rear lamps or to any other power source. Use only connectors suitable for the connection of the trailer.
- The retrofitting of a trailer coupling must be carried out by a specialised company.

WARNING

An inadequate or incorrectly installed towing device can cause the trailer to become detached from the towing vehicle. This can cause serious accidents and fatal injuries.

NOTICE

Driving with a trailer puts more strain on the vehicle. Before deciding on **retrofitting**, contact a Volkswagen Dealer to find out whether it is necessary to retrofit a trailer.
make any changes to the system beforehand cooling system or if thermal insulation is to be fitted.

21A.5L1.TCR.60

Fuel

Safety guidelines for fuel handling

WARNING

Incorrect supply and improper use of fuel can cause explosions, fires, burns and other serious

- Always ensure that the fuel tank cap is properly closed to prevent evaporation and fuel leakage.
- Fuel is highly explosive and easily ignitable and can cause severe burns and other injuries.
- If the engine is running or the fuel nozzle is not properly inserted into the filler neck of the fuel tank when refuelling, the fuel may splash and overflow. This can cause fire, explosion, severe burns and other injuries.
- For safety reasons, switch off the engine and switch off the ignition when charging.
- When charging, always switch off mobile phones, portable radios and other radio equipment. Electromagnetic radiation can generate sparks and thus cause a fire.
- Never enter the vehicle during loading. If it is necessary to enter the vehicle, close the door and touch a metal surface before picking up the supply gun again. This prevents the generation of spark-causing electrostatic discharges. When charging, sparks can start a fire.
- Never load or fill an empty container near open flames, sparks or glowing objects, e.g. cigarettes.
- Avoid electrostatic discharges and electromagnetic radiation when charging.
- Observe the safety instructions of the service station.
- Never spill fuel in the vehicle or in the luggage compartment.

COPIA

⚠ WARNING

For safety reasons, Volkswagen recommends that you do not load a fuel container in the vehicle. Especially in the event of an accident, the full or empty container can leak fuel and catch fire. This can cause explosions, fires and injuries.

- In exceptional cases, when it is necessary to transport fuel in a reserve container, try the following:
  - When filling the reserve container, never place the container in or on the vehicle, e.g. in the luggage compartment. An electrostatic discharge may occur during filling and ignite the fuel vapours.
  - Always place the reserve container on the floor.
  - Insert the nozzle of the pump as far as possible into the gland of the re-serve container.
  - Always keep the pump nozzle in contact with the container in order to avoid a static charge.
  - Observe legal requirements when

NOTICE

- Immediately remove spilled fuel from all parts of the vehicle to prevent damage to the wheel housing, tyres and paintwork.
- Never drive until the fuel tank is empty. Uneven fuelling can cause misfiring and build-up of unburnt fuel in the exhaust system. This can damage the catalytic converter filter.
- Once the nozzle gun has automatically cut off the supply for the first time, it is possible to

At the same time, the tank is at the limit of its capacity. Do not force refuelling, as the fuel may overflow.

- During loading, fuel may be spilled on the ground and pollute the environment. In order to prevent this from happening, it is necessary to re-
post in authorised stations, which possess a correct collection and disposal system of liquids.

Fuel types and supply

Introduction to the topic

The fuel filler door is located on the right-hand side of the rear of the vehicle.

On the inside of the fuel filler flap there is a sticker with information on the type of fuel suitable for the vehicle.

WARNING

fires, severe burns and other injuries.

- The fuel is highly explosive and easily flammable.
- For safety reasons, Volkswagen recommends that a reserve fuel container should not be loaded in the vehicle. Particularly in the event of an accident, the full or empty canister can spill fuel and catch fire. This can cause explosions, fires and serious injuries.
- In exceptional cases, where it is necessary to transport fuel in reserve containers, it is compulsory to follow the guidance given from the
→ p. 237, *Safety guidelines for fuel handling*.
- Keep any kind of flames (such as those produced by lighters), hot parts and sparks away from the fuel.
- When handling fuel, switch off mobile phones and radios. Electromagnetic radiation can generate sparks and thus cause a fire.
- Avoid electrostatic discharges and electromagnetic radiation near the fuel.
- Never spill fuel in the vehicle or in the luggage compartment.
- Observe the locally applicable safety instructions and regulations for the use of fuels.

COPIA

NOTICE

- If the TOTALFLEX vehicle is immobilised because of
  In case of "**fuel starvation**", it will be necessary to refuel the vehicle with the same type of the last fuel used - petrol or ethanol.
- If it is necessary to fill the tank with a different fuel than the one being used, this may occur:
  - Perceptible decrease in engine performance.
- The vehicle must travel approximately 5 kilometres to recognise the new fuel, so that one of the above situations does not occur.

- Once the nozzle gun has automatically cut off the supply for the first time, it is possible to

At the same time, the tank is at the limit of its capacity. Do not force refuelling, as the fuel may overflow.

- During loading, fuel may be spilled on the ground and pollute the environment. To prevent this from happening, it is necessary to refuel at authorised stations, which have a proper system for collecting and disposing of liquids.

When the airbags are triggered in an accident, the fuel supply will be switched off.

interrupts → p. 45.

Petrol engine

Note⚠ and⏀ at the beginning of this chapter on page 238.

The vehicle must only be refuelled with **unleaded** petrol **or other metallic additives (e.g. manganese)**, as defined by the legislation in force in the country.

Gasoline additives

The quality of the fuel has an influence on the running-in behaviour, power and service life of the engine. Therefore, fill up with good quality petrol and, where necessary, use the appropriate additives.

The use of unsuitable petrol additives can cause serious engine damage and damage to the catalytic converter. Under no circumstances should petrol additives containing metal be used.

NOTICE

- The use of inappropriate petrol additives can cause serious damage to the engine and damage the catalytic converter.
- If, in an emergency, the vehicle needs to be refuelled with petrol other than the current petrol, the engine should be driven at medium engine speeds and with lower demand. Avoid high engine speeds and high demands on the engine, otherwise the engine may be damaged! Refuel with the recommended petrol as soon as possible.

A single fill-up with leaded gasoline or other metallic additives (e.g. manganese, leaded petrol or other metallic additives) can be used as a single filler.

The catalytic converter's e fficiency can be reduced and catalyst damage can occur .

TOTALFLEX engine

Note⚠ and⏀ at the beginning of this chapter on page 238.

Petrol

The vehicle must be filled only with **unleaded** petrol **or other metallic additives (e.g. manganese)**, with a percentage of anhydrous ethyl ethanol of RON 95/E24 specification (blue colour).

Gasoline additives

The quality of the fuel has an influence on the running-in behaviour, power and service life of the engine. Therefore, fill up with good quality petrol and, where necessary, use the appropriate additives.

The use of unsuitable petrol additives can cause serious engine damage and damage to the catalytic converter. Under no circumstances should petrol additives containing metal be used.

Ethanol

The vehicle must be filled only with **hydrated ethanol**, in accordance with the legislation in force in the country.

NOTICE

- The use of unsuitable fuel additives can cause

COPY

serious engine damage and damage to the catalytic converter.

- If, in an emergency, the vehicle needs to be refuelled with fuel other than that specified, the engine should be driven at medium engine speeds and with lower demand. Avoid high engine speeds and high engine demands, otherwise the engine may be damaged! Refuel with the recommended petrol as soon as possible.
- A single filler with leaded petrol or other metallic additives (e.g., leaded gasoline) is sufficient to reduce the effectiveness of the catalyst and cause significant damage to the catalytic converter.

the same.

Refuelling

Note⚠ and⓵ at the beginning of this chapter on page 238.

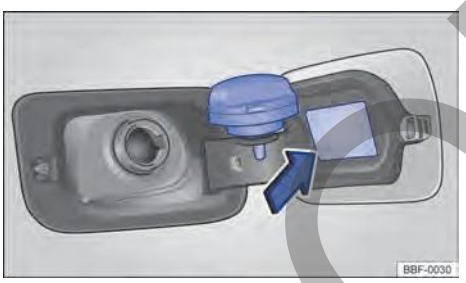


Fig. 178 Fuel tank door open with the fuel tank cap hanging down.

Before refuelling, always switch off the engine, switch off the ignition and the mobile phone, and keep them switched off during refuelling.

Vehicles with TOTALFLEX engines were developed to use **both petrol and ethanol in any ratio**.

See the fuel tank capacity at on → page 331.

Open the fuel tank filler cap

– Unlock the vehicle with the vehicle key or press the central locking button.
▢on the driver's door to unlock the vehicle from the inside → page 65.
– At the rear of the fuel filler flap, press the fuel filler flap outwards.
– Remove the fuel filler flap by turning it anticlockwise and fit it into the holder on the fuel filler flap → fig. 178.

Supply

The correct fuel type for the vehicle is indicated on a sticker on the inside of the fuel tank door → page 238.

– The fuel tank is *full* when the nozzle first cuts off the fuel supply →⚠ .
– Do not load after switching off! Occupying the expansion space in the fuel tank can cause the fuel to overflow, even when heated.

Close the fuel filler cap.

– Screw the fuel filler cap clockwise onto the filler neck until you hear it lock.
– Close the fuel filler flap. The fuel filler flap must be aligned with the bodywork.

⚠ WARNING

Stop refuelling when the fuel pump is switched off for the first time. The fuel tank must not be refuelled excessively. This can cause fuel to spill or splash out. This can cause explosions, fires and serious injuries.

⓵ *NOTICE*

- If the TOTALFLEX vehicle is immobilised because of In case of "**fuel starvation**", it will be necessary to refuel the vehicle with the same type of the last fuel used - petrol or ethanol.
- If it is necessary to fill the tank with a different fuel than the one being used, the following may occur :

COPIA

– Perceptible decrease in engine performance.

- The vehicle must travel approximately 5 kilometres to recognise the new fuel, so that one of the above situations does not occur.

NOTICE

Remove spilled fuel immediately.
The vehicle must be cleaned of all parts of the vehicle to prevent damage to the wheel housing, tyres and paintwork.

- Once the nozzle gun has automatically cut off the supply for the first time, it is possible to

At the same time, the tank is at the limit of its capacity. Do not force refuelling, as the fuel may overflow.

- During loading, fuel may be spilled on the ground and pollute the environment. To prevent this from happening, it is necessary to refuel at authorised stations with a proper collection and disposal system.
of liquids.

Engine control unit and exhaust emission control system exhaust emission control system

Introduction to the topic

Components relevant to the flue gas emission system reduce the emission of harmful elements:
– Electronic engine power control (EPC) → page 241
– Catalyst → p. 242
– Activated carbon filter - feeding system → page 242

Information on warning and control lights that come on can be found in troubleshooting at the end of this chapter.
→ p. 242.

WARNING

Engine exhaust gases contain carbon monoxide which can cause fainting and lead to death.

- Never start the engine or leave it running in enclosed areas.
- Never leave the vehicle with the engine running unattended.

⚠

Parts of the exhaust system become very hot. This can cause fires.

- Switch off the vehicle so that no parts of the exhaust system come into contact with easily flammable materials under the vehicle, e.g. dry grass.
- Never use additional underbody protection or anti-corrosive products on the exhaust pipe, catalytic converter or heat shield plates.

Electronic engine power control (EPC)

Please note⚠ at the beginning of this chapter on page 241.

The electronic engine power control (EPC) is a system that aims to de- termine the throttle position, depending on the torque requested by the driver through the electronic pedal (e-gas system), when any malfunction of the system occurs the control light comes on.

Under normal operating conditions, when the driver operates the accelerator, the system will interpret the command, transforming it into a need for force and speed.

With the control over the engine components (sensors and actuators), the best possible performance is calculated, complying with the driver's command.

COPIA

Catalyst

Please note⚠ at the beginning of this chapter on page 241.

The catalytic converter is used for exhaust after-treatment and thus helps to reduce emissions of pollutants into the atmosphere. To keep the exhaust system and engine catalytic converter working properly for a longer period of time:

- Only fill only unleaded petrol or other metallic additives (e.g. manganese).
- Never let the fuel tank run completely empty.
- Never overfill the engine oil → p. 269.
- Do not pull and/or push the vehicle to force it to start ("jerking"), but use the starting aid → page 258.

If misfiring, a drop in power or a malfunction of the engine occurs while driving, reduce speed immediately and have the vehicle checked by a Volkswagen Dealer or a specialist company. Otherwise, unburned fuel may get into the exhaust system and consequently into the atmosphere. In addition, the catalytic converter can also be damaged by overheating!

NOTICE

A single filler with leaded gasoline or other metallic additives (e.g. manganese) is sufficient to reduce the effectiveness of the catalyst and cause catalyst damage.

Even if the exhaust system is in perfect working order, it can still have an adverse effect on the exhaust system.

The exhaust emissions may emit a sulphurous odour under certain engine operating conditions. This depends on the sulphur content of the fuel . In many cases, it is sufficient to choose a different fuel

b

rand.

Lambda sensor

Please note⚠ at the beginning of this chapter on page 241.

The function of the lambda sensor is to monitor the exhaust gases through a sensor which, when it is reached by lead or other metallic additives (e.g. manganese) contained in the fuel, is gradually reduced, after 10,000 km, the lambda sensor will lose its efficiency completely. This lack of monitoring may affect the engine performance, causing some irregularities, such as, for example:

- altered steerability conditions;
- Difficulty in hot starts of the motor;
- increase in fuel consumption.

Activated carbon filter - feeding system

Please note⚠ at the beginning of this chapter on page 241.

The fuelling system has an activated carbon filter which accumulates the hydrocarbons (vapours) generated in the fuel tank (evaporative emission control), this system does not allow the release of these hydrocarbons into the atmosphere. During engine operation, these accumulated hydrocarbons are admitted and enter the normal combustion process of the engine.

The activated carbon filter does not allow hydrocarbons from the tank gases to enter the tank.

emissions are released into the atmosphere.

Troubleshooting

Please note⚠ at the beginning of this chapter on page 241.

If, while driving, the engine runs unevenly or jerks, this may be due to poor or insufficient fuel quality, e.g. water in the fuel. When the engine surges, it may be due to poor or insufficient fuel quality, for example water in the fuel.
If you get these signals, immediately reduce the

COPIA

If these signals occur immediately after refuelling, the engine should be switched off immediately - also to avoid secondary damage - and a Volkswagen dealer or specialist company should be sought. If these signals occur immediately after refuelling, the engine should be switched off immediately - also to avoid secondary damage - and a Volkswagen dealer or specialist company should be sought .

Control light

The exhaust emission control system (OBD) is not available for countries where this system is not regulated by law. In these cases, the check light will come on only when the ignition is switched on during engine start.

Engine control unit (Electronic Power Control) defective. **If it comes on:** the engine must be checked immediately by a Volkswagen dealer or a specialist company.

Emissions deficiency of the exhaust system (OBD). **If it comes on:** reduce the speed. Drive carefully to the nearest Volkswagen dealer or specialist company. The engine must be checked.

If flashing: catalytic converter defective. Slow down. Drive carefully to the nearest Volkswagen Dealer or specialist workshop. The engine must be checked.

When the ignition is switched on, some warning and control lights come on quickly as a check. These go out after a few seconds.

Observing warning lights and text messages is essential for the safety of the driver and passengers, avoiding possible vehicle stoppages as well as possible accidents.

- Never ignore warning lights or text messages.
- Stop the vehicle as soon as possible in a place that is safe for all passengers in the vehicle and other drivers.

NOTICE

Always observe the control lights on and their descriptions and orientations to avoid damage to the vehicle.

If the control lights or are on, there is a malfunction in the motor, with increased fuel consumption and reduced engine power .

Fuel quality

Since it is practically impossible to inspect all filling stations, Volkswagen recommends filling at stations in the dealer networks that have transparent programmes for certifying the quality of the product offered.

Volkswagen dealers are informed about what to do if deposits have already formed in the engine.

Fuel injection system

The vehicle is equipped with a fuel injection system which, under standard conditions, allows all types of periodic cleaning, either with additives added to the fuel or by disassembly of the injector valves for cleaning in ultrasonic systems.

Cleaning should only be carried out when engine malfunctions or malfunctions are detected as a result of the use of poor quality fuel. In this case, Volkswagen recommends contacting a Volkswagen dealer who has the appropriate additives and equipment.

NOTICE

Damage to the engine caused by the use of bad or insufficient quality fuel is excluded from the warranty .

COPIA

Self-help

On-board tools

Introduction to the topic

When marking the damaged vehicle, observe the legal regulations of the respective country.

⚠

A loose on-board tool and emergency wheel can be thrown around the inside of the vehicle during sudden steering or braking manoeuvres, as well as in an accident, and cause serious injury.

- Always ensure that the on-board tools or emergency wheel are securely fastened in the luggage compartment.

⚠

An inadequate or damaged on-board tool can cause accidents and injuries.

- Never work with an unsuitable or damaged on-board tool.

Location and access to on-board tools

Please note⚠ at the beginning of this chapter on page 244.

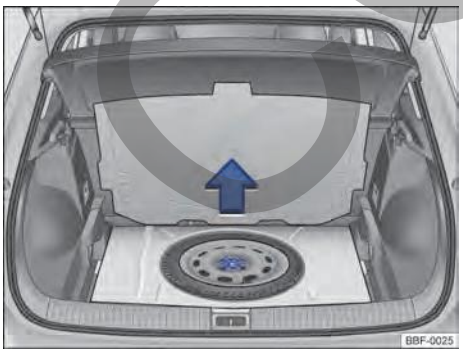


Fig. 179 In the luggage compartment, under the floor covering: emergency wheel and on-board tools.

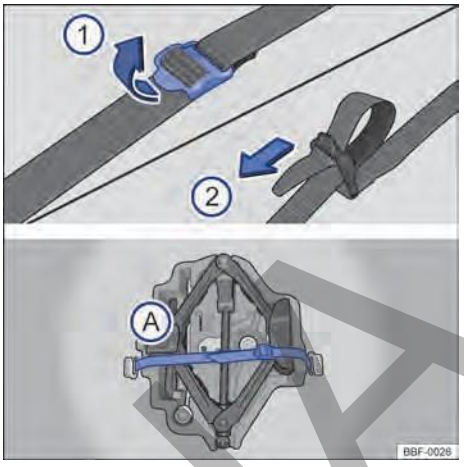


Fig. 180 In the luggage compartment: toolbox fastening strap and on-board toolbox.

The on-board tools and the emergency wheel are located in the luggage compartment under the carpet → Fig. 179.

To access the toolbox, the emergency wheel must be re-moved.

Accommodation of on-board tools

– If necessary, raise and secure the variable luggage compartment floor → page 229.
– Raising the luggage compartment lining → fig. 179.
– Remove the liner completely to re-pull the emergency wheel and access the on-board tools.

Loosen the fastening strap of the on-board toolbox.

To release the fastening strap → fig. 180 Ⓐ, pull the buckle in the direction of arrow Ⓘ.

Fixing the on-board toolbox

– Position the toolbox in its housing.
– Pass the strap through the buckle in a clockwise direction. arrow Ⓘ and pull firmly on the strap to fix the toolbox.

Always ensure that the emergency wheel and on-board tools are in place. are correctly secured in the luggage compartment.

COPIA

Tool components on-board tools

Please note⚠ at the beginning of this chapter on page 244.

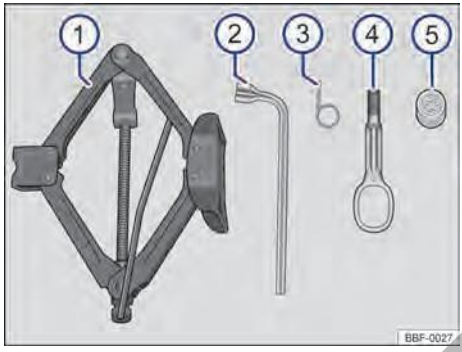


Fig. 181 On-board tool components.

The range of the on-board tools depends on the vehicle equipment. The maximum range is described below.

Components of on-board tools
→ fig. 181

1. Jack - Before placing the jack back in the toolbox, the jack must be picked up. Then attach the crank handle to the top of the jack.
2. Wheel spanner.
3. Extractor hook for removing the wheel bolt covers.
4. Threaded towing eye.
5. Anti-theft wheel bolt adapter *(not available for some versions)*. Volkswagen recommends that the wheel bolt adapter is always carried in the vehicle together with the tools on board. The **code number** of the wheel bolt protection is stamped on the front of the adapter. On the basis of this number, a replacement adapter can be purchased in the event of loss. Make a note of the wheel bolt protection code number and store separately from the vehicle.

Turn the jack back to its original position after use, so that it can be stored in its original position.
given with certainty.

Windscreen wiper blades

Service position

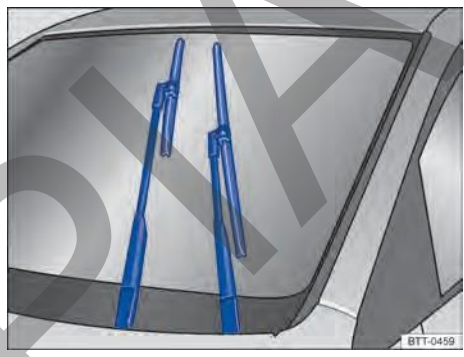


Fig. 182 Windscreen wiper in service position.

In the service position, the wiper arms can be raised. To move the windscreen wipers to the service position
→ fig. 182 proceed as follows:

Activate the service position

– The engine compartment cover must be closed → page 266.
– Switch on the ignition and switch it off again.
– Press the windscreen wiper lever downwards briefly.

Suspending the wiper arms

– Before suspending the windscreen wiper arms, place them in the service position. →ⓘ.
– To suspend a wiper arm, hold it **only** from the area where the wiper blade is attached.

Position the wiper arms back on the windscreen before driving! Press the windscreen wiper lever briefly downwards when the ignition is switched on to return to the initial position.
The wiper arms must be replaced by the wiper arms.

COPY

NOTICE

- To prevent damage to the engine compartment cover and wiper arms, raise the wiper arms to the service position.
- Always lower the windscreen wiper arms onto the windscreen before driving.

rabrisas.

Cleaning and replacement of wiper blades of the wiper blades

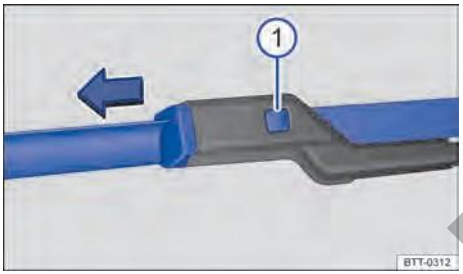


Fig. 183 Replace the wiper blades.

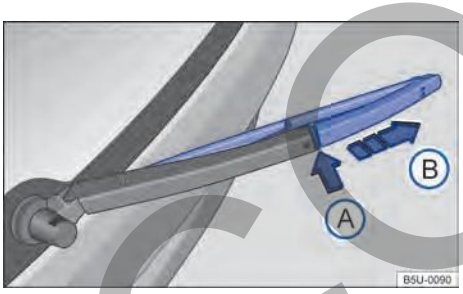


Fig. 184 Replace the wiper blade.

The vehicle is factory-fitted with wiper blades coated with a graphite coating. The graphite coating causes the wiper blades to glide silently over the glass. A damaged graphite coating may, among other things, increase the noise level during wiping.

Check the condition of the wiper blades regularly. Replace the **wiper blades** if they are damaged or clean them if they are dirty →.

Damaged wiper blades must be replaced immediately. Windscreen wiper blades can be purchased from a Volkswagen Dealer or a specialised company.

Cleaning the wiper blades

Please note on the windscreen wipers: move the windscreen wiper arms to the service position before folding them out →.

- To suspend a wiper arm, hold it **only** from the area where the wiper blade is attached.
- Carefully clean the wiper blades with a damp sponge →.
- Carefully lower the arms of the windscreen wiper onto the glass.

Replacing the wiper blades

- Before suspending the windscreen wiper arms, place them in the service position. → p. 245.
- To suspend a wiper arm, hold it **only** from the area where the wiper blade is attached.
- Keep the unlocking button → fig. 183 (1) pressed down and at the same time remove the wiper blade in the direction of the arrow.
- Insert the new wiper blade **of** the **same size and type** into the wiper arm until it clicks into place.
- Carefully lower the windscreen wiper arms back onto the windscreen.

Replacing the wiper blade

- Lift and fold out the lim- pialuneta arm.
- Press and hold down the unlocking key → fig. 184 (A).
- Remove the wiper blade in the direction of arrow B .
- Insert the new wiper blade of the **same size and type into the** wiper arm.
- Carefully lower the wiper arm back onto the windscreen

COPIA

WARNING

Worn or dirty wiper blades reduce visibility and increase the risk of accidents and serious injury.

- Replace wiper blades whenever they are damaged or worn and if they no longer clean the glass satisfactorily.

NOTICE

- Damaged or dirty wiper blades can scratch glass.
- Cleaning agents with solvents, hard sponges and other sharp objects damage the graphite coating of the wiper blades during cleaning.
- Do not clean the glass with fuel, enamel removers, ink solvents or similar liquids.

Outdoor lighting

Introduction to the topic

Before replacing an incandescent lamp, make sure that it is an incandescent lamp or an LED light that has burnt out. As a general rule, you can replace incandescent lamps yourself. If the exterior lighting, depending on the version and model, is LED technology, you cannot replace LEDs or individual LEDs yourself. Burn-out of individual LEDs may be an indication of possible burn-out of other LEDs. In this case, the lights must be checked and, if necessary, replaced by a specialist company.

Replacing a bulb requires professional expertise. If in doubt, Volkswagen therefore recommends having the bulb replaced by a Volkswagen Dealer or a specialist company. In principle, a technician is required if, in addition to the respective bulbs, other parts of the vehicle have to be removed.

It is recommended to always carry a small box on board the vehicle with the spare bulbs required for traffic safety. Replacement bulbs are available at Volkswagen dealerships.

Driving with burnt-out external lighting devices may be illegal.

Additional bulb specifications

Some incandescent lamps may have certain factory specifications that differ from conventional incandescent lamps. The respective designation is stated on the lampholder or on the glass bulb.

LED lamps in the vehicle

Lanterns and headlamps using LEDs (Light Emitting Diode) have a long service life and do not need to be changed frequently.

Volkswagen recommends that LED lamps and headlamps be replaced by a Volkswagen Dealer.

Vehicle headlamps using light-emitting diodes are listed below:

– Headlamp *(depending on vehicle version may not be available)*
– Side direction indicator: located on the exterior mirrors *(depending on vehicle version may not be available)*.
– Number plate light.
– High brake light (brake light): located in the rear lid, above the rear window, on the outer side of the vehicle.
– Daytime running light: located in the fog lamp.
– Rear light *(depending on vehicle version may not be available)*.
– Fog lamp *(depending on vehicle version*

WARNING

Driving with burnt-out bulbs, in addition to being irregular, creates a potential risk of accidents. Any burnt-out bulbs should be replaced as soon as possible.

- Inadequate lighting of public roads, e.g. streets, avenues and squares, causes poor visibility and also increases the risk of accidents, as other road users may not be

SOPIA

drivers would have difficulty in visualising a vehicle running with burnt-out bulbs.

WARNING

If the bulb is replaced incorrectly, it can cause accidents and serious injuries.

- Before any work in the engine compartment, always read and observe the warnings → p. 263, *Safety guidelines for work in the engine compartment*. The engine compartment of all vehicles is a hazardous area and can cause serious injury.
- Replace the bulb only if it is completely cold.
- Never replace a bulb if you are not familiar with the necessary actions. If there is any uncertainty about what to do, the necessary work should be carried out by a Volkswagen dealer or a specialist company.
- Do not pick up the glass bulb of the bulb with bare fingers. Remaining digital impressions on the incandescent lamp evaporate with the heat when switched on and leave the reflector "opaque".
- There are sharp-edged parts on the lamp housing in the engine compartment and on the tail lamp housing. Protect your hands when changing bulbs.

NOTICE

If the rubber covers of the lamp housing are not fitted correctly after a bulb replacement, this can lead to damage to the electrical system, especially through water penetration.

NOTICE

Volkswagen recommends that special care be taken with some of the plastic parts that have pre-chairs, which may break during the installation or removal of the lamps.

Depending on the version of the vehicle, the rear bumper may have two rear bumper re

The light bulbs do not have any bulbs to be replaced. However, if they break and need to be replaced, contact a Volkswagen Dealer or a specialised company for replacement.

On cold and wet days, due to the difference in temperature between indoors and outdoors, it is possible to

If the headlamp lens is not fitted to the outside of the headlamp lens, the headlamp may be temporarily sealed.

- When the headlamp is switched on, the light-emitting surface becomes foggy within a short time and may have some residue on the edges.
- Taillights and turn signals may also be affected.
- Condensation does not affect the lifetime of the vehicle's lighting system

Information on changing incandescent lamps

Note⚠ and⚠ at the beginning of this chapter on page 247.

Checklist

Carry out the following actions to change a light bulb, always in the order given →⚠ :

1. Park the vehicle, if possible, at a safe distance from the flow of traffic, on a flat, firm ground.
2. Pull the parking brake → p. 132.
3. Turn the light control knob to position **0** → p. 85.
4. Move the lever of the di- rection indicators to the neutral position → page 84.
5. Automatic transmission: move the selector lever to position **P** → page 120.
6. Switch off the engine and remove the vehicle key from the ignition lock → page 112.
7. Manual transmission: shift into gear → p. 118.
8. Leave the orientation lighting on if necessary → page 84.
9. Allow the bulb in question to cool down.
10. Check whether a fuse is visibly blown → page 252.
11. Replace the affected bulb according to the instructions →⚠ , if necessary, hold a torch in your hands. A bulb can only be replaced with a new bulb of the same type. The respective designation can be found on the bulb holder

COPY

or on the glass bulb.

Checklist (continued)

12. Do not pick up the glass bulb of the bulb with bare fingers. The remaining di- gital impression would evaporate with the heat of the burning bulb and be deposited on the reflector, impairing the illu- mination capability of the lamp.
13. Check the operation of the bulb after a bulb change. If the bulb does not work, it may not have been fitted correctly or it may be burnt out again, or the power connector may not be correctly fitted.
14. After every bulb replacement at the front of the vehicle, the headlamp must be adjusted by a Volkswagen dealer or a specialist company.

WARNING

Observing the checklist is essential for the safety of the driver, passengers and other drivers to avoid possible accidents.

- Always follow the actions in the checklist and observe the safety precautions described therein.

NOTICE

Always remove and install the lamps carefully, to avoid damage to the vehicle paintwork or the vehicle's interior.

on other parts of the vehicle.

Burnt-out light bulbs should not be disposed of with household waste, as they may be disposed of as household waste. This is a waste that is potentially harmful to the environment.

In the interests of the environment, Volkswagen recommends that burnt-out bulbs should be disposed of in an environmentally friendly way.
return it to a Volkswagen dealer or a specialised company for environmentally sound disposal in accordance with the specific legal requirements for the handling, storage and disposal of such waste.
nd discarding.

Replace headlight bulbs

Note⚠ and(!) at the beginning of this chapter on page 247.

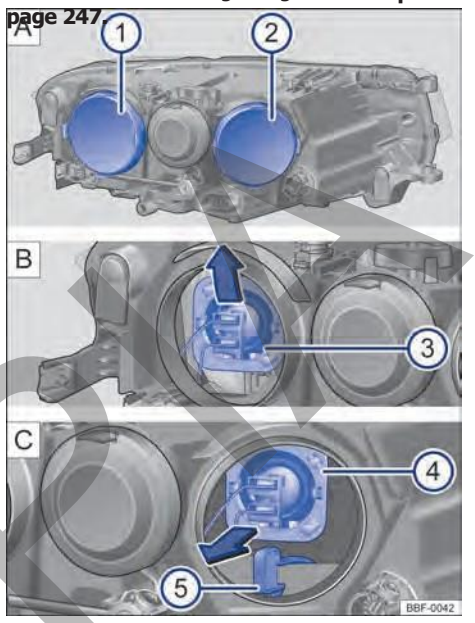


Fig. 185 In the engine compartment: lantern under high beam and position light ① ②

Depending on the vehicle version, the headlight may be LED, in which case we recommend that the headlights be replaced by a Volkswagen dealer.

It is not necessary to dismantle the lamp to change the bulbs.

In the engine compartment, the headlamp is partially covered by other vehicle parts. If in doubt, Volkswagen recommends that you have the bulbs replaced by a Volkswagen Dealer.

Perform the actions only in the sequence indicated.

① Observe the checklist and carry out the actions → p. 248.

② Opening the engine compartment cover → p. 266.

COPY

③ Remove the respective rubber cover → fig. 185 ① e ② at the rear of the lamp.

④ **Dipped beam:** Press the bulb down through the bulb holder until it is released → fig. 185 3 . Remove the bulb by pulling it ① backwards.

High beam: Press the bulb upwards through the bulb holder until it is released → fig. 185 4 . Remove the bulb by pulling it ① backwards.

Turn signals: remove the bulb holder with the incandescent lamp by pulling backwards → fig. 185 ⑤.

⑤ Replace the burnt-out bulb with a new bulb of the same type.

⑥ **Dipped-beam headlamp:** fit the lamp with the connector into the headlamp opening and press it inwards until it locks firmly → fig. 185 ③. The bulb projection must face upwards and be mounted in the reflector socket of the lantern.

High beam: fit the lamp with the connector into the headlamp opening and press it inwards until it locks firmly → fig. 185 ④. The bulb projection must face downwards and be mounted in the reflector socket of the lantern.

Indicator lamps: Insert the bulb holder with the filament lamp into the headlamp as far as it will go → fig. ⑤ 185

⑦ Close the engine compartment cover.

⑧ → p. 266.

⑨ After fitting the new lamp, adjust the intensity of the lantern.

The illustrations show the right lamp from the rear. The left lamp is mounted on the reverse position.

Replace bulb in front bumper - fog lamp

Note ⚠ and ⓘ at the beginning of this chapter on page 247.

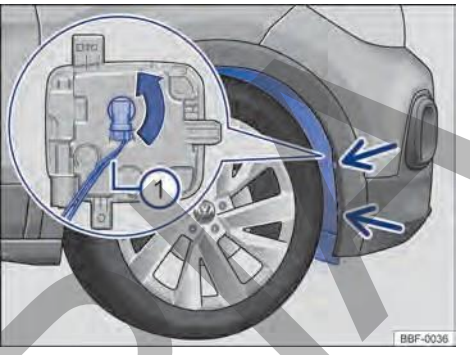


Fig. 186 In the front wheel housing: access to the fog lamp bulb.

The fog lamp is covered by other parts of the vehicle. Volkswagen recommends that, in case of doubt, the fog lamp bulb should be replaced at a Volkswagen Dealer.

Perform the actions only in the sequence indicated.

① Observe the checklist and carry out the actions → p. 248.

② Remove the wheel arch trim fastening screws → fig. 186 (arrows) using a screwdriver.

③ Grasp the mudguard at the edges between the holes of the loose fastening screws and press the mudguard slightly towards the inside of the vehicle in order to release the clip from the inside.

④ Carefully fold the mudguard to the side.

⑤ Unplug the power supply connector from the lamp → fig. 186 1 , ① and at the same time press the locking catch on the connector.

⑥ Turn the bulb holder → fig. 186 (arrow) counterclockwise as far as it will go and remove it from the socket

COPY

7. The fog lamp lamp bulb is fixed in the bulb holder and the bulb and bulb holder assembly must be replaced.
8. Replace the burnt-out bulb with a new bulb of the same type.
9. Press the bulb holder into the lantern and turn it clockwise as far as it will go.
10. Make sure that the lampholder is correctly fixed to the lantern.
11. Fitting the power connector → fig. 186 (1) in the lamp socket, the plug must engage audibly.
12. Refit the wheel housing liner so that the clip inside fits.
13. Replace the fixing screws → fig. 186 (arrows) and adjust them.

NOTICE

Volkswagen recommends that the fog lamp bulb be replaced by a Volkswagen Dealer or a specialised company in order to avoid damage to the vehicle.

In the case of the fog lamp with daytime running light with LED technology, it is not possible to LED replacement. Find a Volkswagen dealer or a specialised company.

Replace the bulbs in the tail lamp in the bodywork

Note ⚠ and ⓘ at the beginning of this chapter on page 247.

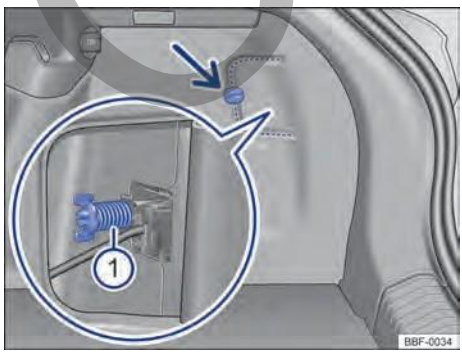


Fig. 187 In the luggage compartment: remove the cover and re-pull the wing nut (1) (enlarged section).

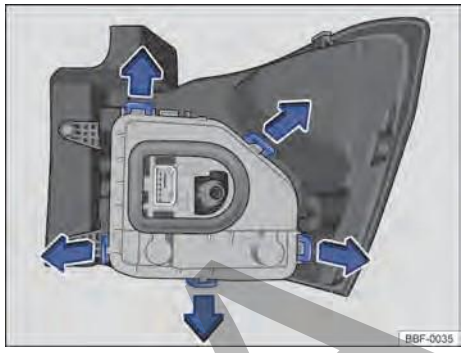


Fig. 188 Tail lamp: Remove the lamp holder.

Perform the actions only in the sequence indicated.

1. Observe the checklist and carry out the actions → p. 248.
2. Open the rear cover → p. 71.
3. To open the light cover, turn the lock to open it. → fig. 187 (arrow).
4. Open the cover together with the lock to the side.
5. Loosen the thumbscrew (1) (enlarged section) and remove it, holding the rear lamp at the same time.
6. Carefully pull the tail lamp outwards, in order to detach it from the bodywork. →ⓘ.
7. Unplug the power connector from the lantern lamps, to completely remove the lantern.
8. Place the rear torch on a clean, smooth surface.
9. To unlock the lamp bracket, press down each locking tab → fig. 188 in the direction of the arrows.
10. Carefully remove the bulb holder.
11. To remove burnt-out bulbs, press the bulb against the housing and turn it counterclockwise.
12. Replace the burnt-out bulb with a new bulb of the same type.
13. To insert new bulbs into the lamp holder, insert the new bulb into the bulb socket. Press the bulb in and turn it clockwise until the bulb is in the socket. stop.

COPIA

(14) Make sure that the lamps are correctly fixed in the holder.

(15) Install the lamp bracket on the rear lantern. The locking tabs → fig. 188must fit audibly. Insert the power

(16) connector into the light.

(17) Fit the tail lamp carefully into the housing in the body.

(18) Hold the rear light in the mounting position with one hand and tighten the wing screw → fig. 187 1 with the other hand.

(19) Return the lantern cover to its position and turn the lock to close.

(20) Close the rear cover → p. 71.

NOTICE

bodywork carefully, avoiding damage to the vehicle paintwork or other vehicle parts.

- Volkswagen recommends that special care be taken with some plastic parts that have clips, which can break during removal or installation of the lamps.

Troubleshooting

Note⚠ and⓵ at the beginning of this chapter on page 247.

Depending on the vehicle version, the lighting control lamp may not be available.

Lighting

Central indicator light

O and additional text messages Te driving ilu- menu does not work partially or completely.

Check the vehicle lighting and, if necessary, replace the corresponding bulb.
→ If all bulbs are in order or if there is a fault, please contact your dealer.
Volkswagen or a specialised company.

Fuses

Introduction to the topic

Basically, several consumers can be protected together by one fuse. On the other hand, it is also possible that several fuses belong to one consumer.

Replace fuses only after the cause of the fault has been eliminated. If a new fuse blows again after a short period of time, the electrical system must be checked by a Volkswagen dealer or a specialised company.

WARNING

High voltage in the electrical system can cause electric shock, severe burns and death!

- Never lean on the electrical conductors of the ignition system.
- Avoid short circuits in the electrical system.

WARNING

Using improper fuses, repairing fuses and jumpering an electrical circuit without fuses can cause fire and serious injury.

- Never install fuses with a higher current rating. Replace fuses only with fuses of the same current rating (same colour and inscription) and the same size.
- Never repair fuses.
- Never replace fuses with a fuse strip, office clip or similar object.

NOTICE

- To prevent damage to the vehicle's electrical system, before changing a fuse, the ignition, lights and all electrical switches must be switched off and the vehicle key must be out of the ignition lock.
- If a fuse is replaced by a larger fuse, damage may also occur in other parts of the electrical system

COPY

- Open fuse boxes must be protected against ingress of dirt and moisture. Impurities and moisture in the fuse boxes can cause damage to the electrical system.

Several fuses can belong to one consumidor.

Several consumers can be protected together by a fuse

Fuses on instrument panel

Note⚠ and ⓘ at the beginning of this chapter on page 252.

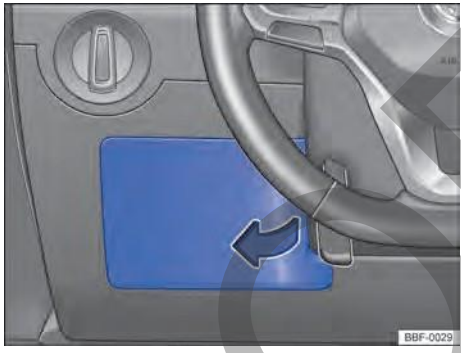


Fig. 189 On the driver's side of the instrument panel: fuse box cover.

Replace fuses only with fuses of the same current rating (same colour and marking) and the same size.

Opening the instrument panel fuse box

– Supporting the fuse box cover → fig. 189 and pull forward.
– To *install*, place the cover on the instrument panel housing and press until it audibly locks.

NOTICE

- Carefully remove fuse box covers and reinstall correctly to avoid damage to the vehicle.

- Open fuse boxes must be protected against ingress of dirt and moisture. Impurities and moisture in the fuse boxes can cause damage to the system.
electric.

Fuse box in instrument panel

Note⚠ and ⓘ at the beginning of this chapter on page 252.

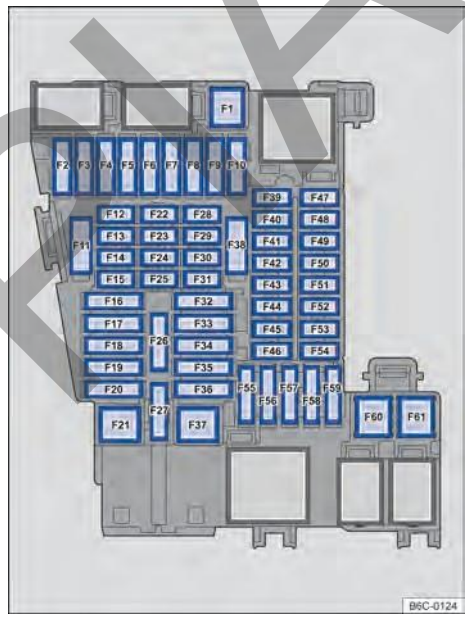


Fig. 190 On the instrument panel: arrangement of the fuses.

Some of the fuses listed may be version-specific.

Below are the locations with their respective functions for the equipment that may be available for your vehicle:

F1 Free
F2 USB Mobile Phone Charger (Univer- sal Dock Station)
F3 Sound amplifier
F4 Free
F5 Electric sunroof
F6 Central locking

COPIA

F7 Free
F8 Interior ventilation (Climatronic)
F9 Free
F10 Free
F11 Free
F12 Free
F13 Diagnostic socket / Rain and light sensor / Headlamp flasher lever / Light rotary switch
F14 Windscreen wiper / window washer / window washer lever
F15 Combined instrument
F16 Vehicle exterior lighting - right hand side
F17 Electric glass activation - front right / Electric glass activation - rear right / Electric exterior rear-view mirror - right side / Lowering of the right-hand exterior rear-view mirror (tilt-down)
Windscreen
wipers Radio
F18 Window defroster
F19 Ignition lock / starter motor solenoid
F20 (ignition lock starter)
F21 Free
Reversing camera
Radio display with navigation system
F22 Multifunction steering
F23 wheel Free
F24 Free
Ultrasonic sensor (alarm) Free
F25 Free
F26 Climatronic control unit Air-conditioning
F27 control unit Ignition lock
F27 Electric window activation - front left /
F28 Electric window activation - rear left /
F29 Electric exterior rear view mirror - left-
F29 hand side
F30 Free
F31 Vehicle exterior lighting - left-hand side
o Free
F32 Horn
F33 Electronic control unit

F34
F35

F36
F37
F38

F39 Station sensor control unit
Headlamp switch / Reversing lamp switch
F40 / Diagnostic socket / Interior rear-view mirror / Reversing lamp / Headlamp range adjustment switch
Free
Clutch sensor / Start-assist relay 1 / Start-
F41 assist relay 2 / Air conditioning pre-switch
F42 Windscreen wiper
Airbag system
Free
F43 Free
F44 Free
F44 Keyless Access control unit Free
F45 Free
F46 Free
F46 Front LED headlamp - right side
F47 Automatic transmission selector lever /
F47 Key removal lock
F48 of the ignition lock (for vehicles only)
F49 vehicles with automatic transmission and
F50 without Keyless Access)
F51 LED headlamp - left side 12 V power
F52 socket Interior ventilation
F53 Free
Windscreen washer /
windscreen wiper Free
Free
Free
F54
F55
F56
F57
F57
F58
F59
F59
F60
F61

SOFIA

Fuses in the engine compartment of the engine compartment

Note⚠ and(!) at the beginning of this chapter on page 252.

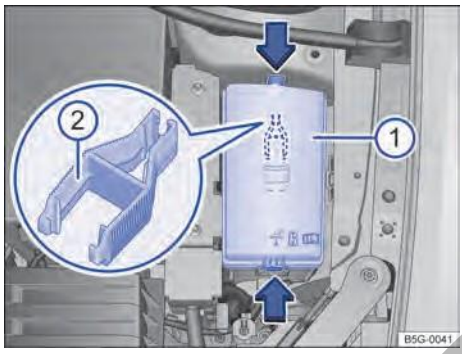


Fig. 191 In the engine compartment: fuse box ① cover with plastic clip 2 .

Open the fuse box in the engine compartment.

– Opening the engine compartment cover → p. 266.
– Press the lock in the direction of the arrow → fig. 191①, to unlock the fuse box cover.
– Remove the cover from the top.
– For *installation*, place the cover over the fuse box and press it down until the cover locks audibly on both sides.

On the inside of the fuse box cover in the engine compartment there is a plastic clip → Fig. 191 for removing the fuses. ②

! NOTICE

- Carefully remove the covers from the fuse boxes and reinstall correctly to prevent damage to the vehicle.
- Open fuse boxes must be protected from damage. The fuse boxes must be protected against the penetration of impurities and moisture. Contamination and moisture in the fuse boxes can cause damage to the system. electric.

Fuse box in engine compartment

Note⚠ and(!) at the beginning of this chapter on page 252.

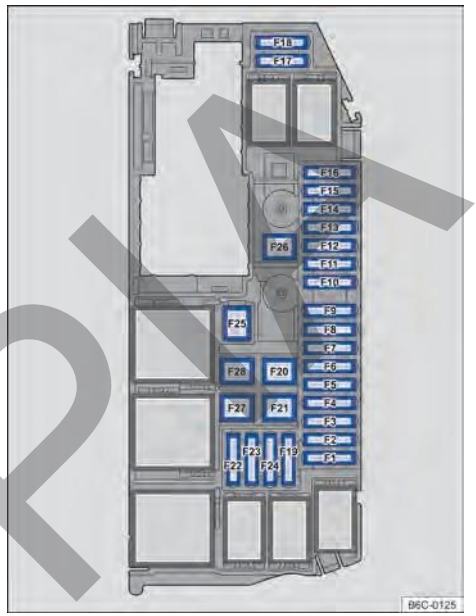


Fig. 192 In the engine compartment: Fuse arrangement.

Some of the fuses listed may be version-specific.

Below are the locations with their respective functions for the equipment that may be available for your vehicle:

F1 Engine control unit
F2 Fuel metering valve / Water pump
F3 Pre-catalyst lambda sensor / Post-catalyst lambda sensor
F4 Fuel pump
F5 Radiator fan - electronic / Oil pressure control valve / Variable control shaft - intake / Variable control shaft - exhaust / Activated carbon filter valve / Ethanol sensor
Ignition coil
F6 Vacuum pump
F7

COPY

F8 Fuel pump relay (MPI engine) / Fuel injector valves Brake pedal sensor
F9 Electronic control unit Free
F10 Free
F11 Free
F11 Injection System Main Relay / Engine
F12 Control Unit / ABS/ESC Control Unit
F13 Automatic transmission control unit.
F13 Free
F14 Assisted start
Assisted starting (starter motor) Free
ESC control unit ESC
F15 control unit Free
Free
F16 Free
F17 Radiator fan - 1st speed (MPI motor)
F18 Radiator fan
F19 Radiator fan - 2nd speed (MPI motor)
F20 Free
F20
F21
F22
F23
F24
F25
F26
F27
F28

WARNING

Before working in the engine compartment, always read and observe the warning notes → p. 263, *Safety instructions for working in the engine compartment*. The engine compartment of all vehicles is a hazardous area and can cause serious injuries.

Fuse box in the engine compartment on the battery

Note⚠ and ⓘ at the beginning of this chapter on page 252.

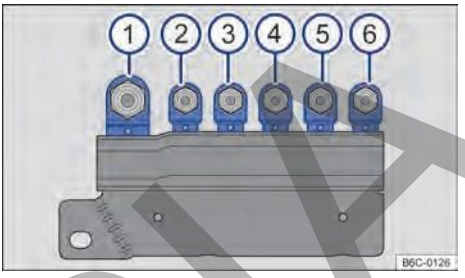


Fig. 193 In the engine compartment above the battery: arrangement of the fuses.

The fuses are located in the engine compartment above the vehicle battery. →⚠.

Fuses in the engine compartment may only be replaced by a specialised company. Volkswagen recommends Volkswagen Dealers for this purpose.

Below are the locations with their respective functions and current ratings in Amps for the equipment that may be available for your vehicle:

① **350 A**, alternator.
② **80 A**, free.
③ **150 A**, power supply to engine compartment fuse box.
④ **80 A**, supply 2 from the fuse box in the instrument panel.
⑤ **125 A**, supply 1 from the fuse box in the instrument panel.
⑥ **80 A**, power steering.

Before working in the engine compartment, always read and observe the warning notes → p. 263, *Safety instructions for working in the engine compartment*. The engine compartment of all vehicles is a hazardous area and can cause serious injuries.

COPIA

Replace blown fuses

Note⚠ and(!) at the beginning of this chapter on page 252.

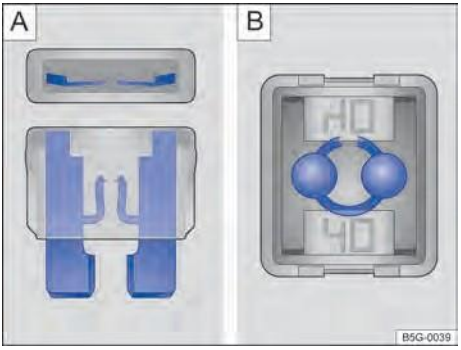


Fig. 194 Blown fuse: flat fuse, locking fuse.

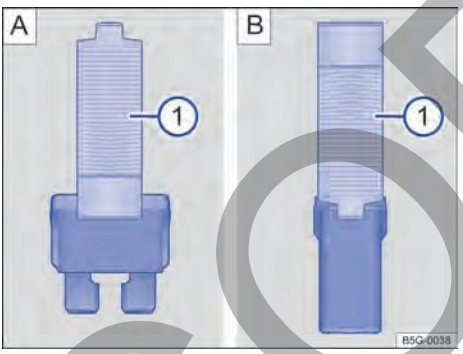


Fig. 195 Remove or insert the fuse with the plastic clip: flat fuse, : locking fuse.

Fuse versions

– Standard flat fuse (ATO®).
– Small flat fuse (MINI®).
– Locking fuse (JCASE®).

Fuse colour identification

Fuses (ATO - MINI)

Colour *Rated current in ampere*
black 1 A **light**
brown 5 A
brown 7,5 A
red 10 A
blue 15 A
yellow 20 A
white or colourless 25 A
green 30 A
orange 40 A

Fuses (JCASE)

Colour *Rated current in ampere*
blue 20 A
white or colourless 25 A
pink 30 A
green 40 A
red 50 A
yellow 60 A

Preparations

– Switch off ignition, lights and all electrical consumers.
– Open the relevant fuse box → page 253.

Recognising blown fuses

– Illuminate the fuse with a torch. This makes it easier to recognise a blown fuse .
– A blown *flat fuse (ATO®, MINI®)* is visible from above or from the side through the transparent casing in the melted metal strips → fig. 194 .
– A blown *blocking fuse (JCASE®)* is re- known by the melted metal strips from the top of the transparent housing.
→ fig. 194 .

Change the fuse

– If necessary, remove the plastic clip.
→ fig. 195 (1) of the fuse-box cover bles.
– Depending on the version of the fuse, fit the appropriate jaws of the plastic pliers.
→ fig. 195 o (1)fig. 195 de sideways on the fuse.
– Remove the blown fuse.
– If the fuse is blown, replace the fuse with a new *fuse* of the *same* current rating (same colour and marking) and size →(!) .
– After fitting the new fuse, if necessary, place the plastic clip back in the cover.
– Install the fuse box cover.

COPIA

NOTICE

If a fuse is replaced by a fuse with a higher rating, it is possible to replace the fuse with a fuse with a higher rating.
damage to other parts of the electrical s
ystem may occur.

Start-up aid

Introduction to the topic

If the engine does not start because the vehicle's 12 V battery is discharged, it is possible to use the 12 V battery of another vehicle to start the engine.

The discharged battery must be correctly connected to the vehicle's electrical system.

Auxiliary jumper cables shall be appropriate and of sufficient length to keep vehicles away.

WARNING

Improper use of jump leads and improperly performed starting aid can cause vehicle battery explosion and serious injury. To reduce the risk of vehicle battery explosion, observe the following:

- All work on the vehicle battery and electrical system can cause severe burns, fires and electric shocks. Before any work on the vehicle battery, always read and observe the following safety warnings and precautions → p. 278, *Vehicle battery*.
- The battery of the power supply vehicle must have the same voltage (12 V) and approximately the same capacity (see recording on the vehicle battery) as the discharged vehicle battery.
- Never charge a frozen or defrosted vehicle battery. A discharged vehicle battery can be charged in temperatures of around 0 °C.
- A frozen or thawed vehicle battery must be replaced.
- During starting assistance, a highly explosive detonating gas mixture forms in the vehicle battery. Keep fire, sparks, open flames and lighted cigarettes away from the vehicle battery.
- Always keep the jump leads away from the vehicle's battery. Never use a mobile phone while the jump leads are connected and disconnected.
- Charge the vehicle battery only in well-ventilated areas, as a highly explosive gas mixture is formed during the starting aid.
- Auxiliary jumper cables must never come into contact with rotating parts in the engine compartment.
- Never confuse the positive pole with the negative pole or connect the auxiliary jumper cables incorrectly.
- Observe the operating instructions of the manufacturer of the auxiliary jumper cable.

NOTICE

To avoid considerable damage to the vehicle's electrical system, observe the following:

- Incorrectly connected auxiliary jumper cables can cause a short- circuit.
- There must be no contact between the vehicles, otherwise there may be current flow when the positive poles are connected.

Starting aid point (grounding point)

Note⚠ and ⓘ at the beginning of this chapter on page 258.

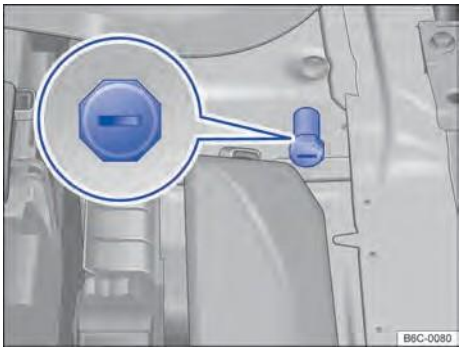


Fig. 196 In the engine compartment: starting aid p
oint (earthing point) .

COPY

In the engine compartment, there is an auxiliary starting point - located in the inner wheel arch on the engine side, for connecting the *black* auxiliary starting cable → fig. 196.

The starting aid point is not dimensioned for external starting aids from other vehicles.

Execute the starting aid (grounding point) only via this grounding aid point.
boot.

Running the start-up aid

Note⚠ and(!) at the beginning of this chapter on page 258.

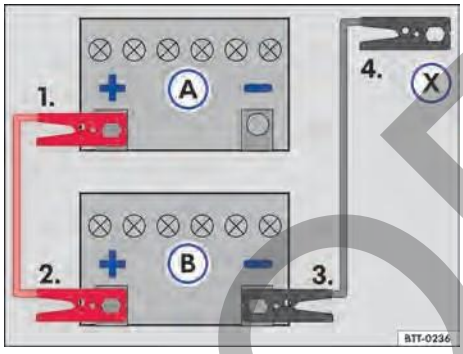


Fig. 197 Diagram for connection of the auxiliary jump leads: discharged vehicle battery and vehicle Ⓐ battery supplying current Ⓑ.

Legend for → fig. 197:

Ⓐ Vehicle with discharged vehicle battery receiving starting assistance.

Ⓑ Vehicle with the battery supplying current gives starting aid.

Ⓧ Suitable earthing point: starting aid point (earthing point) or a solid piece of metal screwed firmly to the engine block.

The discharged vehicle battery must be properly connected to the on-board power supply.

The vehicles must not rest against each other. Otherwise a current may flow when the positive pole is connected.

Ensure that the metal contact of the clamps connected to the poles is satisfactory.

If the engine does not start, interrupt the starting process after 10 seconds and repeat it after about one minute.

Connecting the auxiliary jumper cable

Connect the auxiliary jumper wire only in the sequence **1 - 2 - 3 - 4** → fig. 197.

– Switch off the ignition in both vehicles → p. 112.

– Open the positive pole cover.

– Connect one end of the *red* jump lead to the positive (+) pole of the vehicle with the vehicle battery discharged. da → fig. 197Ⓐ→⚠.

– Connect the other end of the *red* auxiliary jumper cable to the positive (+) pole of the vehicle supplying current Ⓑ.

– Connect one end of the *black* auxiliary jump lead to the negative terminal of the vehicle battery supplying current B.

– Connect the other end of the jumper cable *black* auxiliaryⓍ to the vehicle with the battery discharged at a starting aid point (earthing point) or a solid piece of metal bolted securely to the engine block, however, not near the battery Ⓐ →⚠.

- Arrange the wires of the auxiliary starting cable so that they do not come into contact with rotating parts in the engine compartment.

Starting the engine

– Switch on the engine of the vehicle supplying power and let it run at idle speed.

– Switch on the vehicle engine with the vehicle battery discharged and wait two to three minutes until the engine "runs smoothly".

Remove the auxiliary jumper cable

– Before disconnecting the ignition cable, disconnect the low beam, if connected.

– Connect the air conditioning and window defroster when the vehicle battery is discharged to reduce voltage peaks when disconnecting the cables

COPIA

– Disconnect the auxiliary starter cable with the engine running exactly in the sequence **4 - 3 - 2 - 1**.
– Close the positive terminal cover.

⚠ WARNING

An incorrectly executed starting aid can lead to an explosion of the vehicle battery and serious injury. To reduce the risk of an explosion of the vehicle battery, please observe the following. :

- All work on the vehicle's battery and electrical system can cause severe burns, fires and electric shocks. . Before any work on the vehicle battery, always read and observe the following safety warnings and precautions → p. 278, *Vehicle battery*.
- Make sure that there are no persons inside the vehicle when connecting the auxiliary cables to the battery. In the event of an electrical fault, the airbags may be triggered accidentally, resulting in serious or even fatal injuries to the vehicle occupants.
- Always wear suitable eye protection and never lean over the vehicle battery.
- Connect the wires in the correct sequence - positive wire first, then negative wire.
- Never attach the negative cable to parts of the fuel system or brake pipes.
- Non-insulated parts of the pole clamps must not touch each other. In addition, the cable attached to the positive pole of the vehicle's battery must not come into contact with live parts of the vehicle.
- Check the vehicle's battery indicator and, if necessary, use a torch. If it is light yellow or colourless, do not use the starting aid and seek specialised technical assistance.
- Avoid electrostatic discharges on the vehicle battery in- mediations. Detonating gas escaping from the vehicle battery can be ignited by the formation of sparks.
- Never run the starting aid if the vehicle's trunk is damaged, frozen or has been thawed.

NOTICE

An incorrectly connected auxiliary jumper cable can cause considerable damage.
in the vehicle's electrical system.

Towing

Introduction to the topic

When towing, observe the legal regulations.

A vehicle with a discharged battery must not be towed for technical reasons.

For technical reasons, the vehicle must not be started. Instead, use the starting aid → p. 258.

A vehicle with automatic transmission must not be towed for technical reasons unless it can be ensured that the transmission is in the N → p. 261 **position.**

When towing the vehicle with the engine switched off and the ignition switched on, the vehicle battery is discharged depending on the charge of the vehicle battery, after only a few minutes the voltage drop may be so great that no electrical consumers inside the vehicle, e.g. warning lights, will function.

⚠ WARNING

Never tow a vehicle without 12 V electrical current.

- Never remove the vehicle key from the ignition.
- If, during the towing process, the vehicle should lose 12 V electrical power, immediately stop the towing operation and seek specialist technical assistance.

COPIA

⚠ WARNING

When towing a vehicle, the steering behaviour and braking efficiency change considerably. To reduce the risk of an accident or serious injury, please note the following:

- As the driver of the towed vehicle:
  - To brake, more force is required on the pedal, because the brake booster is not actuating. Always be careful not to collide with the towing vehicle.
  - More force must be used to steer the vehicle, as the power steering does not work when the engine is switched off.
- As the driver of the towing vehicle:
  - Accelerate particularly cautiously and carefully.
  - Avoid sudden steering and braking manoeuvres.
  - Brake earlier than usual and with more gentle pressure on the pedal.

! *NOTICE*

- Carefully uninstall and install the towing cover and towing eye, so as not to damage the vehicle, e.g. the vehicle's paintwork.
- Unburned fuel can damage the ca- taliser and damage it while towing

Before towing

Please note⚠ and! at the beginning of this chapter on page 260.

Whenever it is necessary to tow your vehicle, use a specialised towing service, using a trailer truck or flatbed.

If a trailer truck is used, the vehicle must be safely supported by the front wheels. Ensure that the vehicle is in neutral and the parking brake lever is released.

! *NOTICE*

Always comply with current traffic legislation on the towing procedure

Towing guidelines

Please note⚠ and! at the beginning of this chapter on page 260.

Rigid tow bar

The best and safest way to tow is with a rigid tow bar.

Fasten the rigid tow bar only to the towing eyes intended for this purpose or to the towing device.

When the manual transmission vehicle itself needs to be towed:

Check if the vehicle can be towed → p. 261, *When is it not possible to tow the vehicle*?

- Put the gear lever in neutral.
- Do not allow towing above 50 km/h.
- No towing below 50 km/h

When the automatic transmission vehicle itself needs to be towed:

Check if the vehicle can be towed → p. 261, *When is it not possible to tow the vehicle*?

- Switch on the ignition.
- Move the selector lever to the **N** position. → p. 120.
- Do not allow towing above 50 km/h.
- No towing below 50 km/h
- With the winch, the vehicle can be winched with only the front wheels raised.

When is it not possible to tow the vehicle?

- If, due to a breakdown, the vehicle's gearbox is out of lubricant
- When the 12 V vehicle battery is discharged, because in vehicles with Keyless Access locking and starting system, the steering remains locked and the steering column lock cannot be unlocked.
- If the towing distance is more than 50 km.
- If, for example, after an accident the freedom of the wheels or the operation of the steering wheel cannot be guaranteed

COPIA

NOTICE

Only tow a vehicle with an automatic transmission if the selector lever is in the **N** position.

The vehicle can only be towed if the parking brake is released.

Fitting the towing eye front

Please note ⚠ and ⓘ at the beginning of this chapter on page 260.

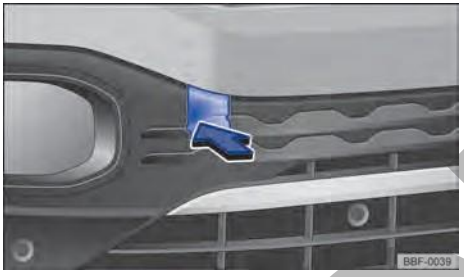


Fig. 198 On the right-hand front bumper: Release and remove the cover.

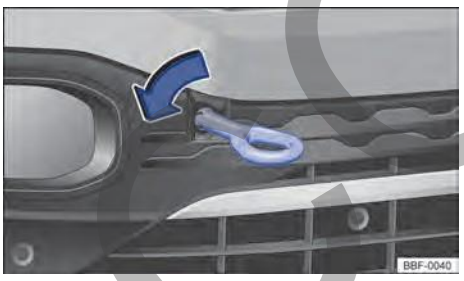


Fig. 199 On the right-hand front bumper: Screw in the towing eye.

The threaded towing eye mounting is located on the right-hand side of the front bumper, behind a cover → fig. 198.

Please note the following tips for re-moulding → p. 262.

Fitting the front towing eye

– Remove the towing eye from the on-board toolbox in the luggage compartment. → p. 244.

– Press on the lower area of the cover → fig. 198 ① to release the lock on the cover. ta.

- Remove the forward-facing ② and leave it cover hung on the vehicle.

– Screw the towing eye as tightly as possible **counterclockwise** into the housing → fig. 199 ① → ⓘ . Use a suitable object so that the towing eye can be screwed firmly into the housing.

– After the towing procedure, turn the towing eye **clockwise**.

– Insert the lower tab of the cover into the opening of the bumper and pull the upper tab carefully towards the edge of the opening, if necessary, press the upper tab upwards.

– Press the upper area of the cover until the lower tab locks into the bumper.

NOTICE

The towing eye must always be screwed firmly and completely into the mounting. Otherwise, the towing eye can be pulled out of its housing during towing.

Tips for driving when towing

Please note ⚠ and ⓘ at the beginning of this chapter on page 260.

Towing a vehicle requires some practice, especially when using a rigid tow bar. Both drivers must be familiar with the peculiarities of the towing process. Therefore, drivers without practice should not tow.

When driving, make sure that inadmissible tensile forces and excessive jolting stresses

a

re not generated. When manoeuvring

COPIA

trailer away from paved roads, there is always a risk of overloading the mounting parts.

If the vehicle is towed with the hazard warning lights on and the ignition switched on, it is possible to indicate the direction in which the vehicle is to be turned. Operate the direction indicator lever in the desired direction. The warning light is interrupted while the direction indicators are being used. As soon as the direction indicator lever is back in the neutral position, the warning light is automatically activated.

Driver of the towed vehicle:

- Leave the ignition switched on so that the steering wheel does not lock and the direction indicators, horn, windscreen wipers and window washers can be switched on.
- As the power steering does not work when the engine is switched off, more force must be applied to steer.
- To brake, more force is needed on the brake pedal, because the brake servo is not working. Do not collide with the towing vehicle:
- Observe the information and instructions in the manual of the vehicle to be towed.

Driver of the towing vehicle:

- Accelerate particularly cautiously and carefully. Avoid sudden steering manoeuvres.
- Brake earlier than usual and with more gentle pressure on the pedal.
- Please note the information and indications in the Towed Vehicle Manual

Verification and replenishment

In the engine compartment

Safety guidelines for work in the engine compartment

Before any work on the engine or engine compartment, always park the vehicle safely on a firm, level surface.

The engine compartment of a vehicle is a hazardous area. Never carry out work on the engine or engine compartment without knowledge of the necessary actions and generally valid safety precautions, as well as the appropriate resources, fluids and tools available →⚠ . If necessary, have all work carried out by a Volkswagen dealer or a specialist company. Improper work may result in serious injury.

WARNING

Unintentional movement of the vehicle during maintenance work can cause serious injuries.

- Never work under the vehicle when it is not secured against movement. If it is necessary to work under the vehicle while the wheels are in contact with the ground, the vehicle must be stopped on level ground, the wheels must be locked and the vehicle key must be out of the ignition lock.
- If it is necessary to work underneath the vehicle, it must be additionally supported by suitable stands. The jack is not sufficient for this purpose and may fail, resulting in serious injury.
- The Start-Stop system must be deactivated at regular intervals.

COPIA

⚠ WARNING

The engine compartment of any vehicle is a dangerous area and can cause serious injury!

- In all work, always be extremely cautious and careful and observe the generally applicable safety precautions. Never take personal risk.
- Only carry out work on the engine and engine compartment if you are familiar with the necessary actions. If there is any uncertainty about what to do, the necessary work must be carried out by a Volkswagen dealer or a specialist company. Serious injury can result from work carried out incorrectly.
- Never open or close the engine compartment cover while steam or coolant is escaping. Hot vapour or coolant can cause severe burns. Always wait until no more vapour or coolant is visible coming out of the engine compartment.
- Always allow the engine to cool down before opening the engine compartment cover.
- Hot parts of the engine or exhaust system can burn the skin if touched.
- When the engine has cooled down, the following must be observed before opening the engine compartment cover:
  - Apply the parking brake and move the selector lever to position **P** or the gearshift lever to neutral.
  - Switch off the ignition and remove the vehicle key from the ignition lock.
  - Always keep children away from the engine compartment and under the supervision of adults.
- When the engine is hot, the engine cooling system is under pressure. Never open the cap on the engine coolant reservoir when the engine is running. If this is done, coolant may splash out and cause burns and other serious injuries.
  - After cooling, turn the lid slowly and carefully in a counterclockwise direction while pressing the lid slightly downwards.
  - Always protect your face, hands and arms from hot coolant or steam with a large, thick cloth.
- When refuelling, do not spill fluids on engine parts or the exhaust system. Spilled fluids can cause fires.

⚠ WARNING

High voltage in the electrical system can cause electric shock, burns, serious injury and death!

- Never short-circuit the electrical system. The vehicle battery could explode.
- To reduce the risk of electric shock and serious injury, observe the following while the engine is running or when starting:
  - Never lean on the electrical conductors of the ignition system.
  - Never lean on the power cables.

⚠ WARNING

There are rotating parts in the engine compartment that can cause serious injury.

- Never rest on the radiator fan area or directly on the fan. Contact with the rotor blades can cause serious injuries. The fan is temperature-controlled and can be activated on its own - even when the ignition is switched off or without the vehicle key in the ignition switch.
- If work has to be carried out during the starting process or while the engine is running, there is a danger to life from rotating parts, e.g. the timing belt or poly-v-belt, the generator and radiator fan, and from the high-voltage ignition system. Always act with extreme caution.
  - Always ensure that no parts of the body, jewellery, ties, loose clothing and long hair can come into contact with rotating parts.

COPIA

engine. Before work, always remove jewellery and ties, tie up long hair, and press all clothing parts tightly against the body to prevent them from being caught by engine parts.

- Always operate the accelerator pedal with caution and never inattentively. The vehicle may start moving even when the parking brake is applied.

- Do not leave any objects such as cleaning cloths or tools in the engine compartment. Objects left behind can cause malfunctions, engine damage and fire.

WARNING

Additional insulation, such as covering the engine compartment, may impair engine operation, cause fire and result in serious injury.

- Never cover the engine with covers or other insulation.

WARNING

Fluids and some materials in the engine compartment are highly flammable and can cause fire and serious injury!

- Never smoke in the vicinity of the engine compartment.
- Never work in the vicinity of open flames or sparks.
- Never spill fluids on the engine. They can catch fire with hot engine parts and cause injury.
- If work is to be carried out on the fuel system or electrical system, observe the following:
  - Always disconnect the battery from the vehicle. Ensure that the vehicle is unlocked when the vehicle's battery is disconnected, otherwise the alarm system will be activated.
  - Never work in the vicinity of hot parts, space heaters or other open flames.

NOTICE

When changing or replenishing fluids, ensure that the fluids are in the correct containers. Incorrect fluids can cause serious operating deficiencies and engine damage.

Fluids that are spilled from the vehicle are harmful to the environment.

For this reason, periodically check the floor under the vehicle. If oil or other fluid stains are visible on the floor, have the floor inspected. the vehicle to a Volkswagen Dealer.

Preparing the vehicle for work in the engine compartment

Checklist

Always perform the following actions at the indicated intervals before any work in the engine compartment →⚠ :

Park the vehicle on a firm, level surface.

Depress the brake pedal and hold it until the engine is switched off.

Pull the parking brake → p. 132.

Put the gearshift lever in neutral → p. 118 or the selector lever in position **P** → p. 120.

Switch off the engine and remove the vehicle key from the ignition switch.

Allow the engine to cool down sufficiently.

Keep children and others away from the engine compartment at all times.

Ensure that the vehicle cannot be unexpectedly moved.

⚠

Observing the checklist is essential for the safety of the driver, passengers and other drivers to avoid possible accidents.

- Always follow the actions in the checklist and observe the safety precautions described therein.

COPIA

Opening and closing the engine compartment

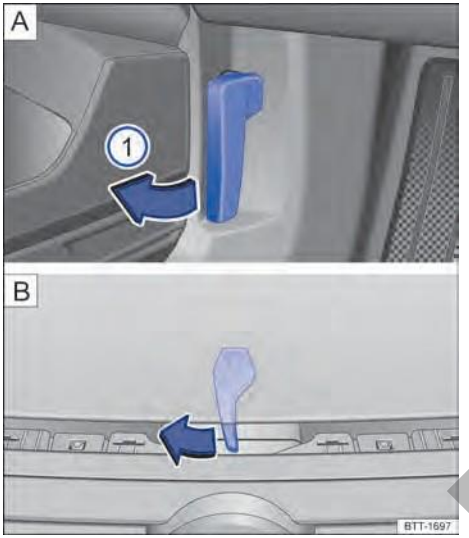


Fig. 200 Engine compartment lid release lever in the driver's footwell. Release lever on the inside of the engine compartment lid.

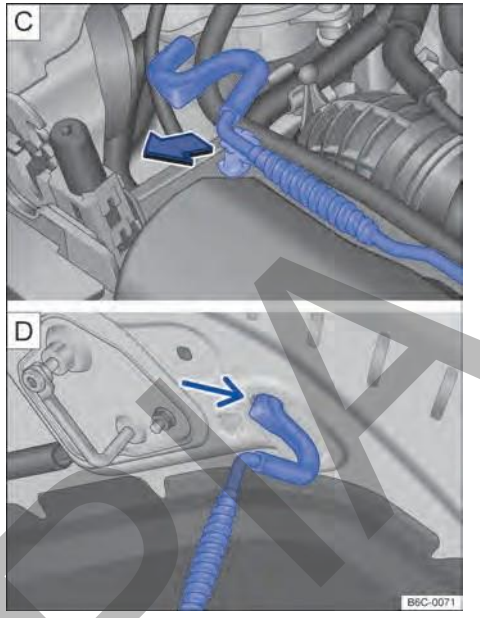


Fig. 201 Engine compartment cover retaining rod. Engine compartment cover resting on the retaining rod.

Opening the engine compartment cover

– Before opening the engine compartment cover, make sure that the wiper arms are resting on the windscreen wiper →ⓘ .

– Open the driver's door and pull the release lever in the direction of the arrow → fig. 200 1 . The engine compartment cover springs out of the locking catch under spring pressure →⚠ .

– Lift the engine compartment cover slightly and at the same time press the release lever in the direction of the arrow. → fig. 200 2, located on the inside of the cover, to open the engine compartment cover completely.

– Remove the retaining rod from the bracket in the direction of the arrow → fig. 201 and insert it into the opening of the engine compartment cover → fig. 201 .

COPY

Close the engine compartment cover

– Lift the cover of the engine compartment → ⚠ .
– Remove the clamping rod from the bore hole → fig. 201 and fit it into the blind bracket → fig. 201 .
– Release the engine compartment cover from a height of approx. 20 cm in the area of the locking catch - do *not* press!

If the engine compartment cover does not close, open it again and close it properly.

The closed engine compartment cover is correctly aligned with the adjacent body parts.

WARNING

When the engine compartment cover is open and held by the retaining rod, do not lean on or apply closing force to the cover, as the rod will be damaged and may cause serious injury.

⚠

WARNING

An improperly closed engine compartment cover can open suddenly while driving and block the view ahead. This can lead to accidents and serious injuries.

- After closing the engine compartment cover, check that the lock is correctly engaged in the latch. The engine compartment cover must be aligned with the adjacent body parts.
- If you notice while driving that the engine compartment cover is not closed properly, stop immediately and close the engine compartment cover.
- Open or close the engine compartment cover only if there is no one in its opening position.

NOTICE

To avoid damage to the engine compartment cover and wiper arms, only open the engine compartment cover with the wipers folded down.

Display indication



Fig. 202 On the display of the combination instrument: engine compartment cover open or closed incorrectly (schematic representation).

Depending on the vehicle version, the representation of the engine compartment cover in the display may not be available.

A symbolic representation → fig. 202 on the display of the combined instrument panel indicates that the engine compartment cover is open or closed correctly.

Do not continue! If necessary, suspend the engine compartment cover again and close it.

The display is also visible when the ignition is switched off, and is cleared a few minutes after the vehicle is locked with the doors closed.

WARNING

Ignoring warning signs can lead to vehicle stoppages in traffic, accidents and serious injuries.

- Never ignore warning notes.
- Stop the vehicle as soon as possible in a safe place.

According to the model of the combined instrument, the representation can vary of the symbols.

COPY

Fluids and resources

All fluids and resources are constantly being improved, e.g. belts, tyres, engine coolant, engine oils, as well as ignition candles and the vehicle battery. For this reason, the replacement of fluids and resources should be carried out by a Volkswagen Dealer or a specialised company. . The Volkswagen Dealers are always informed about changes.

WARNING

Inappropriate fluids and resources, as well as their incorrect use, can cause accidents, serious injuries, burns and poisoning.

- Store fluids only in original closed containers.
- Never use empty food cans, bottles or other empty containers to store fluids, as there is a risk that the stored fluid may be ingested by others.
- Keep fluids and resources away from children.
- Always read and pay attention to the information and warnings on the packaging of the fluids.
- Always use products emitting toxic vapours in open or well ventilated areas.
- Never use fuel, turpentine, engine oil, nail polish remover or other volatile liquids to maintain the vehicle. These substances are toxic and highly flammable. These can cause fires and explosions!

NOTICE

- Only replenish with suitable fluids. Under no circumstances should fluids other than those recommended be used. Otherwise, serious malfunctions or damage to the engine may occur!
- Accessories and parts installed in front of the air inlet impair the cooling of the engine. In conditions of high ambient temperature and high engine demand, the engine may overheat!

Fluids that are spilled from the vehicle are harmful to the environment.

For this reason, periodically check the floor under the vehicle. If oil or other fluid stains are visible on the floor, have the floor inspected. the vehicle to a Volkswagen Dealer.

Glasswashing water

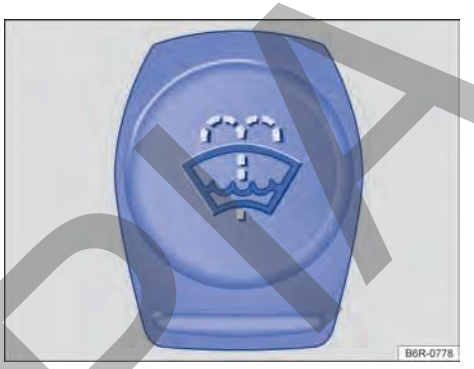


Fig. 203 In the engine compartment: sealing plug for the glasswasher water tank.

Regularly check the water level in the glasswasher tank and top up if necessary.

– Opening the engine compartment cover → p. 263.
– The water tank of the window washer can be recognised by the symbol on the stopper → fig. 203.
– Check whether there is enough water in the glasswasher tank.
– For refilling, mix clean water with a cleaning agent recommended by Volkswagen →. Observe the mixing instructions on the packaging.
– In case of low outside temperatures, add an anti-freeze additive to prevent the water from freezing →.

For the water tank capacity of the windows, see → p. 331.

COPIA

⚠

Never mix anti-freeze additive or similar unsuitable additives to the wash water. This can cause an oily film to form on the glass, which significantly reduces visibility.

- Use clean water with a glass cleaner recommended by Volkswagen.
- If necessary, mix suitable anti-condensation additives into the glasswashing water.

NOTICE

- Never mix cleaning agents recommended by Volkswagen with other cleaning agents. This may cause the components to coagulate and thus clog the nozzles of the windscreen washer.
- When refuelling, do not mix up the fluids in any way! Otherwise, serious malfunctions or damage may occur!
  to the engine!

Engine oil

Introduction to the topic

⚠ WARNING

If mishandled, engine oil can cause burns and other serious injuries.

- Always wear protective goggles when handling engine oil.
- Engine oil is toxic and must be kept out of the reach of children.
- Only store the engine oil in the closed original container. This also applies to used oil until it is discarded.
- Never use empty food cans, bottles or other empty containers to store engine oil, as there is a risk that other people may ingest the stored engine oil.
- Frequent contact with engine oil can cause skin injuries. In case of contact with engine oil, wash skin thoroughly with soap and water.
- When the engine is running, the engine oil becomes extremely hot and can cause severe burns. Always allow the engine to cool down.

Leaking or spilled engine oil can pollute the environment. For
If this is not the case, it is recommended that the engine oil is preferably replaced by a Volkswagen Dealer, who has special tools, the necessary technical expertise and is able to deal with the disposal of used oil.

- If oil or other fluid stains are visible on the floor underneath the vehicle, Volkswagen recommends that the vehicle should preferably be inspected by a Volkswagen Dealer.
  rio Volkswagen.

Engine oil specification

Valid only for Argentina

Please note⚠ at the beginning of this chapter on page 269.

VW 502 00 or **VW 508 88** are the lubricating oil standards for the engine of your Volkswagen. These standards are described on the lubricating oil packaging. Information on Volkswagen-approved engine oils is available from Volkswagen dealers.

When refuelling, engine oils approved by Volkswagen in accordance with **VW 502 00** or **VW 508 88** can be mixed with each other.

If no engine oil complying with **VW 502 00** or **VW 508** is available in an emergency situation, an engine oil complying with the following requirements can be used temporarily: ACEA A3/B4 with viscosity class **SAE 0W 30**, **SAE 0W 40**, **SAE 5W 30**, **SAE 5W 40**, **SAE 10W 30** or **SAE 10W 40**,
we recommend that you find a Volkswagen dealer as soon as possible to change this oil to the approved engine oil for
your vehicle.

COPIA

Engine oils are continually being improved and Volkswagen dealers are always informed about these changes. Volkswagen therefore recommends that engine oil changes are always carried out by a Volkswagen dealer.

NOTICE

- Use only engine oil expressly approved by Volkswagen in accordance with **VW 502 00** or **VW 508 88** . The use of other engine oils may cause engine damage which is excluded from warranty coverage!
- Do not mix any additional lubricating additives into the engine oil. Damage caused by such additives is excluded from warranty coverage.

Engine oil specification

Please note⚠ at the beginning of this chapter on page 269.

VW 502 00 or **VW 508 88** are the lubricating oil standards for the engine of your Volkswagen. These standards are described on the lubricating oil packaging. Information on Volkswagen-approved engine oils is available from Volkswagen dealers.

When refuelling, engine oils approved by Volkswagen in accordance with **VW 502 00** or **VW 508 88** can be mixed with each other.

If no engine oil complying with **VW 502 00 or VW 508** is available in an emergency situation, an engine oil complying with the following requirements can be used temporarily: ACEA A3/B4 with the viscosity class **SAE 0W 30**, **SAE 0W 40**, **SAE 5W 30**, **SAE 5W 40**, **SAE 10W 30** or **SAE 10W 40**,
we recommend that you find a Volkswagen dealer as soon as possible to change this oil to the approved engine oil for your vehicle.

Engine oils are continually being improved and Volkswagen dealers are always informed about these changes. Volkswagen therefore recommends that engine oil changes are always carried out by a Volkswagen dealer.

Petrol engine

Fill or change the engine oil specification	Engine oil engine oil
Use Volkswagen-approved engine oils with high lubricating power. Check the engine oil level every time the engine is topped up. **Never exceed the upper limit of the mark!**	according to **VW** Standard **502 00**

TOTALFLEX engine

Fill or change the engine oil specification	Engine oil engine oil
Use Volkswagen-approved engine oils with high lubricating power. Check the engine oil level every time the engine is topped up. **Never exceed the upper limit of the mark!**	according to **VW** Standard **508 88**

NOTICE

- Use only engine oil expressly approved by Volkswagen in accordance with **VW 502 00** or **VW 508 88** . The use of other engine oils may cause engine damage which is excluded from warranty coverage!
- Do not mix any additional lubricating additives into the engine oil. Damage caused by such additives is excluded from warranty coverage.

Engine oil change

Please note⚠ at the beginning of this chapter on page 269.

The engine oil must be changed regularly. Note which service interval applies to the vehicle → p. 304. Ensure that these intervals are observed, especially when the vehicle is used in adverse conditions, where some services must be carried out more frequently.

COPIA

As it requires special tools and technical know-how, the engine oil and filter change must be carried out by a specialised company, which also ensures proper disposal of the used oil. For this purpose, Volkswagen recommends the Volkswagen Dealers Volkswagen.

More information on maintenance intervals can be found on → p. 304.

WARNING

If in exceptional cases it is really necessary to replace the engine oil, the following points should be taken into account:

- Always wear protective eyewear.
- Always allow the engine to cool down completely to avoid burns.
- Hold the arms horizontally when unscrewing the oil drain screw to prevent the drained oil from running down the arm.
- Use a suitable container for collecting used oil, in which at least the total amount of engine oil can be placed.
- Never use empty food cans, bottles or other empty containers for storing engine oil, as the engine oil contained therein cannot always be identified by other people.
- Engine oil is toxic and must be kept out of the reach of children.

NOTICE

Do not mix any additional lubricating additives into the engine oil. Damage caused by such additives is excluded from warranty coverage.

Volkswagen recommends that the oil and filter should preferably be replaced by a Volkswagen Dealer who has the necessary special tools and technical expertise. It is suitable for solving the issue of waste oil disposal in an environmentally sound manner.

- Never dispose of used oil in gardens, forest areas, sewers, streets and roads, rivers or waterways, as it pollutes the environment.
- To drain the used oil completely, use a suitable container with sufficient capacity to collect all the oil in the engine, see → page 331.

Engine oil consumption

Please note⚠ at the beginning of this chapter on page 269.

Engine oil consumption may vary from engine to engine and may be altered during the life of the engine.

Depending on the driving style and conditions of use, oil consumption can be as low as 0.5 l per 1,000 km - in the first few days of use, the oil consumption can be as low as 0.5 l per 1,000 km.
5,000 kilometres on new vehicles. The engine oil level should therefore be checked at regular intervals - preferably at every refuelling or before long journeys.

In case of high engine demand, the engine oil level should be as close as possible to the level → fig. 204 A , without exceeding it, e.g. on long journeys on long roads.
The summer or during mountain hikes.

Check engine oil level and top up with oil from engine oil

Please note⚠ at the beginning of this chapter on page 269.

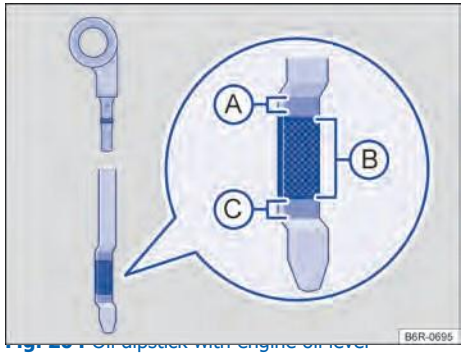


Fig. 204 Oil dipstick with engine oil level mark.

COPIA



Fig. 205 In the engine compartment: Engine oil filler neck plug.

Legend for → fig. 204:

Ⓐ Engine oil cannot be replenished. Engine oil
Ⓑ level in order.
Ⓒ Engine oil level too low - refill engine oil.

Checklist

Follow the steps in the indicated sequence →⚠ :

1. Park the vehicle with the engine **warm** on a level surface to avoid incorrect reading of the engine oil level.
2. Switch off the engine and wait a few minutes for the engine oil to drain back into the crankcase.
3. Opening the engine compartment cover → p. 263.
4. Identify the engine oil filler neck and the oil dipstick. The engine oil filler neck is identified by the symbol on the cap. → Fig. 205 and the oil dipstick with the coloured handle. If it is unclear where the oil filler cap and dipstick are located, contact a Volkswagen dealer or a specialist company.
5. Remove the dipstick from the guide tube and wipe it with a clean cloth →ⓘ .
6. Push the dipstick back into the guide tube as far as it will go. If there is a mark on the dipstick, this mark must fit into the corresponding groove at the upper end of the guide tube when it is inserted.
7. Remove the oil dipstick again and read the engine oil level on the dipstick → Fig. 204 as follows:

   Ⓐ Do **not** add oil →ⓘ . Continue with step 16.

   Ⓑ correct oil level. Oil can be added (approx. 0.5 l). Continue with step 8 or 16.

   Ⓒ Add the recommended oil, keeping the level within the B-zone. Continue with step 8.
8. After reading the engine oil level, insert the dipstick correctly into the guide tube as far as it will go.
9. Unscrew the cap of the engine oil filler neck → fig. 205.
10. Only replenish engine oil expressly approved by Volkswagen gradually in small quantities (no more than 0.5 l).
11. To prevent overfilling, it is necessary to wait about one minute after refilling to allow the engine oil to run into the crankcase up to the mark on the engine oil dipstick.
12. Recheck the engine oil level on the dipstick before adding a small amount of engine oil. Never top up with too much engine oil →ⓘ .
13. After the oil replenishment process has been completed, the engine oil level should be at least in the middle of the level → fig. 204 Ⓑ, but never above the nor- vel Ⓐ →ⓘ
14. If the engine oil has been overfilled by mistake and if the oil level is then above the range → Fig. 204 A , **do not start the engine.** Contact a Volkswagen Dealer or a specialised company.
15. After filling, screw the cap on the engine oil filler neck correctly.
16. Reinsert the oil dipstick correctly into the guide tube as far as it will go.
17. Close the cover of the mould compartment properly → p. 263.

COPIA

See the amount of engine oil in the → p. 331.

⚠ WARNING

Engine oil could ignite if it comes into contact with hot engine parts. This can cause fires, burns and other serious injuries.

- If engine oil is poured on cold engine parts, the oil may heat up when the engine is running and cause a fire.
- After refuelling, always ensure that the oil filler cap is properly closed and that the oil dipstick is also correctly inserted into the guide tube. In this way, spillage of engine oil onto hot engine parts during operation can be prevented.

NOTICE

- Do not start the engine if the engine oil level is above the level → fig. 204 A . Contact a Volkswagen dealer or a specialised company. Otherwise, the catalytic converter and engine may be damaged!
- When changing or replenishing fluids, ensure that the fluids are in the correct containers. Incorrect fluids can cause serious malfunctions and engine damage!

NOTICE

Use only cloths that do not fray and do not shed threads to clean the dipstick, as such residues can cause engine damage.

Under no circumstances should the engine oil level exceed the area → fig. 204 A. With the level above this area, the exhaust system can draw oil through the crankcase ventilation and release it into the atmosphere. In addition, the oil can burn inside the catalytic converter, damaging it.

Leaking or spilled engine oil can pollute the environment. For

If this does not happen, Volkswagen recommends that the engine oil should preferably be changed at a Volkswagen Dealer, which has special tools and the necessary technical competence, and is able to solve the discarding of used oil.

Troubleshooting

Please note ⚠ at the beginning of this chapter on page 269.

Warning lights and text messages can be displayed on the display of the combined instrument. In addition, audible signals can sound.

Engine oil

Central warning light

and **Lights up:** Mo- tor oil pressure too low. **Do not continue!** Switch off the engine. Check the engine oil level, if necessary, top up with engine oil → p. 271. If the warning light remains on and the oil level is correct, *do not* continue to drive or keep the engine running. This can result in engine damage. Immediately contact a Volkswagen Dealer or a specialist company.

Replenish engine oil. Engine oil level too low. Switch off engine. Check engine oil level → p. 271.

Central warning light

Check oil level. Engine oil level too low. Switch off engine. Check engine oil level. → p. 271.

If it comes on: engine oil level too low. Switch off the engine. Check the engine oil level → page 271.

If flashing: engine oil system faulty. Immediately contact a Volkswagen dealer or a specialist company.

COPIA

⚠ WARNING

The driver and passengers must be aware of the warning lights on and text messages to avoid possible vehicle stoppages and accidents.

- Never ignore warning lights and text messages.
- Stop the vehicle as soon as possible in a place that is safe for all passengers in the vehicle and other drivers.

The oil pressure warning light is not an oil level indicator.

engine oil level. The engine oil level should be checked at regular intervals, preferably whenever the fuel tank is refuelled.

Engine coolant

Introduction to the topic

Never work on the engine cooling system if you are not familiar with the necessary procedures and if you have only unsuitable tools, equipment and fluids →⚠ ! In this case, have all work carried out by a specialist company. Volkswagen recommends the Volkswagen Dealers for this.

Improper work can cause serious injury.

⚠ WARNING

Engine coolant is toxic!

- Keep engine coolant only in its original closed container in a safe place.
- Never use empty food cans, bottles or other empty containers to store engine coolant, as there is a risk that other people may ingest the stored coolant.
- Keep engine coolant out of the reach of children.
- Ensure that the correct engine coolant additive ratio is provided for according to the lowest expected ambient temperature at which the vehicle will operate.
- In extremely low temperatures, the coolant may freeze and cause the vehicle to stop. In such a case, the vehicle's internal heating will also fail to operate, which may lower the body temperature of occupants who are not wearing suitable clothing for the climate.
- Prolonged exposure to cold and loss of body heat are detrimental to human health.

Under no circumstances should the coolant from the old engine be reused.

Please also pay attention to the specific rules for the disposal of this product.

Volkswagen recommends topping up or replacing the engine coolant and its additives.

ve at a Volkswagen Dealer, who will dispose of the fluids correctly. Never dispose of used fluids in gardens, wooded areas, sewers, streets and roads, rivers or tributaries, as they can cause damage to your vehicle.

taminates the environment.

Engine coolant specifications

Please note⚠ at the beginning of this chapter on page 274.

The engine cooling system has a mixture of **distilled water** and at least 40 % engine coolant additive as standard.

This mixture not only provides anti-corrosion protection down to -25 °C, but also protects the alloy parts of the engine cooling system against corrosion. The mixture also prevents limescale build-up and significantly raises the boiling point of the engine coolant.

To protect the engine cooling system, the additive percentage for the engine coolant should *always* be at least 40 %, even in hot climates and when anti-freeze protection is required .

COPIA

If, for climatic reasons, greater antifreeze protection is required, the proportion of additive in the engine coolant can be increased. However, the percentage of additive in the engine coolant must not exceed 60 %, otherwise the antifreeze protection will drop again and the cooling performance will deteriorate.

When replenishing the engine coolant, use a mixture of **distilled water** and at least 40 % engine coolant additive **G 12 plus-plus-plus or G 12evo** (both lilac) to maintain the ideal corrosion protection →ⓘ .

The coolant **G 12evo**, purchased on the Brazilian market, is a ready-to-use coolant with the correct proportions of distilled water and coolant additives.

The mixture of G 12evo with engine coolant G 13 (TL-VW 774 J), G 12 plus-plus (TL- VW 774 G), G 12 plus (TL-VW 774 F) or G 12 (colour: G 12) can be used in combination with G 13 (TL-VW 774 J), G 12 plus-plus (TL- VW 774 G) or G 12 (colour: G 12).
red) significantly worsens the corrosion protection and should therefore be avoided.

G 12 plus (TL-VW 774 F) or G 12 (red) significantly improves corrosion protection and should therefore be avoided → ⓘ .

Information on Volkswagen-approved coolant is available at Volkswagen dealerships. Volkswagen therefore recommends that coolant changes are always carried out by a Volkswagen Dealer.

⚠ WARNING

Insufficient anti-freeze protection in the engine cooling system can lead to engine collapse.

- Ensure that the correct ratio of engine coolant additive is provided for the ambient temperature in which the vehicle will operate.

ⓘ *NOTICE*

Never mix coolant additives into the coolant. original engine coolants with other coolants not released by Volkswagen. Mixing with non-approved coolants can cause serious damage to the engine and engine cooling system.

- If the liquid in the engine coolant reservoir has a brownish colour, the engine coolant has a brownish colour.

is contaminated. In this case, the engine coolant must be changed immediately. Otherwise, serious malfunctions or engine damage may occur!

Under no circumstances should the coolant from the old engine be reused.
Please also pay attention to the specific rules for the disposal of this product.

Volkswagen recommends topping up or replacing the engine coolant and its additives.
ve at a Volkswagen Dealer, who will dispose of the fluids correctly. Never dispose of used fluids in gardens, wooded areas, sewers, streets and roads, rivers or tributaries, as they will con- tinue to cause damage.
taminates the environment.

Check the engine coolant level and top up with coolant.

Please note⚠ at the beginning of this chapter on page 274.



Fig. 206 In the engine compartment: marking on the engine coolant expansion tank: marking on the coolant expansion tank of the engine.

COPIA



Fig. 207 In the engine compartment: engine coolant expansion tank cap.

If the engine coolant level is too low, the engine coolant warning light will come on.

Preparations

– Park the vehicle on a firm, level surface.
– Let the engine cool down →⚠ .
– Opening the engine compartment cover → p. 263.
– The engine coolant expansion tank can be recognised by the symbolon the cover → fig. 207.

Check the engine coolant level

– When the engine is cold, check the engine coolant level at the side mark on the coolant tank → Fig. 206.
– If the fluid level in the tank is below the minimum mark ("min"), top up with engine coolant. When the engine is warm, the engine coolant level may be slightly above the upper edge of the marked area.

Top up with engine coolant

– Always place a suitable cloth over the tank cap to protect your face, hands and arms from hot engine coolant or steam.
– Carefully unscrew the cover →⚠ anticlockwise.
– Only top up with **new** engine coolant and in accordance with Volkswagen specifications (→ p. 274) →ⓘ .
– The engine coolant level must remain within the mark on the coolant reservoir.
→ Do not refuel until above the upper edge of the strip marked →ⓘ !
– Screw the cover on tightly in a clockwise direction.
– If engine coolant with the required specification is not available in an emergency, do not use any engine coolant additives! Instead, fill only with **distilled water** →ⓘ . Then add the mixture with the correct portion of engine coolant additive as soon as possible → p. 274 should be restored as soon as possible.

⚠ WARNING

The steam or coolant from the engine coolant can cause severe burns.

- Never open the engine compartment cover when you can feel vapour or coolant coming out of the engine compartment. Always wait until you can no longer feel vapour or coolant coming out.
- Always allow the engine to cool down completely before carefully opening the engine compartment cover. When replaced, hot parts can burn the skin.
- When the engine has cooled down, the following must be observed before opening the engine compartment cover:
  – Apply the parking brake and move the selector lever to position **P** or the gearshift lever to neutral.
  – Switch off the ignition and remove the vehicle key from the ignition lock.
  – Always keep children away from the engine compartment and under the supervision of adults.
- When the engine is hot, the engine cooling system is under pressure. Never open the cap on the engine coolant reservoir when the engine is running. If this is done, coolant may splash out and cause burns and serious injury.
  – Turn the lid slowly and carefully anti-clockwise while pressing the lid down slightly.

COPY

- Always protect your face, hands and arms from hot engine coolant or steam with a large, thick cloth.

- When refuelling, do not spill fluids on engine parts or the exhaust system. Spilled fluids can cause fires. Under certain circumstances, the ethylene glycol in the engine coolant can catch fire.

NOTICE

- Only top up with engine coolant up to the upper edge of the marked line → fig. 206. Otherwise, the excess coolant will be flushed out of the engine cooling system when the engine heats up and may cause damage.
- In case of increased engine coolant losses, top up with engine coolant only when the engine is *fully cooled*. Increased engine coolant losses are attributed to leaks from the cooling system. The engine cooling system must be checked by a Volkswagen dealer or a specialist company, otherwise the engine may be damaged!
- When replenishing with fluids, ensure that the correct reservoir is being filled. Use of incorrect fluids can result in failure. serious malfunctions and engine damage!

Brake fluid



Fig. 208 In the engine compartment: brake fluid reservoir cap.

Over time, the brake fluid absorbs moisture from the ambient air. Excessive water content in the brake fluid causes damage to the brake system. The boiling point of the brake fluid also decreases significantly. In the event of excessive water content, vapour bubbles may form in the brake system when the brakes are intentionally applied and under full braking. Vapour bubbles reduce the braking efficiency, considerably increase the braking distance and may even cause the brake system to fail completely. Your own safety and the safety of other drivers depend on a properly functioning brake system at all times →⚠ .

Brake fluid specification

Volkswagen has developed a special brake fluid optimised for the vehicle's brake system. Volkswagen recommends the use of a single brake fluid with **DOT 4** specification → fig. 208 for ideal brake system function. We also recommend the use of original Volkswagen brake fluid.

Compare the information with the instructions on the brake fluid container, and ensure that you always use the correct brake fluid for your vehicle.

Suitable brake fluid is available from your Volkswagen dealer.

Brake fluid level

Brake fluid level too low.

Do not continue! Check the level of the liquid brake system.

The brake fluid level must always be between the MIN and MAX marks or above the MIN mark on the brake fluid reservoir. →⚠ .

The brake fluid level cannot be checked accurately on all models, as engine parts prevent the brake fluid level in the brake fluid reservoir from being visible. If the brake fluid level cannot be read accurately, contact a Volkswagen dealer or a specialist company.

The brake fluid level decreases minimally during driving, as the brake pads wear down and the brake is automatically readjusted.

COPIA

Brake fluid change

The brake fluid must be replaced by a specialist company. For this purpose, Volkswagen recommends the Volkswagen Dealer. Only allow refilling with new brake fluid that meets the required specification.

Brake failure or reduced brake efficiency may be caused by too low a brake fluid level or too old or inadequate brake fluid.

- Have the brake system and brake fluid level checked regularly!
- Change the brake fluid regularly.
- Heavy demand on the brakes with old brake fluid can cause vapour bubbles to form. Vapour bubbles reduce the brake efficiency, considerably increase the braking distance and can cause total failure of the brake system.
- Be sure to use the correct brake fluid. Use only brake fluid with DOT 4 specification. Any other brake fluid may restrict the brake function and reduce brake efficiency. Do not use brake fluid if the DOT 4 specification is not stated on the brake fluid packaging.
- The replenished brake fluid must be new.

WARNING

Brake fluid is toxic.

- To reduce the danger of poisoning, never use drink bottles or other containers to store brake fluid. Such containers may induce people to drink the fluids, even when the container is marked.
- Always keep brake fluid in its original containers and out of the reach of children.

NOTICE

Spilled or splashed brake fluid damages vehicle paintwork, plastic parts and tyres. Immediately wipe up any spilled or splashed brake fluid on the vehicle's paintwork or other vehicle parts.

- Never mix different brake fluids.
- Clean the sealing plug before removing it and place it in the tank to close it.

Brake fluid can contaminate the environment. Collect and discard brake fluids.

two used correctly.

Brake fluid replacement requires special care, equipment and knowledge.

The disposal of brake fluid and its packaging with household waste is therefore prohibited. Therefore, the disposal/disposal of brake fluid and its packaging with household waste is prohibited. Legislation stipulates specific procedures in such cases. For your safety and convenience, Volkswagen recommends having the brake fluid replaced by a Volkswagen Dealer.

Vehicle battery

Introduction to the topic

The vehicle battery is an integral part of the vehicle's electrical system.

Never carry out work on the electrical system if you are not familiar with the necessary procedures and generally valid safety precautions and if you have only unsuitable tools → ! In this case, have all work carried out by a specialist company. For this purpose, Volkswagen recommends the Volkswagen Dealers. Improper work can lead to serious injuries.

Location of the vehicle battery

The vehicle's battery is located in the engine compartment

COPIA

Meaning of the alerts on the battery of the vehicle

Always wear protective eyewear!

The electrolyte is very corrosive, always wear protective gloves and goggles!

Fire, sparks, smoke and exposed light are prohibited!

Charging the vehicle battery produces a highly explosive gas mixture!

Keep the vehicle's battery and its battery charger out of the reach of children!

⚠ WARNING

Work on the vehicle's battery and electrical system can cause chemical burns or severe electrical shock. Before any work, always read and observe the following safety warnings and precautions:

- Before working on the vehicle battery, switch off the ignition and all electrical consumers and disconnect the cable from the negative terminal of the vehicle battery.
- Keep children away from the electrolyte and the vehicle battery.
- Always wear protective eyewear.
- Electrolyte is highly corrosive. It can burn the skin and cause loss of life. When handling the vehicle battery, protect hands, arms and eyes from electrolyte splashes.
- Never open a vehicle battery.
- Do not smoke and never work near naked flames or sparks.
- Avoid sparks from cables and electrical appliances as well as electrostatic discharges.
- Never short-circuit the battery terminals.
- Never use a damaged vehicle battery with the need for immediate replacement, as there is a risk of the battery exploding.
- A discharged battery can freeze at temperatures of approx. 0 °C. In case of freezing, the battery must also be replaced immediately.
- Make sure that there are no persons inside the vehicle when changing the battery. In the event of an electrical fault, the airbags may be damaged.

bags can be activated accidentally and cause serious or even fatal injuries to vehicle occupants.

NOTICE

- Never disconnect the battery from the vehicle when the ignition is switched on or the engine is running, or connect it to another battery, as this may damage the electrical system and electronic components.
- Do not expose the vehicle battery to direct sunlight for extended periods of time, as ultraviolet rays can damage the battery casing.
- When the vehicle is stationary for a long period of time, protect the vehicle's battery from the cold, do not leave the vehicle in an open area so that it does not "freeze" and thus freeze to death.

Never install a damaged or improperly sealed battery. Dispose of it as waste inside of environmental protection standards → p. 281, *Charging, replacing, disconnecting or connecting the vehicle battery*.

After starting the engine with the vehicle's battery fully discharged or

If the system settings (such as time and schedules) are changed, the system settings (such as time and schedules) may be deprogrammed or switched off. Check and correct settings after the vehicle's battery has been discharged.

has already been sufficiently loaded.

COPIA

Check the electrolyte level of the vehicle's battery.

Note⚠ and ⓘ at the beginning of this chapter on page 279.



Fig. 209 In the engine compartment: example of the position of the sight glass on the upper side of the vehicle battery.

Regularly check the battery's electrolyte level at high mileage, in hot climate countries and with an old battery. Beyond that, the vehicle battery does not require maintenance.

Preparations

– Prepare the vehicle for work on the engine compartment → page 263.
– Opening the engine compartment cover → p. 266.

Check the battery's electrolyte level

To access the round sight glass it is necessary to remove the fuse box holder from the battery. Volkswagen recommends that the vehicle's battery be checked by a Volkswagen dealer or a specialist company.

– Provide sufficient illumination for clear colour recognition. Never use open flames or incandescent objects as illumination.
– The round sight glass → fig. 209 on the top of the vehicle battery changes colour depending on the electrolyte level.
– Tap gently on the sight glass to remove any air bubbles that might alter the colour.

Light yellow* or *colourless The electrolyte level in the vehicle battery is too low. The vehicle's battery must be checked by a Volkswagen dealer or a specialist company and replaced if necessary.

Black Correct vehicle battery electrolyte level.

The possible different colours are intended for battery diagnostics at a Volkswagen dealer or a specialist company.

⚠

Work on the vehicle battery can cause chemical burns, explosions or severe electric shock.

- Always wear protective gloves and goggles!
- Electrolyte is highly corrosive. It can burn the skin and cause loss of life. When handling the battery, protect hands, arms and eyes from electrolyte splashes.
- Never turn the vehicle battery. The electrolyte may leak out of the ventilation openings and cause chemical burns.
- Never open a vehicle battery.
- In case of electrolyte splashes on skin or eyes, immediately flush the affected area with cold water for a few minutes. Then immediately seek medical help.
- If electrolyte is ingested, seek immediate medical help.

Charging, replacing, disconnecting or connecting the vehicle battery

Note⚠ and ⓘ at the beginning of this chapter on page 279.

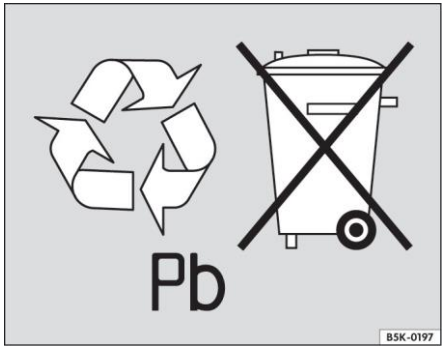


Fig. 210 Batteries contain toxic substances and must be recycled. Disposal with household waste is therefore prohibited and the battery must be returned to the dealer after replacement.

Charging the vehicle battery

Charging of the vehicle battery must be carried out by a specialised company, as the factory-installed vehicle battery technology requires a restricted charging voltage.
→⚠ . Volkswagen recommends Volkswagen Dealers for this purpose.

Replacing the vehicle battery

The vehicle's battery is specially designed for its location and has safety features. If you need to replace the vehicle's battery, you should ask a Volkswagen dealer about the electrical compatibility, charging capacity (A/h) appropriate to the vehicle's characteristics, size and maintenance requirements, performance and safety of the new battery before purchasing a new one.
Volkswagen recommends having the vehicle's battery replaced by a Volkswagen Dealer.

Disconnect the battery from the vehicle

If the vehicle battery needs to be disconnected from the vehicle's electrical system, observe the following:

– Switch off the ignition and all electrical consumers.
– Unlock the vehicle before disconnection, otherwise the alarm system will be triggered.
– First disconnect the negative cable and then the positive cable →⚠ .

If the vehicle needs to be immobilised for a long period of time, disconnect the negative battery cable from the vehicle, as otherwise the battery may be discharged by the current consumers in the vehicle, preventing the engine from starting.

Connecting the vehicle battery

– Before reconnecting the vehicle battery, switch off the ignition and all electrical consumers.
– First connect the positive cable and then the negative cable →⚠ .

In the event of problems with starting and idling, switch on the ignition for 30 seconds and then switch it off. Immediately start the engine.

After connecting a vehicle battery and switching on the ignition, different control lamps can be switched on. These go out after a few seconds. If the indicator lights continue to illuminate, have the vehicle checked by a Volkswagen dealer or a specialist company.

If the vehicle battery has been disconnected for a long time, the next service may not be displayed or calculated correctly.
→ Observe the maximum permissible maintenance intervals → p. 304.

Vehicles with Keyless Access: If, after connecting the vehicle battery, the ignition cannot be switched on, unlock and lock the vehicle from the outside. Then try to switch the ignition on again. If the ignition still cannot be switched on, find a Volkswagen dealer or a specialist company.

Automatic disconnection of consumers

By means of intelligent grid management, various measures are taken to prevent the vehicle's battery from being drained in the event of a high demand on the vehicle's battery.
The vehicle's battery is not discharged:

– The idle speeds are increased to allow the alternator to supply more current.
– If necessary, the output of the most powerful consumers is limited or switched off completely in an emergency.
– When the engine is switched on, the power supply to the 12 V socket and the cigarette lighter may be temporarily interrupted.

Mains management cannot always prevent the vehicle's battery from discharging. This can happen if the ignition remains switched on with the engine switched off for long periods or if the parking light is left on for long periods when the vehicle is parked.

Why does the vehicle battery discharge?

– Long periods without switching on the engine, mainly with the ignition switched on.
– Use of electric consumers when the engine is switched off.

⚠ WARNING

The use of incorrect vehicle batteries or their improper attachment can cause short circuits, fire and serious injury.

- Only use maintenance-free, spill-protected batteries in the vehicle which have the same characteristics, specifications and dimensions as the factory-installed vehicle battery.
- Make sure that there are no persons inside the vehicle when changing the air bags. In the event of an electrical malfunction, the air bags can be triggered accidentally, resulting in serious or even fatal injuries to the vehicle occupants.

⚠ WARNING

Charging the vehicle battery produces a highly explosive gas mixture.

- Charge the vehicle battery only in well-ventilated rooms.
- Never charge a frozen or defrosted vehicle battery. A discharged vehicle battery can be charged in temperatures of around 0 °C.
- Replace a vehicle battery that has already been frozen without fail.
- Incorrectly connected connection cables can cause a short circuit. First connect the positive cable and then connect the negative cable.

NOTICE

- The radio only needs to be re-coded if the battery is reconnected and the radio is switched on before the ignition is switched on. If the radio needs to be re-coded, please contact a Volkswagen Dealer.
- Never disconnect or connect the vehicle's battery when the ignition is switched on or the engine is running, or connect it to another battery, otherwise the electrical system and electronic components may be damaged.
- Never connect accessories to the 12 V socket or cigarette lighter socket that provide power to charge the vehicle's battery, such as solar panels or battery chargers. Failure to do so may damage the vehicle's electrical system.

Batteries contain toxic substances such as sulphuric acid and lead. Therefore, it is
Disposal with household waste is prohibited. Legislation stipulates specific procedures for the disposal of used batteries. For your safety and convenience, Volkswagen recommends that you have your vehicle's battery replaced only by a Volkswagen dealer or a specialist company.

The acid solution and lead present in the battery can contaminate soil, sub-soil and water.
and water if improperly disposed of.
Consumption of lead-contaminated water can cause high blood pressure, severe gastrointestinal disturbances and anaemias (deaertification).
(e.g., weakness and drowsiness).

Troubleshooting

Please note ⚠ a(!) at the beginning of this chapter on page 279.

Vehicle battery

Central warning light

Alternator faulty. The vehicle's battery is not charged by the alternator.

The vehicle battery is not charged by the alternator while driving.

– It is not necessary to disconnect electrical consumers.
– Find a Volkswagen dealer or a specialist company.
– Check electrical system.

For vehicles with Start-Stop system, the Start-Stop system fails to start the engine.
→ p. 116.

Central warning light and Low battery.

The vehicle's battery is charged by the battery charger while driving, however, the charge level is not sufficient.

– Charge the battery by driving the vehicle for a longer period of time.

For vehicles with Start-Stop system, the Start-Stop system fails to start the engine.
→ p. 116.

Replace the battery.

The vehicle battery is not in good condition.

– Find a Volkswagen dealer or a specialist company.

For vehicles with Start-Stop system, the Start-Stop system fails to start the engine.
→ p. 116.

When the ignition is switched on, some warning and control lights come on quickly as a check. These go out after a few seconds.

WARNING

The driver and passengers must be aware of the warning lights on and text messages to avoid possible vehicle stoppages and accidents.

- Never ignore warning lights or text messages.
- Stop the vehicle as soon as possible in a place that is safe for all passengers in the vehicle and other drivers.

NOTICE

Always keep in mind the control lights on and text messages to avoid damage to the vehicle .

Wheels and tyres

Control system of the pneumatic

Introduction to the topic

The tyre monitoring system alerts the driver to low tyre pressure.

Depending on the vehicle version, the tyre monitoring system may not be available.

⚠

The intelligent technology of the tyre control system cannot go beyond the limits imposed by physics and operates only within the limits of the system. Inappropriate use of the wheels and tyres can lead to sudden loss of pressure, tyre tread separation and even tyre bursting.

- Check tyre pressure regularly and always maintain the indicated tyre pressure value. → If the tyre pressure is too low, the tyre can become so hot that the tread can come loose and the tyre may burst.
- Always calibrate the tyre pressure when the tyres are cold, as shown on the label → p. 290.
- Check the tyre pressure regularly when the tyre is cold. If necessary, calibrate tyres fitted to the car when cold in accordance with the information on the label → p. 290.
- Check tyres regularly for signs of wear and damage.
- Never exceed the maximum speed and load capacity permitted for the tyres fitted.

Too low tyre pressure increases fuel consumption and tyre wear.
tyre wear.

When driving for the first time with new tyres at high speeds, they can expand a little and, therefore, only one tyre pressure alert can be issued.

Replace old tyres only with tyres released by Volkswagen for the respective vehicle model.

Do not rely solely on the tyre monitoring system. Regularly check
Check the tyres to ensure that the tyre pressure is correct and that the tyres show no signs of damage, e.g. holes, cuts, tears or bubbles. Remove foreign matter from the tyre tread before it enters the tyre.
pneumatic.

Control indicator of the pneumatic

Please note⚠ at the beginning of this chapter on page 284.

Description of operation

The tyre control indicator, with the help of the ABS sensors, computes the rotation and consequently the rolling diameter of the individual wheels, among other things.

Tyre bearing diameter may vary:

– If the tyre pressure has been changed.
– If the tyre pressure is too low.
– If the tyre has structural damage.
– If the vehicle is loaded on one side only.
– If an emergency wheel is fitted.
– If one wheel per axle has been changed.

The tyre control indicator may be delayed or not displayed at all in certain conditions, e.g. if the driving style is very sporty, on snow-covered or unpaved roads

Programming the tyre control indicator

After changing the tyre pressure or after changing one or more wheels, the tyre control indicator needs to be reset. This also applies after changing the wheels, e.g. front wheels for rear wheels.

To reprogram the system, you must first reset the saved values.

– Switch on the ignition.
– *Depending on the vehicle version and the radio version*, press the button on the radio system → p. 27.
– Open the **Vehicle settings** menu in the radio system.
– Touch the function button Tyres .
– Touch the SET function button.
– If the 4 tyre pressures correspond to the required values, touch the Confirm function button to store the tyre pressures.

After a longer driving time and at varying speeds, the system reprograms the new autonomous mode values and monitors them.

The tyre control indicator must be reprogrammed under the following conditions:

– If the tyre pressure has been adjusted.
– If one or more wheels have been changed.
– If the wheels have been reversed, e.g. front to rear → p. 287.

The tyre control indicator does not work if ESC or ABS is faulty.
two → p. 142.

After a warning of too low tyre pressure, switch off the engine.
and switch it on again. Only then can the tyre-check indicator be switched on.
reprogramming.

Troubleshooting tyre control indicator problems

Please note⚠ at the beginning of this chapter on page 284.

on

The pressure in one or more tyres has been reduced or the tyre has suffered a structural failure.

– **Do not continue!**
– Check all tyre pressures and adjust → page 290.
– Replace damaged tyres.
– Re-program the tyre control indicator → page 284.
– If the problem persists, look for a specialised company.

flashes for about a minute and then lights up permanently.

Faulty system.

– **Do not continue!**
– Switch the ignition off and on again.

⚠ WARNING

Different tyre pressure or tyre pressure that is too low can cause tyre collapse, loss of vehicle control, accidents, serious injury and death.

- If the green indicator light comes on stop immediately and check all tyres → p. 290.
- Different tyre pressure or tyre pressure that is too low can increase tyre wear, worsen driving stability and increase braking distance.
- Different tyre pressure or tyre pressure that is too low can lead to sudden tyre collapse, causing the tyre to burst and loss of control of the vehicle.

21A.5L1.TCR.60

- The driver is responsible for the correct tyre pressure in all tyres of the vehicle. The recommended tyre pressure is always available on a sticker → p. 290.
- The tyre monitoring system can only fulfil its function if all cold tyres have the correct tyre pressure.
- Incorrect tyre pressure values can cause accidents and tyre damage. All tyres must always have the correct tyre pressure for the load → p. 290.
- Before every drive, always fill the tyres with the correct tyre pressure → p. 290.
- On journeys with very low tyre pressure, the tyres are necessarily subject to further deformation. Thus, the tyres can become so hot that the tread can become loose, the tyres can burst and loss of control of the vehicle can occur.
- High speeds and overloading can heat up a tyre to such an extent that the tyre can burst and lead to loss of vehicle control.
- Too high or too low tyre pressure shortens the tyre life and impairs the steering behaviour of the vehicle.
- If the tyre is not "flat" and it is not necessary to change the tyre immediately, drive at low speed to the nearest Volkswagen Dealer or specialist dealer, check and correct the tyre pressure → p. 290.

⚠ WARNING

Ignoring warning lights and text messages can lead to vehicle stalling in traffic, accidents and serious injuries.

- Never ignore warning lights and text messages.
- Stop the vehicle as soon as possible in a place that is safe for all passengers in the vehicle and other drivers.

NOTICE

Always observe the control lights in the control panel. The vehicle must be kept safe from damage to the vehicle.

When the ignition is switched on, if too low tyre pressure is detected, the tyres are switched on.

The control light will flash. In addition, an audible alert sounds and a text message may appear.

If a system malfunction is detected with the ignition switched on, the control light

yellow flashes for a few minutes and then lights up permanently. In addition, a text message may appear.

Driving on unpaved roads for long periods of time or with a form of driving that is not paved.

Sporty driving can temporarily deactivate the tyre check indicator. The check light shows the malfunction, but goes out if the road conditions change.

street or the way of driving.

Important information on wheels and tyres

Introduction to the topic

Tyres are the most stressed and least valued parts of the vehicle. Tyres are very important, as the narrow tyre tread area is the only contact between the vehicle and the road.

The service life of tyres depends on tyre condition, driving style, handling and correct installation.

Volkswagen recommends that all work on wheels and tyres be carried out by a specialist company. Specialised companies are equipped with all the necessary tools and replacement parts, have the necessary technical know-how and are trained in the proper disposal of used tyres. For this purpose, Volkswagen reco- Volkswagen Dealers are recommended.

⚠ WARNING

Worn or damaged tyres are not capable of providing the full control and braking efficiency of the vehicle.

- Improper handling of wheels and tyres can reduce driving safety and cause serious accidents and injuries. .
- Use only radial tyres of the same structure and size (diameter) and with the same profile on all 4 wheels.
- New tyres should be run-in as their grip and braking efficiency are reduced at the beginning. To avoid accidents and serious injuries, drive with due caution for the first 600 km.
- At high and continuous speeds, a tyre with underspecified tyre pressure will overheat, which can lead to tread separation or even a puncture. Always maintain the recommended tyre pressure.
- Never drive on damaged (holes, cuts, tears and bubbles) and worn tyres. Driving on such tyres can cause the tyres to burst, resulting in serious accidents and injuries. Worn or damaged tyres must be replaced immediately.
- Never exceed the maximum speed and load capacity permitted for the tyres fitted.
- The efficiency of driver assistance systems and braking assistance systems also depends on tyre grip.
- If, while driving, strange vibrations are identified or the vehicle is pulling to one side, stop immediately and check the wheels and tyres for damage.
- Do not use wheels or tyres of unknown origin. Used wheels and tyres may be damaged, even if the damage is not visible.
- Old tyres - even if they have never been used - can burst or blow out suddenly, especially at high speeds, and cause serious accidents and injuries. Tyres older than 6 years should only be used in an emergency,

The emergency vehicles are to be used with the utmost care, and are to be replaced immediately at the end of the emergency.

Wheel and tyre handling

Please note⚠ at the beginning of this chapter on page 287.

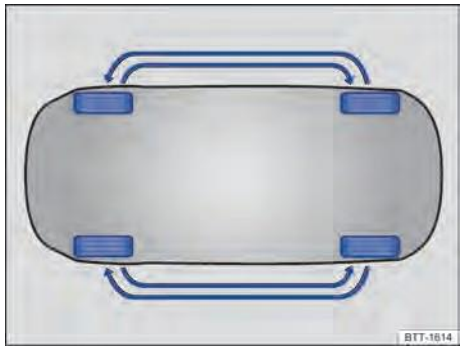


Fig. 211 Diagram for changing the wheels.

Tyres and wheels are important construction elements. The tyres and wheels released by Volkswagen are designed for the respective vehicle model and make a decisive contribution to a satisfactory roadholding and safe driving characteristics.

Changing the wheels

To ensure even wear of all tyres, it is recommended that the wheels be rotated regularly, as shown in the diagram → Fig. 211.

Volkswagen recommends checking the need for wheel rotation at every vehicle inspection, and when wheel rotation is necessary, we recommend that wheel alignment and balancing be carried out in addition.

Volkswagen recommends that the wheel rotation be carried out by a Volkswagen Dealer. Volkswagen or a specialised company.

Avoid damage to tyres

- Passing on pavements and similar slowly and, whenever possible, at right angles.
- Regularly check tyres for damage such as holes, cuts, tears and bubbles.
- Remove foreign bodies in the tyre profile **that have not penetrated into the tyre.** → p. 292.
- Worn or damaged tyres must be replaced immediately → page 292.
- Check the tyres regularly for damage → page 292.
- Never exceed the maximum speed and load capacity permitted for the fitted tyres → p. 295.
- Protect tyres, including the emergency wheel tyre, from contact with aggressive substances, including grease, oil, petrol and brake fluid →⚠ .
- Replace valve caps immediately in case of leakage.

Tyres older than 6 years

Tyres wear out due to physical and chemical processes that can compromise their function.

Volkswagen recommends that tyres that are 6 years old or older be replaced with new tyres. This also applies to the emergency tyre that appears to be in good condition and does not have the legally permissible minimum tread wear →⚠ .

The age of the individual tyres can be determined from the date of manufacture → p. 295.

Storing tyres

Mark the wheels before demounting so that the same running direction can be maintained during reinstallation (left, right, front, rear). Removed tyres and wheels should be stored in a cool, dry and dark place. **Do not** position tyres mounted on the wheels vertically.

Protect tyres without wheels in suitable layers against contamination and store standing on the tread.

New tyres

- Drive with particular caution for the first 600 km on new tyres, as the tyres must be *softened*. Run-in tyres have reduced grip → ⚠ and braking effect → .⚠
- Use only radial tyres of the same structure and size (diameter) and with the same profile on all 4 wheels.
- Depending on the manufacturer and version, the depth of new tyre profiles may be different due to manufacturing and profile shaping characteristics.

Replacing tyres

- If possible, do not change a single tyre, but at least one axle (both tyres on the front axle or both tyres on the rear axle) →⚠ .
- Replace old tyres only with new tyres released by Volkswagen for the respective vehicle model. Observe size, diameter, load capacity and maximum speed.
- Never use tyres whose effective dimensions exceed the dimensions of the tyres approved by Volkswagen. Larger tyres can drag and cause friction with the body or other parts.

Reset tyre control indicator

After each change of one or more wheels, the tyre control indicator must be reprogrammed. This also applies after changing the front wheels to the rear wheels → p. 284.

On vehicles with a tyre pressure monitoring system

When replacing factory-fitted wheels, ensure that the new wheels are equipped with sensors compatible with the tyre pressure monitoring system.
→ For recognition of the new wheels, the vehicle must be driven for some time at a speed of more than 25 km/h.

At the time of replacement and exchange of the sensors, Volkswagen always recommends the installation of a new valve assembly.
The sealing or sealing.

More information on the tyre pressure monitoring system → p. 284.

⚠ WARNING

Aggressive liquids and substances can cause visible and non-visible damage to the tyres, which may cause the tyres to explode.

- Keep chemicals, oils, greases, fuels, brake fluids and other aggressive substances away from the tyres at all times.

⚠ WARNING

Old tyres - even if they have never been used - can suddenly burst or blow out, especially at high speeds, and cause serious accidents and injuries.

- Tyres older than 6 years should only be used in an emergency, with extreme care and an equally careful driving style, and should be replaced immediately at the end of the emergency.

⚠ WARNING

New tyres must be softened as their grip and braking efficiency are reduced at the beginning.

- In order to avoid accidents and serious injuries, use due caution during the first 600 km.

⚠ WARNING

The wheels must have the necessary clearance for proper operation. If there is no clearance, the tyres may rub against parts of the axle, bodywork and flexible brake hoses, which may cause failure of the brake system and detachment of the tyre tread, thereby causing the tyre to explode.

- The actual tyre dimensions may not be larger than the dimensions of the tyres released by Volkswagen and may not cause friction with other vehicle parts.

NOTICE

Avoid hard collisions and, if possible, avoid obstacles. Tyres can be deformed, especially by holes in the track and collisions with edges. This can lead to tyre and rim damage.

The disposal of old tyres requires equipment and technical know-how, from in accordance with specific regulations. It is therefore advisable to contact a Volkswagen dealer or a specialised company.

The discarding of tyres requires equipment and knowledge of the environmentally sound disposal. It is therefore prohibited to dispose of/place tyres with household waste. Legislation stipulates specific procedures in such cases. For your safety and comfort, Volkswagen recommends having your tyres replaced by a Volkswagen Dealer.

Even with identical size indications, the actual dimensions of the different types of The tyre contour of the tyres may show value deviations or large differences in the tyre contour.

On tyres released by Volkswagen, it is guaranteed that the actual measurements are in accordance with compatible with the vehicle. For other types of tyres, tyre dealers must provide a certificate from the tyre manufacturer certifying that the tyre type is also compatible with the vehicle. Keep the certificate in a safe place and keep it in the vehicle

Wheels

Please note, at the beginning of this chapter, on page 287.

Wheels and wheel bolts are produced in accordance with each other. For this reason, the corresponding wheel bolts with the appropriate length and convexity must be used for each wheel change. The fastening of the wheels and the function of the brake system depend on this.
→ p. 298.

21A.5L1.TCR.60

For technical reasons, wheels from other vehicles cannot normally be used. This applies under certain circumstances even to wheels of the same vehicle model.

The tyres and rims released by Volkswagen are designed for the respective vehicle model and make a decisive contribution to satisfactory roadholding and safe driving characteristics.

Wheel bolts

The wheel bolts must always be tightened to the correct torque → p. 298.

Wheels with screwed decorative elements

The wheels can be equipped with interchangeable decorative elements, fitted to the wheel with safety screws. Damaged decorative elements may only be replaced by a specialist company. Volkswagen recommends Volkswagen Dealers for this.

Wheel identification

Due to legal requirements in some countries, information on new wheels must contain some specific wheel characteristics. Depending on the country, the following wheel information may be available:

- Stamp of conformity
- Rim size
- Name of manufacturer or brand
- Date of manufacture
- Country of origin
- Manufacturing number
- Raw materials
- Part code

⚠

The use of damaged or unsuitable wheels can compromise driving safety and lead to accidents and serious injuries.

- Use only wheels released for the vehicle.
- Check the wheels regularly for damage and replace them if necessary.

Tyre pressure

Please note⚠ at the beginning of this chapter on page 287.

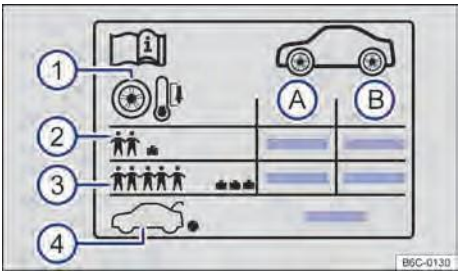


Fig. 212 Label with tyre pressures



Fig. 213 On the inside of the fuel filler door: Tyre pressure label.

Indications on the pressure label of the neumatics → fig. 212:

Ⓐ Tyre pressure for front axle tyres.
Ⓑ Tyre pressure for rear axle tyres.
① Guidance: Regularly check the pressure on cold tyres.
② Tyre pressure under partial load. Tyre
③ pressure under full load.
④ Tyre pressure to emergency wheel.

The sticker only indicates the correct tyre pressure for the released tyres and is located on the inside of the fuel tank door → fig. 213.

Depending on the vehicle version, the appearance of the label may vary. Additional tyre sizes may be available
→ p. 295.

Excessive or insufficient tyre pressure significantly reduces the service life of the tyre set and has a negative influence on the steering behaviour of the vehicle.
→⚠ . Correct tyre pressure is particularly important, especially at **high speeds**. Inadequate tyre pressure leads to increased tyre wear until the tyre bursts.

The tyre pressure indicated on the label is valid for a **cold tyre**. The tyre pressure is higher for hot tyres than for cold tyres.

Check tyre pressure

Check tyre pressure only if you have driven a few kilometres at low speed in the last 3 hours.

– Check tyre pressures at least once every 15 days and also before any prolonged driving.
– Check the tyre pressure only on cold tyres. The indicated tyre pressure is valid for a **cold tyre**. The tyre pressure of is higher for hot tyres than for cold tyres. Therefore, never release the air from hot tyres to adjust the tyre pressure.
– Adjust the tyre pressure according to the vehicle load → fig. 212 3 . ◯
– After adjusting the tyre pressure, pay attention to the repositioning of the valve caps and follow the information on the tyre control system.
→ p. 284.
– Always calibrate tyres to the pressures indicated on the label. Never exceed the maximum tyre pressure indicated on the tyre sidewall.

⚠ WARNING

Too low or too high tyre pressure can cause the tyre to run flat or explode while driving. This can cause serious accidents and fatal injuries.

- Too low tyre pressure can cause tyres to become very hot, which can lead to tyre tread separation or tyre bursting.
- Excessive speed or overloading of the vehicle can lead to overheating and sudden tyre damage, including tyre blowout and tread loosening, which can cause loss of steering control.
- Too high or too low tyre pressure shortens the tyre life and impairs the steering behaviour of the vehicle.
- Check the tyre pressure regularly, at least once every 15 days and additionally before each longer drive.
- All tyres must always have the correct pressure for the load.
- Never reduce the high pressure of hot tyres.

NOTICE

- When inserting the tyre pressure gauge, be careful that it does not hit the valve stem. Otherwise, damage to the tyre valve may occur.
- Missing or incorrectly screwed valve caps can cause damage to the tyre valve. For this reason, always drive with the valve caps completely screwed on and corresponding to the factory-fitted valve caps.

Insufficient tyre pressure increases fuel consumption

21A.5L1.TCR.60

Profile depth and indicators of wear and tear

Please note⚠ at the beginning of this chapter on page 287.



Fig. 214 Tyre profile: wear indicators.

Depth of profile

In most countries, the statutory minimum profile depth is 1.6 mm measured in the profile grooves next to the wear indicators. Observe the country-specific legal regulations.

Special driving situations require the greatest possible profile depth and approximately equal profile pro- fection on the front and rear axles → ⚠ .

The tread depth of new tyres may vary from version to version and from manufacturer to manufacturer due to manufacturing characteristics and tread design.

Observe the country-specific legal provisions on the minimum tread depth of winter and all-season tyres.
→ p. 298.

Tyre wear indicators

The wear indicators indicate whether the tyre is already worn. The tyre must be replaced before the tyre profile wear reaches the wear indicator.

At the bottom of the profile of the original tyre assembly, transverse to the running-in direction, there are wear indicators 1.6 mm high → fig. 214. Several of these wear indicators are positioned at equal distances on the running surface. Markings on the tyre sidewalls indicate the position of wear indicators, e.g. the "TWI" letters or symbols.

⚠

WARNING

Worn tyres are a safety hazard and can lead to loss of vehicle control and serious injury.

- Tyres must be replaced with new tyres before they wear down to the wear indicator.
- Worn tyres have an extremely low grip, especially on wet roads, and the vehicle tends to "skid" (aquaplaning).
- Worn tyres reduce the possibility of good vehicle control in normal and difficult driving situations and increase braking distances and the risk of skidding.

Tyre damage

Please note⚠ at the beginning of this chapter on page 287.

Tyre and wheel damage often occurs imperceptibly. Unusual **vibrations** or **steering tendencies of** the vehicle may indicate tyre damage.
→⚠ .

– If there is any doubt that a wheel may have been damaged, reduce speed immediately!
– Check tyres and wheels for damage.
– In case of damaged tyres, do not continue and seek specialist technical assistance.
– If there is no visible damage, drive slowly and cautiously to the next Volkswagen dealer or a specialist company for have the vehicle checked.

Penetration of foreign bodies in the pneumatic

– If foreign bodies have entered the inside of the tyre, do not remove them! In the meantime, any objects remaining between the tyre profiles can be removed.
– If necessary, replace the damaged wheel. If necessary, seek specialist technical assistance. For this purpose, Volkswagen recommends Volkswagen Conce- sionaires.
– Check and correct the pressure.

Tyre wear

Tyre wear depends on many factors, such as, for example. :

– Driving style.
– Lack of wheel balance.
– Chassis adjustment.

Driving style - fast cornering, fast starting and hard braking increase tyre wear. If the tyres are too worn, even in normal driving conditions, have the chassis adjustment checked by a Volkswagen dealer or a specialist company.

Wheel unbalance - The wheels of a new vehicle are unbalanced. Wheel off-balance can occur for various reasons during driving and can be noticed by steering wobble. Unbalance causes wear of the steering and suspension. For this reason, in such cases, the wheels must be rebalanced. A new wheel must be balanced before it is installed on the vehicle.

Chassis adjustment - Incorrect chassis adjustment impairs steering safety and increases tyre wear. In the event of heavy tyre wear, the wheel alignment should be checked by a Volkswagen dealer or a specialist company.

⚠ WARNING

Unusual vibrations or pulling of a vehicle sidewall while driving may indicate tyre damage.

- Reduce speed immediately and stop in accordance with traffic laws.
- Check tyres and wheels for damage.
- Never continue your journey with damaged tyres or wheels. Instead, seek specialist technical assistance.
- If there is no visible damage, drive slowly and carefully to the next Volkswagen Dealer or a specialist company to have the vehicle checked.

Emergency wheel

Please note⚠ at the beginning of this chapter on page 287.



Fig. 215 In the luggage compartment: Handle for securing the emergency wheel.

Removing the emergency wheel

– Open the rear cover → p. 71.
– If necessary, raise and secure the variable luggage compartment floor → page 229.
– Lift up and remove the carpeting from the case.
– Turn the lever on the emergency wheel → fig. 215 fully anticlockwise and remove the emergency wheel.

Storing the changed wheel

– If so, place the on-board toolbox back in the dedicated compartment in the luggage compartment.
– Place the changed wheel in the emergency wheel well in such a way that the centre hole of the rim is positioned exactly over the swivel pin .

21A.5L1.TCR.60

– Turn the crank clockwise on the threaded pin until the changed wheel is securely fixed.
– Replace the carpet on the luggage compartment floor.
– If necessary, close the variable floor of the male- tero → page 229.
– Close the rear cover.

If the emergency wheel differs from the installed wheels

If the emergency wheel is different from those fitted to the vehicle, e.g. in the version with rolling tyres, the emergency wheel should only be used in an emergency, temporarily and with due caution →⚠ . See also → p. 300.

It should be replaced as quickly as possible with a normal wheel bearing.

Observe driving directions:

– Do not drive faster than 80 km/h!
– Avoid sudden starts and braking, as well as high-speed cornering!
– Check the tyre pressure as soon as possible after fitting the spare wheel → p. 291.

The tyre pressure of the emergency wheel tyre must be checked at least once every 15 days together with the pressure of the other rolling tyres → p. 290.

⚠ WARNING

Improper use of the emergency wheel can lead to loss of control of the vehicle, collisions or other accidents and serious injury.

- On no account use the emergency wheel if it is damaged or worn down to the wear indicators.
- On some vehicles, the emergency wheel may have different wheel and tyre sizes→ p. 300, *Emergency wheel with different dimensions from the wheels in use*. The emergency wheel with different dimensions can be recognised by a sticker and the "80 km/h" label. This label indicates the maximum speed at which the tyre can be driven safely.
- Never drive faster than 80 km/h. Avoid sudden starts and braking, as well as high-speed cornering!
- Replace the emergency wheel as quickly as possible with a normal wheel. The emergency wheel is intended for brief use only.
- The emergency wheel must always be secured with the screws provided at the factory.
- Never use more than one emergency wheel.
- After fitting the emergency wheel, the tyre pressure should be checked as soon as possible → p. 290, *Tyre pressure*.

If possible, securely fasten the emergency wheel or the changed wheel to the vehicle.
tero.

Tyre markings and tyre type

Please note⚠ at the beginning of this chapter on page 287.

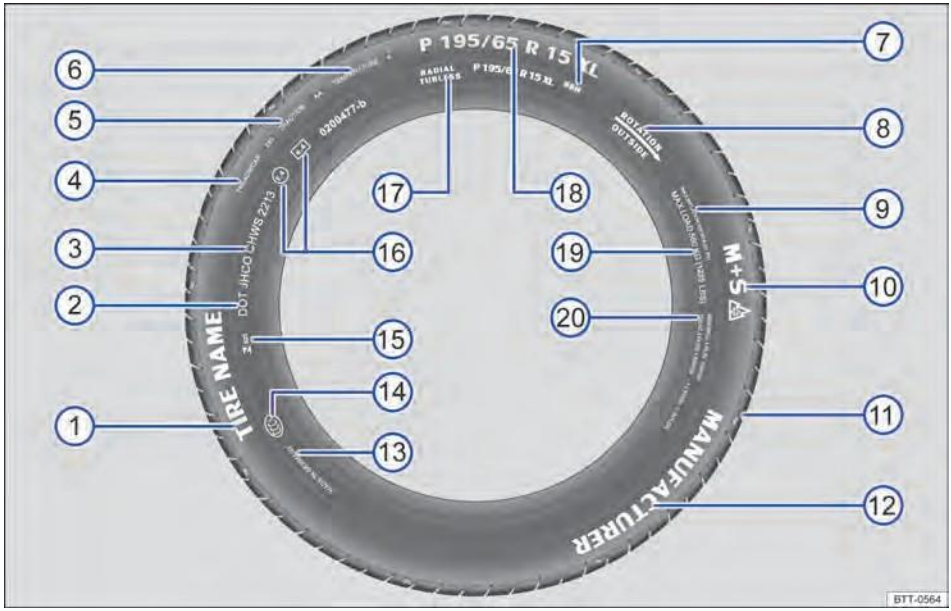


Fig. 216 Tyre inscription international (example).

→ **fig. 216**	**Inscription on the pneumatic tyres (example).**	
1	*Product name* of manufacturer	Designation of the individual tyres of the manufacturer - Name you.
2	DOT	The tyre complies with the legal requirements of the Ministry of Transport. US Department of Transportation with respect to the standards. (Department of Transportation).
3	JHCO CHWS 2213	tion). Tyre inscription number ([a)] - on some tyres (in some cases, only on the inside of the wheel) and date of manufacture:
	JHCO CHWS	Identification code of manufacturing origin and tyre manufacturer's data on the tyre dimensions and characteristics of the tyre.
	2213	Date of manufacture: 22nd week of 2013.
Information for the end user on comparison values between available basic tyres (standardised test procedures) → p. 322:		
4	TREADWEAR 280	Relative life expectancy of the basic tyre on a standard test. A *280* specification tyre wears 2.8 times slower than the standard test tyre.

21A.5L1.TCR.60

→ fig. 216	Inscription on the pneumatic tyres (example).	
		normal, with a wear rate of 100. The tyre's performance depends on its conditions of use and may vary significantly from normal values due to steering behaviour, maintenance, different track characteristics and weather conditions.
	TRACTION AA	Tyre braking performance in wet conditions (*AA*, *A*,
⑤		*B* or *C*). This is measured under controlled conditions on certified test tracks. Tyres marked *C* have a low traction power. The traction index assigned to the tyre is based on straight test tracks and does not include acceleration, lateral cornering, aquapla- ning or traction at maximum load.
⑥	TEMPERATURE A	Tyre temperature resistance in temperature tests a higher speeds (*A*, *B* or *C*). Tyres with *A* and *B* identifiers exceed the legal requirements. The temperature assessment is based on tyres with the correct pressure and excludes excess pressure. Excessive speed, incorrect pressure and excess pressure can alone or together cause tyre overheating or damage to the tyres.
⑦	88 Load rating → p. 297 and speed code → p. 297.	
⑧	Rotation and Deflection	Identification of the direction of rotation of the tyre → p. 297.
	OR: Outside	Identification of the outer side of the tyre → p. 297.
⑨	MAX INFLATION 350 KPA (51 psi/3.51 bar)	Limitation on maximum air pressure in the USA
⑩	M+S *or* M/S *or*	Indication for winter tyres (mud and snow tyres). Studded tyres are identified after *S* with an *E*.
⑪	TWI	Indicates the position of the wear indicator (Tread Wear In- dicator) → p. 292.
⑫	*Brand name*, *logo*	Manufacturer.
⑬	Made in Germany	Country of manufacture.
⑭		China-specific identification (China Compulsory Cer- tification).
⑮	023	Specific identification for Brazil.
⑯	E4 e4 0200477-b	Identification according to international standards with number of the country of approval. Tyres approved in accordance with the ECE standard are identified with *E*, tyres approved in accordance with the EG standard are identified with *e*. This is followed by the multi-digit approval number.
⑰	RADIAL TUBELESSBelted tubeless tyre . P 195 / 65 R	
⑱	15 XL	Size description
		P Identification for touring vehicles.

→ fig. 216	Inscription on the pneumatic tyres (example).		
		195	Tyre length from sidewall to sidewall in mm.
		65	Height/length ratio in %.
		R	Code for radial construction type.
		15	Wheel diameter in inches.
		XL	Reinforced tyre with a more robust construction.
(19)	MAXIMUM LOAD 615 KG (1235 LBS)	Specification for maximum wheel load capacity in the U.S.	
(20)	SIDEWALL 1 PLY RAYON	Indications of the components of the lower structure of the tyre: 1 layer Rayon (synthetic silk).	
	TREAD 4 PLIES	Indications of the tread components to.	
	1 RAYON + 2 STEEL + 1 NYLON	In the example, there are 4 layers under the tread: 1 layer of Rayon (synthetic silk), 2 layers of steel tape and 1 layer of nylon.	

(a) TIN is the serial number of the tyre.

One-way tyres

Uni-directional tyres were developed to run in one direction only. On uni-directional tyres, the sidewall of the tyre is marked with arrows. It is imperative that the indicated direction is maintained. This is the only way to ensure the correct running characteristics.
The following factors are of particular concern: water hampering, adhesion, noise, wear and tear.

If, however, a tyre is fitted in the opposite direction of rolling, it is imperative to drive more carefully, as the tyre is no longer being used as intended. This is particularly important on wet roads. The tyre must be replaced or fitted in the correct running-in direction as quickly as possible.

Tyre load capacity

The load index indicates how many kilograms can be loaded on each tyre (load capacity).

80 450 kg
85 515 kg
90 600 kg
91 615 kg
93 650 kg
95 690 kg
97 730 kg
99 775 kg
100 800 kg

Speed code

The speed code indicates the maximum speed at which a tyre can be driven.

P maximum 150 km/h
Q maximum 160 km/h
R maximum 170 km/h
S maximum 180 km/h
T maximum 190 km/h
U maximum 200 km/h
H maximum 210 km/h
V maximum 240 km/h
W maximum 270 km/h
Y maximum 300 km/h

Some tyre manufacturers use a combination of letters "ZR" for tyres with a maximum permissible speed of over 240 km/h.

21A.5L1.TCR.60

Winter tyres

Please note⚠ at the beginning of this chapter on page 287.

In winter, winter tyres significantly improve the driving characteristics of the vehicle. Summer tyres have less effect against skidding on ice and snow due to their construction (length, rubber composition, tread pattern).
Volkswagen recommends the use of winter tyres or all-season tyres on all four wheels of the vehicle, especially when winter road conditions are expected. Winter tyres also improve the vehicle's braking behaviour and help to reduce stopping distances in winter conditions. . In temperatures below +7 °C, Volkswagen recommends fitting winter tyres.

Winter tyres will lose their winter efficiency if the **tyre tread** depth reaches a wear of 4 mm. In the same way, winter tyres suffer a significant loss of their characteristics due to **ageing**, irrespective of the tyre tread depth that still exists.

For the use of winter tyres, the following applies:

– Observe country-specific legal requirements.
– Use winter tyres on all 4 wheels simultaneously.
– Use only if the roads are in winter conditions.
– Use only winter tyre sizes suitable for the vehicle.
– Use winter tyres only with the same construction type, size (diameter) and profile.
– Observe the speed limit according to the speed code →⚠ .

Speed limit

Winter tyres have a maximum speed limit in accordance with the speed code → p. 297.

In the case of **winter tyres V**, the speed limit and tyre pressure depend on the engine. It is imperative to consult the Volkswagen dealer about the maximum permissible speed and the required tyre pressure.

⚠ WARNING

The improved driving properties of winter tyres in winter road conditions should not be an incentive to take a safety risk.

- Adapt speed and driving style to visibility, weather, runway and traffic conditions.
- Never exceed the maximum speed and the permissible payload for the winter tyres fitted.

Fit summer tyres again after the winter. At low temperatures
The driving characteristics of summer tyres are better at temperatures above +7 °C. Rolling noises are lower, as are tyre wear and fuel consumption.

On vehicles with tyre check indicator, after the wheel change,
the system must be reprogrammed → page 284.

If necessary, consult a Volkswagen Dealer with regard to sizes
of permitted winter tyres.

Wheel change

Introduction to the topic

Only carry out a do-it-yourself wheel change when the vehicle is safely parked, you are familiar with the necessary actions and safety precautions and the appropriate tools are available! Otherwise, seek specialist technical assistance.

⚠ WARNING

A wheel change can be dangerous, especially if it is carried out at the side of the road. To prevent accidents from occurring, the following guidelines should be observed:

- Stop the vehicle as soon as possible in a safe place. Park the vehicle at a safe distance from the flow of traffic so that the wheel can be changed.
- All passengers and especially children should always be kept at a safe distance away from the work area when changing the wheel.
- Turn on the warning lights and use the safety triangle to alert other drivers.
- Ensure that the floor is flat and firm. If so, use a stable support with a long surface for the cat.
- Only change the wheel yourself if you are familiar with the necessary actions. If this is not the case, seek specialist technical assistance.
- Always use only suitable and undamaged tools to change the wheel.
- Always switch off the engine, engage the parking brake and, with automatic transmission, move the selector lever to position **P** or, with manual transmission, engage a gear to reduce the risk of vehicle movement.
- After replacing the wheel, have the tightening torque of the wheel bolts checked with a calibrated torque spanner.
- On vehicles with tyre monitoring indicator, the system must be reprogrammed, if necessary, after the wheel change. → p. 284.

Preparations for the change of wheel

Please note⚠ at the beginning of this chapter on page 298.

Checklist

Always carry out the following actions at the specified time in preparation for the wheel change →⚠ :

1. In the case of a flat tyre, park the vehicle as far away as possible from the flow of traffic on a firm, level surface.
2. Pull the parking brake → p. 132.
3. Automatic transmission: move the selector lever to position **P** → page 120.
4. Switch off the engine and remove the vehicle key from the ignition lock → page 112.
5. Manual transmission: shift into gear → p. 118.
6. Have all vehicle occupants alight and position themselves safely away from traffic.
7. Chock the opposite wheel, using a stone or something similar.
8. When driving with a trailer: uncouple the trailer from the towing vehicle and park it correctly.
9. With the luggage compartment loaded: remove the luggage volumes.
10. Remove the spare wheel and on-board tools from the luggage compartment.

⚠

Observing the checklist is essential for the safety of the driver, passengers and other drivers to avoid possible accidents.

- Always follow the actions in the checklist and observe the safety precautions described therein.

Emergency wheel with dimensions different from those of the wheels in use.

Please note⚠ at the beginning of this chapter on page 298.

The vehicles are equipped with wheels with 16- and 17-inch rims, the vehicle's emergency wheel has a different rim size than the wheel used on the vehicle.

In addition to the different rim dimensions, vehicles equipped with an alloy wheel may have a steel emergency wheel.

The emergency wheel must be used temporarily instead of the vehicle's service wheel only for the time necessary to repair the wheel or tyre → ⚠ .

During this period, pay attention to the following precautions: after mounting the emergency wheel with different dimensions , the pressure must be checked and corrected if necessary. See the specified pressure on the inner side of the fuel tank door. On vehicles with tyre monitoring indicator, the system must be reprogrammed after the wheel change → page 284.

The wheel with different dimensions should be returned to its original condition as soon as possible after reinstallation of the vehicle's normal repaired or replaced wheel and tyre. Care should also be taken not to exceed the maximum load capacity, as specified by the code on the sidewall of the tyre.

To reduce the likelihood of damage to your vehicle's tyres and wheels:

– Avoid driving on roads with potholes, depressures or undulations. Impacts from driving over obstacles such as these can damage your vehicle's tyres and wheels. If it is necessary to drive in these conditions, it is essential to have your vehicle's tyres and wheels checked after the event, or to seek the support of a Volkswagen Dealer or a specialist company.
– If any damage to the tyre is noticed, the tyre must be replaced as quickly as possible, as there is a risk of the tyre bursting and the vehicle losing control.

⚠

Improper use of the emergency wheel with a different rim size for a longer period of time, or permanent substitution to the 15, 16 and 17 inch rim, may lead to loss of control of the vehicle, collisions or other accidents with a risk of serious injury.

- Never drive faster than 80 km/h with the emergency wheel with different tyre sizes than the vehicle's working wheel. Avoid sudden starts and braking as well as sharp turns.
- Never use more than one rim wheel with different dimensions at the same time.

Wheel bolts

Please note⚠ at the beginning of this chapter on page 298.



Fig. 217 Wheel replacement: Loosen the wheel bolts.

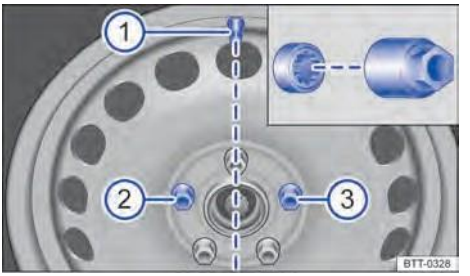


Fig. 218 Wheel change: tyre valve and mounting position of the anti-skid wheel screw 1 2 3 .

To loosen the wheel bolts, use only the wheel spanner belonging to the vehicle.

As long as the vehicle is not raised with the jack, loosen the wheel bolts by about one turn.

If it is difficult to loosen a wheel bolt, carefully press down on the end of the wheel spanner with your foot. To do this, stand firmly in the vehicle and take up a secure position.

Loosen the wheel bolts

– Insert the wheel spanner into the wheel bolt as far as it will go → fig. 217.
– Take the end of the wheel spanner and turn the wheel bolt approx. *one* turn anticlockwise →⚠ .

Loosen the anti-theft wheel bolt

Anti-theft wheel bolt not available for some countries.

– Remove the anti-theft wheel bolt adapter from the on-board toolbox.
– Insert the adapter into the bolt of the anti-theft wheel as far as it will go.
– Push the wheel spanner onto the adapter as far as it will go.
– Take the end of the wheel spanner and turn the wheel bolt approx. *one* turn anticlockwise →⚠ .

Important information on wheel bolts

The wheel bolts were specifically designed for the factory-fitted wheels. For this reason, the corresponding wheel bolts with the appropriate length and convexity must be used for each wheel change. The correct fastening of the wheels and the function of the brake system depend on this.

The screw of the anti-theft wheel must be screwed in.

on a wheel in the position → fig. 218 (2) o (3) at relation to the position of the tyre valve 1 . *Anti-theft wheel bolt not available for some countries.*

Tightening torque of the wheel bolts

Prescribed tightening torque for steel and light alloy wheel rims:

– **120 Nm**

Corroded and difficult to tighten wheel bolts must be replaced and the threaded holes in the wheel hub must be cleaned **before checking** the tightening torque.

Never grease or lubricate the wheel bolts or the threaded holes in the wheel hub. These can come loose during driving, even with the prescribed tightening torque.

After changing the wheel, the tightening torque must be checked immediately with a calibrated torque spanner.

⚠

Incorrectly tightened wheel bolts can come loose while driving and cause accidents, serious injury and loss of vehicle control.

- Use only the wheel bolts corresponding to the respective wheel.
- Never use different wheel bolts.
- The wheel bolts and threaded holes in the wheel hubs must be clean, easy to handle and free of oil and grease.
- Only use the wheel spanner supplied with the vehicle to loosen and tighten the wheel bolts.
- As long as the vehicle is not jacked up, loosen the wheel bolts by about one turn.
- Never grease or lubricate the wheel bolts or the threaded holes in the wheel hub. These can come loose during driving, even with the prescribed tightening torque.
- If the wheel bolts are tightened with too low a torque, the wheel bolts and wheels may come loose during driving. Excessive tightening torque may cause damage to the wheel bolts or the thread.

Lifting the vehicle with the jack

Please note ⚠ at the beginning of this chapter on page 298.



Fig. 219 Jack support points.

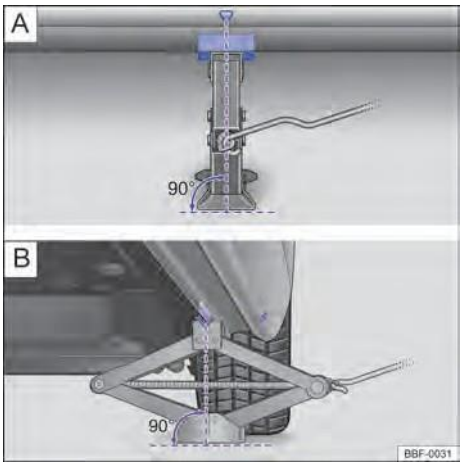


Fig. 220 Jack support points and jack positioned at the rear left side of the vehicle.

The jack may only be positioned at the indicated jacking points (marking on the carriage) → fig. 219. The jacking point near the corresponding wheel is valid →⚠ .

Checklist

The following points must be complied with as often as necessary to ensure your own safety and the safety of passengers →⚠ :

1. Choose a flat, firm floor on which to lift the vehicle.
2. Switch off the engine, shift into gear → page 118 for manual transmission or, for automatic transmission, move the selector lever to position **P** → page 120 and apply the parking brake.
   → p. 132.
3. Ensure that all passengers leave the vehicle.
4. Chock the opposite wheel, using a stone or something similar.
5. When driving with a trailer: uncouple the trailer from the towing vehicle and park it correctly.
6. Loosen the bolts of the wheel to be replaced → page 300.
7. Look underneath the vehicle for the jack support point → fig. 219 closest to the wheel to be replaced.
8. Insert the end of the wheel spanner into the jack eyelet and hold the wheel spanner on the socket side with the hexagon socket. Raise the jack as far as possible and place it under the vehicle's jacking point.
9. Ensure that the jack base, with its entire surface, is on the floor and that the base is perpendicularly below the point of placement → fig. 220.
10. Align the jack and simultaneously lift the jack claw until it engages in the cross member under the vehicle → fig. 220.
11. Continue to raise the jack until the wheel is off the ground.

⚠ WARNING

Incorrect use of the jack may result in the vehicle sliding, causing serious injury. To reduce the risk of injury, observe the following:

- Use only jacks released by Volkswagen for the vehicle. Other jacks, including those for other Volkswagen models, may slip.
- The floor must be flat and firm. A sloping or soft floor may cause the vehicle to slide. If this is the case, use a flat, long-surfaced jack stand.
- In case of a slippery floor, e.g. a brick floor, use a non-slip base, e.g. a rubber mat, to prevent the jack from slipping.
- Position the jack only at the indicated points. The claw of the jack must fit securely into the profile of the beam. → fig. 220.

- When driving with a trailer, uncouple the trailer from the towing vehicle before replacing the wheel.
- Never leave any part of the body, e.g. an arm or a leg, under the raised vehicle with only the jack.
- Ensure that all passengers leave the vehicle.
- If it is necessary to work underneath the vehicle, it must be additionally supported by suitable trestles.
- Never lift the vehicle if the engine is running or if the vehicle is on a sideways slope or steep slope.
- Never start the engine when the vehicle is jacked up. Vibrations from the engine can cause the vehicle to come off the

⚠ WARNING

Observing the checklist is essential for the safety of the driver, passengers and other drivers to avoid possible accidents.

- Always follow the actions in the checklist and observe the safety precautions described therein.

Changing the wheel

Please note⚠ at the beginning of this chapter on page 298.



Fig. 221 Wheel change: sequence of removing the wheel bolts.

Removing the wheel

– Please refer to the checklist → p. 299.
– Loosen the wheel bolts → page 300.
– Raise the vehicle → page 302.
– Remove loose wheel bolts completely with Ⓐ the wheel spanner and store on a clean surface.
– Remove the wheel.

Installing the emergency wheel

If necessary, observe the tyre running-in direction → page 284.

– Fit the emergency wheel.
– Fit the anti-theft wheel bolt clockwise and tighten *lightly* with the adapter. *Anti-theft wheel bolt not available for some countries.*
– Fit the remaining wheel bolts clockwise and tighten *lightly* with the wheel spanner.
– Lower the vehicle with the jack.
– Tighten all wheel bolts firmly with the wheel spanner →⚠ . Do not tighten in sequence, but always alternately.
between opposing wheel bolts.

⚠

Incorrect torque or incorrectly tightened or incorrectly handled wheel bolts can lead to loss of control of the vehicle, resulting in accidents and serious injury.

- Keep all wheel bolts and threaded holes in the wheel hubs clean and free of oil and grease at all times. Wheel bolts must be easy to handle and tightened to the prescribed torque.

The wheel bolts must be clean and turn freely. Never lubricate them.

When changing the wheel, if the bolts are found to be corroded or corroded, the wheel must be replaced with a new one.
If they are worn, they must be replaced before the tightening torque is tested and the thread must be cleaned.
ca of the wheel hub.

21A.5L1.TCR.60

After changing the wheel

Please note⚠ at the beginning of this chapter on page 298.

- If necessary, clean the tools on and put them back in the luggage compartment. → p. 244.
- Store the emergency wheel or changed wheel securely in the luggage compartment.
- Have the tightening torque of the wheel bolts checked as quickly as possible with a tachymeter.
- Replace the damaged wheel as soon as possible.

⚠ WARNING

After changing the wheel, always make sure that the on-board tools and the emergency wheel are securely locked in their housings.

On vehicles with tyre check indicator, after the wheel change, the system must be reprogrammed → p. 284.

Maintenance

Service

Maintenance services and digital maintenance and warranty

Through the **vehicle data sticker** on the back cover of this instruction manual, the **initial release or delivery date, the delivery inspection** and thus the start of the warranty coverage of your vehicle are confirmed.

In some markets, digital maintenance and warranty are not available. Your Volkswagen dealer will be able to inform you about service and documentation in this case.

Digital electronic record of maintenance services performed

The Volkswagen dealer or a specialist company will store the service records in the central system's memory. Through this transparent documentation of the service history, the vehicle's maintenance work can be accessed at any time. Volkswagen recommends that, after each service performed, a printed service voucher containing the service data stored in the system should be requested.

With each new service, the previous service ticket is replaced by an updated printout.

Service

Under Digital Maintenance and Warranty, the following information is documented by your Volkswagen Dealer or specialist company:

- When a certain service was performed.
- If you were given a repair recommendation, e.g. if the brake pads need to be changed soon.
- What components or fluids were changed.
- When is your next service deadline.

Insufficient or missing maintenance and ignoring maintenance intervals can cause vehicle stoppages, traffic accidents and serious injuries.

- Have the maintenance work carried out by an authorised Volkswagen dealer or a specialist company.

NOTICE

Volkswagen is not liable for damage to the vehicle due to insufficient service or missing parts.

Regular in-vehicle maintenance services are not only for the maintenance of the vehicle, but also to ensure that the vehicle is kept in good working order.
They also contribute to operational safety and traffic safety. For this reason, maintenance services must be carried out according to the vehicle's specifications.
of Volkswagen.

Your first service

The period for the performance of the service may be different depending on the country.

Petrol engine

Time- or mileage-based service Oil change service

The service is performed according to the indicator of the next service, and according to what happens first:

– after 1 year or every 10,000 km;
– after 1 year or every 15,000 km.

TOTALFLEX engine

Time- or mileage-based service Standard overhaul

The service is performed according to the indicator of the next service, and according to what happens first:

– after 1 year or every 10,000 km.

Information on the conditions of use

The indicated service intervals assume that **normal conditions of use**.

In case of **adverse conditions of use**, it is necessary to intersperse some services between the planned intervals before reaching the deadline of the next service.

Adverse conditions of use are considered to be adverse conditions of use:

– high sulphur fuel,
– frequent traffic at low engine speeds with heavy traffic, where the engine is kept for a long time at idle speed (e.g. 'walk and stop', urban traffic),
– on short journeys (less than 8 km per day) or with the engine running at temperatures below the engine speed considered ideal,
– in urban cycles with frequent stops,
– high ambient temperature associated with constant use of the air conditioner,
– Frequent traffic on poorly maintained, dusty or unpaved roads or paths,
– especially in situations with a high level of suspended particulate matter (mining, cement and steel industries, marble works, mines, etc.),
– predominantly with a trailer or underway with a load,
– taxi services, driving school, gas, special services (patrol, escort, ambulance, fire brigade, military and/or similar use, etc.) and/or similar services.

These conditions affect in particular the following parts:

– toothed belt,
– Dust and pollen filter,
– air filter,
– engine oil,

Your Volkswagen dealer will inform you about the possible need for any intermediate services, depending on the type of use of your vehicle.

Depending on the model and version of the vehicle equipment, as well as the additional services and inspections required

The costs of a Volkswagen service may vary. Your Volkswagen Dealer will inform you about the costs (labour and material) of maintenance services.
Volkswagen.

Service objectives

Depending on the vehicle model/version, some items of the service targets may not be available and/or will not apply to the vehicle.

The service targets include all **maintenance items** necessary to keep your vehicle safe to drive and safe for traffic (depending on the conditions of use or vehicle equipment, e.g. engine, transmission or fluids). Maintenance work is divided into *inspection items* and *maintenance items*. You can find out in detail which activities are required from your Volkswagen dealer.

Inspection items

Electrical system

- Battery: check
- Horn: check
- Lighting (internal and external): check
- Service interval indicator: set to zero
- Headlamps: check

Engine/Transmission

- Poly-V-belt: check
- Engine and components in the engine compartment (upper and lower parts): Check
- Cooling system: check
- Exhaust system: check
- Transmission and shaft drive system: check

Chassis

- Shock absorbers/coil springs: com- prove
- Protective hood of the joints: verify
- Electric/hydraulic steering: check
- Joint guides/steering rods: verify
- Brake fluid level: check
- Brake pads/discs: check
- Tyres: check
- Tyre pressures on all wheels: check
- Brake system: check

Bodywork

- Bodywork: check for damage and corrosion
- Water drains: check
- Palette of glass cleaners: com- prove
- Windscreen: check
- Underneath the vehicle: check
- Glass and headlamp washers and wipers system: check
- Test run: carry out
- Roof systems: check

Maintenance items

In addition to the inspection items (depending on the conditions of use of the vehicle's equipment, e.g. engine, transmission or fluids) other maintenance items should be performed on your vehicle. These items should be carried out according to *time* and/or *mileage*.

- Additives: replace/complement
- Toothed belt/toothed belt tensioner: check/replace
- Poly-V-belt: replace
- Air filter: replace
- Fuel filter: replace
- Brake fluid: replace
- Dust and pollen filter: replace
- Engine: replace filter/oil
- Shaft drive system/differential: replace oil
- Sunroof: clean and lubricate
- Transmission: change oil and filter
- Spark plugs: replace

For technical reasons (continuous development of components) there may be changes to the service targets. Volkswagen dealers are always informed about current changes.

Vehicle preservation

Guidelines for vehicle maintenance

Frequent and skilled maintenance contributes to **maintaining the value** of the vehicle. Proper maintenance can be one of the conditions for the recognition of warranty claims against corrosion damage and paintwork problems on the bodywork.

Suitable care products can be obtained from a Volkswagen Dealer.

WARNING

Preservatives can be toxic and dangerous. Unsuitable preservation products and their improper use can cause accidents, as well as serious injuries, burns and poisoning.

- Keep preservation products only in closed original containers.
- Observe the information on the packaging.
- Never use empty food cans, jars or other containers for the storage of preservation products, as their contents may not always be recognisable by people as the preservation product.
- Keep all preservation products out of the reach of children.
- Non-hazardous vapours may be released during use. Therefore, only use the products in the open air or in well-ventilated rooms.
- Never use fuel, turpentine, engine oil, nail polish remover or other highly volatile liquids for maintenance, washing or cleaning of the vehicle. These are toxic and highly flammable.

WARNING

Improper maintenance and cleaning of vehicle parts can restrict the vehicle's safety equipment and thus cause serious injuries.

- Clean and store vehicle parts only in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.
- Use the released or recommended cleaning products.

NOTICE

Cleaning products containing solvents attack to the materials and may damage them.

NOTICE

Never attempt to remove dirt, mud or dust when the surface of the vehicle is dry. Do not use a dry cloth or sponge for this purpose either, so as not to scratch the vehicle's paintwork or glass. Dirt, mud and dust must be softened with water before they can be removed.

When purchasing preservation products, choose ecologically correct products.

coughing.

Do not dispose of leftover preservation products in household waste. Ob-

Please refer to the information on the packaging.

Vehicle washing

The longer that insect residues, bird droppings, tree resin, urban or industrial dust, tar, soot and other aggressive deposits remain on the surface of the vehicle, the longer their destructive effect lasts. High temperatures and strong sunlight strengthen their corrosive effect. Wash the **underside** of the vehicle carefully and at regular intervals.

Automatic washing system

Observe the guidelines available on the automatic car wash system. Before an automatic car wash, take the usual precautions, e.g. close all windows and fold the door mirrors inwards,
to prevent damage. If the vehicle has parts

21A.5L1.TCR.60

The operator of the automatic washing system → ⓘ must be informed of any additional equipment, e.g. trailer, luggage compartment or antenna.

The vehicle's paintwork is so resistant that the vehicle can generally be washed without problems in automatic washing systems. However, the actual abrasion of the paintwork depends very much on the structure of the automatic car wash system. Volkswagen recommends washing in automatic washing systems without brushes.

To remove any wax residue from the windows to prevent scratches from the wiper blades, please observe the following → p. 309, *Cleaning the windows and door mirrors*.

High pressure washer

When washing the vehicle with a high-pressure washer, it is essential to follow the instructions for use of the high-pressure washer. This applies in particular to **pressure** and **jet distance** →⚠ .

Washing the vehicle with high pressure water may cause water to enter the vehicle. Avoid using a high pressure washer within 30 cm of the vehicle surface. Use of a high pressure washer in excess of 8000 kPa (80 bar) may cause damage or remove paint and adhesives.

Keep a large distance from highly malleable materials such as rubber hoses and insulating materials, such as parking distance control sensors. The parking distance control sensors are located in the rear bumper →ⓘ .

Do not use **circular jet nozzles** or **pipe nozzles** →⚠ .

Manual washing

When washing the vehicle by hand, first soften the dirt with plenty of water and rinse as much as possible.

Quickly clean the vehicle with a soft **sponge**, **wash mitt** or **brush**, applying little pressure. Start at the roof and work from top to bottom. Use a **cleaning shampoo** only on stubborn dirt.

Carefully rinse the sponge or wash mitt in short intervals.

Finally, clean the wheels, sills and similar parts. Use a second sponge for this purpose.

Preserving the vehicle's paintwork

Good preservation protects the vehicle's paintwork. As soon as the water no longer forms **visible droplets** on the *clean* surface of the vehicle's paintwork, it must be protected again with a good **preservative wax.**

Even if a **preservative wax** is used regularly in the automatic car wash system, Volkswagen recommends protecting the vehicle's paintwork at least twice a year by applying wax.

Polishing the vehicle's paintwork

Polishing is only necessary if the vehicle's paintwork loses its good looks when no further gloss is obtained by using a solvent.

If the polishing paste used does not contain preservative components, the vehicle's paintwork must be preserved immediately.

⚠ WARNING

Sharp vehicle parts can cause injury.

- Protect hands and arms from sharp parts when cleaning e.g. the underside of the vehicle or the inside of wheel housings.

⚠ WARNING

After washing the vehicle, the effectiveness of the braking performance may be delayed, increasing the braking distance due to moisture on the brake discs and brake pads or their gelation during the winter.

- "Dry brakes and remove ice" by careful braking manoeuvres. Proceed without putting other drivers at risk or failing to comply with legal requirements.

⚠ WARNING

Improper use of high pressure washers can cause permanent damage to tires and other materials, visible or not. This can cause serious accidents and injuries.

- Maintain sufficient distance between the jet nozzle and the tyres.

- Never clean tyres with circular nozzles ("tube nozzles"). Even with a relatively large distance and short exposure time, this can result in visible or non-visible damage to the tyres.

NOTICE

- The water temperature must not be above +60 °C.
- To avoid damage to the paintwork, do not wash the vehicle in direct sunlight.
- For the parking distance control to function properly, the sensors in the bumper must be kept clean and free of ice. When cleaning with a high-pressure washer or steam jet, the sensors should only be sprayed quickly, always keeping a distance of more than 30 cm.
- Do not use hard sponges, rough sponges from kitchen or similar, as this may damage the surface.
- Do not clean frozen or ice-covered glass with high-pressure washers.
- Clean the lantern with a damp cloth or sponge, never dry. Preferably use soapy water.
- Washing the vehicle in cold weather: When pouring water into the vehicle with a hose, do not direct the water jet directly onto the door locks or door seals or the cover. Locks and weatherstripping can freeze!

NOTICE

Before using an **automatic car wash**, the following points must be observed to prevent damage to the vehicle.

- Compare the track width of the vehicle with the distance of the lanes of the automatic car wash system to avoid damaging the wheels and tyres!
- Compare the height and length of the vehicle with the passage height and length of the automatic laning system!
- Fold the door mirrors to the rear.
- To prevent damage to the paintwork of the engine compartment cover, fold the wiper blades onto the windscreen when they are dry. Do not drop them!
- Lock the rear cover to prevent unintentional opening of the automatic washing system.

NOTICE

- In order to avoid damage, do not apply polishing products.
  The lamp, lanterns and parts made of plastic or painted with opaque coating shall be treated with a preservative wax on the lamp, lanterns and parts.
- Do not polish the vehicle's paintwork in sandy or dusty environments or if dirt is present.

Wash the vehicle only in places specially designed for this purpose, so that the vehicle can be washed in a safe place.
water with any oil, grease or fuel residues does not enter the sewage system. In some regions, it is forbidden to wash vehicles outside specially reserved areas.
for this purpose.

Clean and maintain the exterior of the vehicle

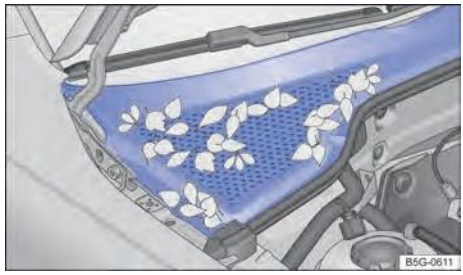


Fig. 222 Between engine compartment and windscreen: water box (schematic representation).

Cleaning the windows and exterior mirrors

Wet the windows and exterior mirrors with a standard alcohol-based glass cleaner.

Dry the glass surface with a clean flannel or a lint-free cloth. A cloth that was used to clean the painted surfaces of the vehicle contains greasy residues of preservatives and may therefore soil the glass surfaces.

Rubber, oil, grease or silicone residues can be removed with glass cleaner or silicone solvent →

Remove wax residues

Automatic car wash systems or maintenance products may leave **wax residues** on the glass surfaces. These wax residues can only be removed with a special cleaning agent or cleaning cloths. Wax residues cause loss of performance of the wiper system as well as irregular movements and loud noises. Volkswagen recommends removing wax residues from the windows and exterior rear view mirrors with a cleaning cloth after every car wash.

Excessive rubbing can be prevented by adding a glass cleaner with wax-removing properties to the water tank of the glass washers. When adding the cleaning agent, observe the recommended mixing ratios.

Grease-removing cleaning agents do not remove these wax residues →(!) .

Special cleaning agents or glass cleaning cloths are available from your Volkswagen Dealer.

Snow removal

Remove snow from all windows and exterior rear view mirrors with a small brush.

Remove the ice

To remove ice, preferably use an antifreeze spray. When using an ice scraper, move it only in one direction, **without** moving it back and forth. When moving it back and forth, dirt can scratch the glass.

Cleaning chrome and aluminium parts

– Dampen a clean, soft, lint-free cloth and use it to wipe the surfaces.
– In case of heavy soiling, use a special **solvent-free** care product.
– Afterwards, polish chrome and aluminium parts with a soft, dry cloth.

Cleaning steel wheels

Brake residues that adhere to the wheels can be removed with an industrial cleaning agent. For this reason, clean the steel wheels regularly with a special sponge.

Paint damage to steel wheels must be treated before they rust.

Preservation and cleaning of light alloy wheels

Clean brake residues on light alloy wheels **every 2 weeks**. Quickly clean the wheels with an acid-free wheel care product. Volkswagen recommends carefully waxing the wheels **every 3 months**.

Failure to clean debris from the brake regularly will result in damage to the light alloy.

For cleaning, use an acid-free cleaning agent suitable for light alloy wheels. Do not use polishing paste or other abrasive products for wheel care.

If the protective ink coating on the wheels is damaged (e.g. due to hail rain), the damage must be rectified immediately.

Retain rubber weatherseals

Rubber weatherstripping on doors, windows, etc. remains more flexible, seals better and lasts longer if it is regularly treated with a rubber preservative.

Before application, remove dust and dirt from the rubber weatherseals with a soft cloth.

Defrosting the door locking cylinder

Volkswagen recommends using the original Volkswagen spray with moisturising and anti-rust effect to defrost the door locking cylinder.

Protection of the underside of the vehicle

The underside of the vehicle is protected against chemical and mechanical influences. During driving, the protective layer on the underside of the vehicle can be damaged. Volkswagen therefore recommends that the protective coating on the underside of the vehicle and the chassis be checked regularly and repaired if necessary.

Hollow cavities

All cavities exposed to corrosion are subjected to long-term protection at the factory.

This preservation does not need to be checked or retouched. If, at high external temperatures, a little wax drips out of the cavities, it can be removed with a plastic spatula and benzine.

Clean the engine compartment

The engine compartment is a hazardous area of the vehicle → page 263.

The engine compartment must be cleaned by a Volkswagen dealer or a specialist company. Improper cleaning can, among other things, lead to the corrosion protection being removed and damage to the vehicle's electrical components. In addition, water can get into the interior of the vehicle via the water box →ⓘ .

If the engine compartment is very dirty, always look for a specialised engine compartment cleaning company. Volkswagen recommends Volkswagen Dealers for this purpose.

Water box

– The water box is located in the engine compartment between the windscreen and the engine and under a perforated cover → fig. 222. Ambient air is drawn from the water box into the vehicle interior by the heating and ventilation system or the air conditioning system.
– Periodically remove leaves and other loose objects from the water box cover by hand or with the help of a hoover.

Sensors, reversing camera lens

Clean the area in front of the sensors or the housing with a soft cloth and a solvent-free cleaning agent. Observe the installation locations → p. 8.

⚠

Dirty and fogged glass reduces visibility and increases the risk of accidents and serious injury.

- Drive only when you can see clearly through all the windows of the vehicle.
- Remove ice and snow and demist the glass surface, both inside and out.

⚠ WARNING

All work on the engine or engine compartment can result in injuries, burns and risk of accidents and fire!

- Before starting work, be familiar with the necessary actions and the generally applicable safety precautions → p. 263, *Safety instructions for work in the engine compartment*.
- Volkswagen recommends that the work be carried out by a Volkswagen Dealer.

⚠ ATTENTION

Underbody protection and anti-corrosion products may catch fire if they come into contact with the heated exhaust system or other hot parts of the vehicle.

- Do not use anti-corrosion and underbody protection products on the exhaust pipe, catalytic converters, heat shield plates or other hot vehicle parts.

ⓘ *NOTICE*

- Perfectly clean glass contributes to the proper functioning of the glass cleaning system as well as to its maintenance.
- Never mix the recommended cleaning agents with other cleaning agents in the water tank of the glasswashing machine. This can lead to coagulation of the cleaning agents and thus to clogging of the nozzles of the glasswasher.
- Do not remove snow or ice from windows and door mirrors with warm or hot water. Otherwise, the glass may break!
- Do not use an ice scraper on mirror lenses, as this will damage the chromatised surface and cause scratches!
- The windscreen defroster threads are located on the inside of the windscreen. Do not stick adhesive labels on the defroster threads and never clean the inside of the window with corrosive cleaners or cleaners containing acids or other ingredients.
chemicals.

NOTICE

So that chrome and aluminium parts are not damaged:

- Do not clean or polish in direct sunlight.
- Do not clean or polish in dusty or sandy environments.
- Do not use any preservatives with a strong abrasive action, e.g. cleaning cream.
- Do not use hard sponges, rough kitchen sponges or similar.
- Do not polish dirty surfaces.
- Do not use cleaning agents containing solvents.
- Do not use waxes.

NOTICE

The use of defrosting agents with degreasing substances can rust the locking pump of the doors.

NOTICE

Water manually introduced into the water box (e.g. when using a high-pressure washer) can cause serious damage to the vehicle.

Before removing the drained wax with benzine, it is necessary to check the prescriptions of the manufacturer.
The Committee is of the opinion that this product is not covered by the safety and environmental protection provisions of the Directive.

Considering that when the engine is washed, fuel residues are washed away in the water, the
For this reason, the contaminated water must be purified by means of an oil separator. For this reason, the engine must only be flushed by means of an oil separator.
The use of the product in extreme cases and in appropriate locations.

Clean and maintain the interior of the vehicle.

The fabrics of modern items of clothing, such as dark jeans, for example, often do not have a sufficiently firm dyeing. In particular, in the case of key seat coverings (fabric or leather), and even in accordance with the rules of use, clearly visible stains can occur due to the decolourisation of these clothing fabrics. In this

In some cases, it is not a failure of the coating, but a lack of colour fastening in the fabrics of the garment.

The longer stains, dirt and other deposits remain on the surface of the vehicle parts and filler, the more difficult cleaning and maintenance will become. In particular, long periods of exposure may mean that stains, dirt and deposits can no longer be removed.

Seat upholstery

For the handling and care of the seat upholstery, please note:

– Before entering the vehicle, close all hook-and-loop fasteners that may come into contact with the upholstery or fabric coverings. Open hook-and-loop fasteners may cause damage to the padding and fabric coverings.
– To prevent damage to the filling and fabric coverings, avoid direct contact with sharp objects and applications. Applications can be e.g. fasteners, brackets and decorative stones on clothing parts or belts.
– Regularly remove dust and dirt particles from pores, folds and seams to prevent damage to the seat surface due to constant rubbing.
– Check the colour of the clothes for good colourfastness to avoid stains on the seat coverings. This applies in particular to light-coloured seat covers.

Cleaning upholstery, fabric and NT upholstery - not microfibre cloth

– Read and follow the handling, instructions and warnings on the packaging before using cleaning products.
– Regularly clean upholstery, fabric upholstery, NT - microfibre non-fabric seat upholstery and floor carpeting with a hoover (brush tip).
– Do not use high-pressure washers, steam jets or freezing spray.
– For general cleaning, use a soft sponge or a microfibre cloth without threads →ⓘ .
– Clean NT - non-woven microfibre surfaces with a slightly damp wool or cotton cloth or with a microfibre cloth without yarn.
chas →ⓘ .

The cleaning of general surface soiling, filling or fabric coverings can be carried out with a conventional cleaning foam.

In the event of heavy soiling in general on the filler and fabric coverings, information on suitable cleaning options should be obtained from a Volkswagen Dealer before cleaning. If necessary, hire a specialist cleaning company.

Stain treatment of upholstery, fabric upholstery and NT - not microfibre fabrics

When treating stains, it may be necessary to clean not only the spot, but the entire surface. Especially if it is soiled by general wear and tear. Otherwise, the treated surface may become lighter than the rest of the surface. If there is any doubt, seek out a specialist cleaning company.

***Water-based stains*, e.g.** En
coffee or fruit juice.

First, wipe the stain as quickly as possible with a dry, absorbent cloth, so that the liquid does not penetrate the stain. For more stubborn stains, dampen the sponge with a spray bottle and wipe the stain in a circular motion.

Wipe with a dry, absorbent cloth.

***Stubborn stains*, e.g. chocolate or make-up.**

Use only cleaning products released by Volkswagen. If necessary, hire a specialist cleaning company to clean the filler.

***Grease-based stains*, e.g. oil or lipstick.**

Use only cleaning agents released by Volkswagen. If necessary, have the filler cleaned by a specialist cleaning company.

Preservation and treatment of natural leather upholstery

If you have any questions regarding the cleaning and care of the vehicle's leather finish, please contact a Volkswagen dealer or a specialist company.

Natural leather is a sensitive material.

– Use regularly, after each cleaning, a care cream with sun protection factor and impregnating effect. This cream nourishes and moisturises the leather, making it soft and stimulating its breathing. At the same time, it produces a protective film.
– Clean the leather every two to three months, removing fresh dirt.
– Treat the leather every six months with a suitable leather care product →ⓘ .
– Clean with cleaning and care products in small quantities, using a dry, lint-free woollen or cotton cloth. Do not apply cleaning and care products directly to the leather.
– Remove fresh pen, ink, lipstick and shoe grease stains as quickly as possible.
– Preserve the colour of the leather. Touch up discoloured areas with a special leather cream as necessary.
– Remove excess with a soft cloth.

Cleaning natural leather upholstery

Volkswagen recommends using a woollen or cotton cloth slightly dampened with water for general cleaning.

Take care that the leather does not get wet at any point and that water does not penetrate through the seams.

Before cleaning the leather upholstery, observe the following guidelines → p. 312, *Cleaning upholstery, fabric and NT upholstery - do not use microfibre cloth.*

Heavier soiling - Spread a mild soap solution[1)] with a wrung out cloth. Ab- sorb by pressing gently with a dry cloth.

***Water-based stains*, e.g. coffee, tea, juices, blood, etc.**

Remove stains while they are still damp with an absorbent cloth. Use a cleaning agent suitable for spots already dry →ⓘ .

[1)] Mild soap solution: two tablespoons of neutral soap in one litre of water.

21A.5L1.TCR.60

***Grease-based stains*, e.g. oil, lipstick, etc.**
Remove stains while they are still damp with an absorbent cloth. Use a cleaning agent suitable for stains that have not yet penetrated the surface →ⓘ .

***Special stains*, e.g. from ballpoint pen, nail polish, marker, ink spray, shoe polish, etc.**
Wipe dry with a dry, absorbent cloth. Clean with a special stain remover suitable for leather.

Cleaning synthetic leather upholstery

Before cleaning the synthetic leather upholstery, please note the following information → p. 312, *Cleaning upholstery, fabric upholstery and NT - not microfibre* cloth.

Use only water and neutral soap for cleaning synthetic leather upholstery.

Cleaning of slides and beverage holders

There is a removable rubber device at the base of some slides and baby carriers.

– Moisten a clean, lint-free cloth with water and wipe the parts.
– If this is not sufficient, use a special **solvent-free** plastic cleaning and care product.

Cleaning the ashtray

– Remove and empty the ashtray.
– Wipe with a cleaning towel.

To clean the ashtray and remove ash residues, use e.g. a toothpick or similar object.

Preservation and cleaning of plastic parts, wooden decorative elements and the instrument panel

– Moisten a clean, lint-free cloth with water and wipe the parts.
– Treat *plastic parts (inside and outside the vehicle) and the instrument panel* with a **solvent-free** plastic cleaning and care product released by Volkswagen →⚠ .
– Treatment of *decorative elements in wood* with a mild soap solution [1].

Cleaning seat belts

Coarse dirt on the seat belt webbing impairs the automatic winding of the seat belt and thus the function of the seat belt.

Seat belts must never be removed for cleaning.

– Remove coarse dirt with a soft bristle brush →⚠ .
– Pull the dirty seat belt all the way out and leave the belt webbing unwound.
– Clean the seat belt with *mild* soap *solution1)*.
– Allow the treated belt fabric to dry completely.
– The seat belt should only be taken off as soon as it is completely dry.

⚠ WARNING

Improper maintenance and cleaning of vehicle components can damage the vehicle's safety equipment and cause serious injury as a result.

- Clean and store vehicle parts only in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.
- Use the released or recommended cleaning products.

⚠ WARNING

The use of cleaning agents containing solvents makes the surface of the air bag modules porous. In the event of an accident when the air bag is triggered, loose plastic parts can cause serious injuries.

- Never clean the instrument panel and the surface of the airbag modules with solvent cleaning agents.

⚠ WARNING

Check the condition of all seat belts regularly. If the belt webbing or other belt components are damaged, they must be removed and replaced by a Volkswagen Dealer. Damaged seat belts pose a great danger and can cause serious or fatal injuries.

[1] Mild soap solution: two tablespoons of neutral soap in one litre of water.

- Safety belts and their components must never be chemically sanitised or come into contact with corrosive liquids, solvents or sharp objects. This will seriously impair the strength of the belt fabric.
- A clean seat-belt must be completely dry before being picked up, as moisture may damage the automatic seat-belt reel and impair its function.
- Never allow foreign objects or liquids to get into the seat belt buckle attachments. This may limit the functionality of the seatbelt latches and seatbelts.
- Never attempt to repair, modify or remove seat belts yourself.
- Replace damaged seat belts immediately with new seat belts supplied for the vehicle by Volkswagen. Seat belts that were used in an accident and are therefore stretched must be replaced by a Volkswagen Dealer. Replacement may be necessary even if there is no visible damage. In addition, the seat belt anchorages must be checked.

NOTICE

- Cleaning agents with solvents add to the materials and can damage them irreparably.
- Stains, dirt and other deposits with aggressive components and solvents add to the material and can damage it irreparably, even after a short period of exposure.
- Remove stains, dirt and other sediment as quickly as possible and do not allow them to dry.
- To avoid damage, hire a specialist cleaning company to remove stubborn stains.

NOTICE

- Do not use a steam sanitiser, as it causes the dirt to penetrate more deeply into the fabrics.
- High-pressure washers and freezing sprays can damage the upholstery.

NOTICE

- Only use a soft bristle brush to clean carpets and rugs! The brush can damage other fabric surfaces.
- If washing pastes or solutions are used with a damp cloth or a sponge, marks may appear on the lining after drying. As a rule, these marks are difficult to remove or cannot be removed at all.

NOTICE

- The NT - non-cloth microfibre cannot be used in any way.
- The NT - non-cloth microfibre must not be treated with leather care products, solvents, wax, shoe polish, shoe polish, polish removers or similar products.
- Do not use brushes for cleaning with water, as this may damage the surface of the material.

NOTICE

- Leather cannot be treated with solvents, wax, shoe polish, shoe grease, stain remover or similar in any way.
- If a stain penetrates into the surface after a long exposure time, the stain can no longer be removed.
- Absorb spilled liquids immediately with an absorbent cloth, as the surface of the leather and the seams are not resistant to the penetration of liquids for a long time.
- Protect the leather from excessive sun exposure to prevent discolouration.

NOTICE

Synthetic leather must not be treated with solvents, wax, shoe polish, stain removers or similar products. These cause the material to dry out and break prematurely.

NOTICE

Some vehicle flavourings contain substances in their chemical composition which may cause damage to the structure, surface and the painting of vehicle interior trim.

21A.5L1.TCR.60

The company's own maintenance products are marketed by dealers. Volkswagen.

Volkswagen recommends that a specialised cleaning company be hired for the re motion of possible stains on the seat coverings.

Slight colour changes in natural leather upholstery are normal, caused by the use.

Accessory, replacement parts, repairs and modifications

Accessories and spare parts

Volkswagen recommends seeking information from a Volkswagen Dealer before purchasing accessories, replacement parts or resources. For example, if the vehicle needs to be equipped with accessories or if parts need to be replaced. The Volkswagen Dealer advises on regulatory issues and factory recommendations with regard to accessories, replacement parts and resources.

Volkswagen recommends using only **Volkswagen Accessories** and **Volkswagen Genuine Parts**. For this, Volkswagen has established credibility, safety and qualification. In addition, a Volkswagen Dealer is qualified for professional installation.

Despite constant market monitoring, products **not released by Volkswagen** cannot be assessed by Volkswagen with regard to credibility, safety and qualification for use in the vehicle. For this reason, Volkswagen also accepts no liability, even in cases where there is an approval by an officially recognised technical testing and inspection association or an approval by an official body.

⚠ WARNING

Improperly performed repairs and modifications to the vehicle can compromise the effectiveness of airbags, as well as cause malfunctions, accidents and fatal injuries.

- Never place, mount or attach objects such as drink holders, mobile phone holders and GPS (Global Positioning System) next to or on the covers of the airbag modules or in the expansion radius of the airbag.
- Objects placed, mounted or attached within the expansion area of the airbags may cause serious or fatal injury if the airbags deploy.

⚠

Unsuitable replacement parts and accessories as well as improperly performed work, modifications and repairs can cause damage to the vehicle, accidents and serious injuries.

- Volkswagen recommends using only accessories released by Volkswagen and Volkswagen original spare parts. For this, Volkswagen has established credibility, safety and qualification.
- Repairs and modifications to the vehicle may only be carried out by a Volkswagen Dealer. Volkswagen dealers have the necessary tools, diagnostic equipment, repair information and qualified personnel.
- Only fit parts which correspond to the original factory version and characteristics of the vehicle.
- Use only wheel and tyre combinations released by Volkswagen for the vehicle model.

Repairs and technical modifications

In the case of repairs and technical modifications, the Volkswagen guidelines →⚠ must be strictly adhered to!

Interventions in the electronic components and the respective software can lead to malfunctions. Due to the networking of electronic components, malfunctions can also involve systems which are not directly related. This seriously compromises the driving safety of the vehicle through increased abrasion of vehicle parts and, ultimately, loss of operability.

The Volkswagen Dealer cannot provide a warranty against damage caused by technical modifications and improper repairs.

The Volkswagen dealer is not liable for damage caused by improper technical modifications and repairs. Such damage is also not covered by the Volkswagen warranty.

Volkswagen recommends that all technical modifications and repairs be carried out at authorised Volkswagen Dealers with **Volkswagen Genuine Parts**.

WARNING

Improperly performed repairs and modifications can cause malfunctions and damage to the vehicle and compromise the effectiveness of the driver assistance system. This can lead to accidents and serious injuries.

- Repairs and modifications to the vehicle may only be carried out by a Volkswagen Dealer.

Repairs and limitations of the airbag system

In the case of repairs and technical modifications, the Volkswagen guidelines →⚠ must be strictly adhered to!

Modifications and repairs to the front bumper, doors, roof lining or bodywork must only be carried out by a dealer.
Volkswagen. It is possible that these vehicle parts The airbag system components and sensors of the airbag system shall be installed in the vehicle.

During all work on the airbag system, such as the installation and removal of airbag parts for other repairs, it is possible that parts of the airbag system may be damaged. This may result in the airbags not working or not working properly in the event of an accident.

To ensure that the effectiveness of the airbags is not impaired and that dismantled parts do not cause injury or pollute the environment, the regulations must be observed. These regulations are known to Volkswagen dealers.

An alteration to the vehicle's suspension may compromise the function of the airbag system in an impact. For example, using a wheel/tyre combination which has not been approved by Volkswagen and which causes a lowering of the vehicle by altering the stiffness of the suspension, including the springs, spring arm, shock absorber, etc., may cause a change in the reaction of the airbag sensors which send the information to the electronic control unit. Some modifications to the springs may, for example, cause changes in the suspension and consequently alter the reaction of the sensors and trigger the airbag system in impact scenarios, in which the airbags would normally not be triggered if the modifications had not been made. Other modifications may change the reaction measured by the sensors and prevent the airbag from being triggered if it needs to be activated.

⚠

Improperly performed repairs and modifications can cause malfunctions and damage to the vehicle and compromise the effectiveness of the airbag system. This can lead to accidents and serious or fatal injuries.

- Repairs and modifications to the vehicle may only be carried out by a Volkswagen Dealer.
- Airbag modules cannot be repaired, but can be replaced.
- Never install airbag parts removed from older vehicles or recycling processes in the vehicle.

21A.5L1.TCR.60

⚠ WARNING

Alterations to the vehicle's suspension, including the use of tyre/wheel combinations not released by Volkswagen, may alter the function of the airbag system and increase the risk of serious or fatal injury in the event of an accident.

- Never fit suspension components which do not have the same characteristics as the original spare parts fitted to the vehicle.
- Never use wheel/tyre combinations that have not been released by Volkswagen.

Parts of the airbag system must not be reused if the vehicle is scrapped.

The use of the product or some of its components must be ensured. In addition to complying with the applicable safety regulations, environmentally sound destination regulations must also be observed. Volkswagen

d

ealers are familiar with these regulations .

Retrofitting of devices from transmission

An external antenna is required for the operation of transmitting devices in the vehicle.

The subsequent installation of electrical or electronic equipment in the vehicle affects the type of vehicle licence. In certain circumstances, this extinguishes the vehicle's licence to use the vehicle.

Volkswagen released the operation of transmissions under the following conditions:

– Outdoor antenna properly mounted.
– Maximum transmitting power of 10 W.

The ideal range of the devices can only be achieved with an external antenna.

If a transmission unit is to be operated with a transmission power of more than 10 W, please contact a specialist company that is familiar with the technical possibilities of the modification or a Volkswagen dealer.

Observe the legal regulations as well as the operating instructions and guidelines in the operating instructions for the transmission unit.

⚠ WARNING

An unsecured or improperly secured transmission unit can be thrown out of the interior of the vehicle by a sudden swerving or braking manoeuvre, or in an accident, and cause serious injury.

- Always securely fasten or store the transmission unit correctly and outside the expansion area of the airbag when driving.

⚠ ATTENTION

When using a non-connected transmitting device with an external antenna, the limit values for electromagnetic radiation in the vehicle may be exceeded and the health of the driver and occupants of the vehicle may be affected. This also applies to an improperly mounted external antenna.

- Operate the transmitting device in the vehicle only with a properly connected external antenna.

Information stored in the control units

The vehicle is factory-equipped with control units which, among other things, perform the engine and transmission control functions. In addition, the control units monitor the operation of the exhaust system and the airbags.

The electronic control units also continuously evaluate the relevant vehicle data while driving. In case of faults or deviations from the reference values, these data are stored exclusively. Faults are normally displayed by the control lamps of the combined instrument.

The data stored in the control units can only be read and evaluated by special devices.

The installed control units do not record conversations in the vehicle in any way.
ra.

Reprogramming of control units

In principle, all data for the control of components are stored in the control units. Some comfort functions such as comfort flasher signals, individual door opening and display indicators can be reprogrammed by means of special devices. If the comfort functions are reprogrammed, the corresponding information and descriptions in these operating instructions will no longer correspond to the original functions. Volkswagen recommends having the reprogramming added by a Volkswagen dealer for maintenance and digital warranty purposes.

The Volkswagen dealer is in possession of the information on possible reprogramming of the control units.

Reading the vehicle fault record

There is a diagnostic connection socket inside the vehicle for reading out the fault log →⚠ . Data on the function and status of the electronic control units are stored in the fault log. Additional information on the stored data can be obtained from a Volkswagen dealer or a specialist company.

The diagnostic connection socket is located in the footwell on the driver's side near the fuse box.

The fault log may only be read and restored by a Volkswagen Dealer.

After a fault has been corrected, the information about the fault is deleted from the memory. Other contents of the memory are updated continuously.

⚠

Improper use of the diagnostic socket can lead to malfunctions and also to accidents or serious injuries.

- Never read the fault log yourself via the diagnostic connection socket.
- The diagnostic connection socket may only be read by a Volkswagen dealer or a specialist company.

Use of a mobile phone in the vehicle without connection to the external aerial

Mobile phones transmit and receive radio waves, also known as high-frequency energy, both during a call and in standby mode. Current scientific literature warns that radio waves can harm the human body if certain limits are exceeded. Governmental bodies and international committees have established limit values and guidelines to ensure that the electromagnetic radiation emitted by mobile phones is within a range that is harmless to human health. However, there is no definitive scientific evidence that mobile phones are completely safe.

For this reason, some specialists call for a preventive attitude towards the use of mobile phones and for measures to be taken to reduce the radiation acting on the human body.

When using a mobile phone not connected to an external phone antenna inside the vehicle, electromagnetic radiation may be higher than when the mobile phone is connected to an integrated or other external antenna.

If the vehicle is equipped with a suitable voice-over system, which allows the use of a number of additional functions of Bluetooth® compatible mobile phones, it complies with the legal regulations in many countries which allow the use of a mobile phone in the vehicle only by means of a voice-over system.

Mobile phones must be in a phone holder or securely stowed in the vehicle. If a phone holder is used, it must be securely locked to the base plate. Only in this way is the mobile phone securely fixed to the instrument panel and always within easy reach of the driver.

A mobile phone connected to the in-vehicle telephone antenna or to an antenna on the outside of the phone reduces the emission of electromagnetic radiation acting on the human body. In addition, this results in a better connection quality.

If the mobile phone is used inside the vehicle without the handsfree device, it will not be securely attached to the vehicle, nor will be connected to the vehicle's external phone antenna. In addition, the mobile phone will not be recharged by the cradle, and it is likely that the existing call may be interrupted and the call quality affected.

This means that a mobile phone can only be used in the vehicle if it is connected to a handsfree device. Volkswagen recommends using an external antenna for mobile phone use in the vehicle.

Bluetooth® is a registered trademark of Bluetooth® SIG, Inc.

⚠ WARNING

An unsecured or improperly secured mobile phone can be thrown from inside the vehicle by a sudden steering or steering manoeuvre, as well as in an accident, and cause serious injury.

- Secure mobile phone, other devices and phone accessories, e.g. mobile phone holder, notepad and GPS (global positioning system) correctly or safely stow them while driving and outside the airbag expansion areas.

⚠

When using a mobile phone without a connection to an external antenna, the limit values for electromagnetic radiation in the vehicle may be exceeded and the health of the driver and passengers may be affected. This also applies to an improperly mounted external antenna.

- Maintain a minimum distance of 20 centimetres between mobile phone antennas and a cradiac pacemaker, as mobile phones can influence the function of cardiac pacemakers.
- Do not carry lighted mobile phones in the chest pocket directly over the sea.
- In case of suspected interference of the mobile phone with a cardiac pacemaker or other medical device, switch off the mobile phone immediately.

Mobile phone holder and USB charger input

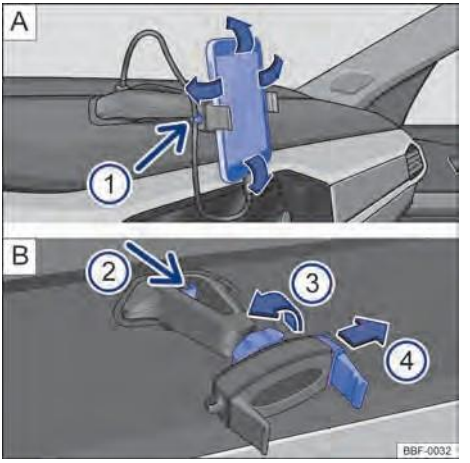


Fig. 223 In the centre console: holder for mobile phone and settings.

Mobile phone support may not be available for all versions.

Installing the mobile phone holder

– Place the holder over the opening and press down until it audibly clicks into place (two clicks)→⚠ .

Uninstalling the mobile phone cradle

– If applicable, remove the mobile phone from the so- porte.
– Hold the bracket with one hand and press the release button → fig. 223 ② (arrow).
– Remove the instrument panel bracket from the top.

Installing the mobile phone in the cradle

– With the rod → fig. 223 ④ move in the di- The arrow is to be placed in the housing, and the cellular phone is to be installed in the housing.
– Loosen the rod and check the fixing of the mobile phone.

Uninstalling the mobile phone from the cradle

– Hold the mobile phone firmly in one hand.
- Use the other hand to move the rod → fig. 223 until ④ you can remove the device from the accommodation.

– Remove the mobile phone.
– If necessary, remove the instrument panel bracket.

USB charger input

The mobile phone can be charged via the USB charger input. The charging time depends on the type of device used and the active functions of the device during the charging time. The maximum capacity of the USB charger is approximately 1.5A.

The USB charger function is only available when the vehicle ignition is switched on.

– Plug the USB cable into the USB charger socket on the bracket on the instrument panel → fig. 223 .
– Fasten the cable in the bracket → fig. 223 (1) .
– When no longer required, remove the USB cable from the cradle.

Adjustments

– To release the movement of the bracket, turn the lock → fig. 223 (2) in the opposite direction of the arrow.
– Move the bracket to the desired position.
– To fix the position, turn the lock in the direction of the arrow → fig. 223 until the bracket is completely fixed.

WARNING

Driver distraction while driving can cause accidents and injuries. Mobile phone use can distract attention from what is happening in traffic.

- Handling a mobile phone while driving a vehicle is a very serious traffic offence.
- Always drive responsibly and pay the utmost attention to traffic.
- Select the sound volume setting so that acoustic signals from outside (e.g. the sound of emergency service sirens) can be heard.
- Too high a volume can impair hearing. This is also the case when hearing is subjected even briefly to high volumes.

WARNING

An unsecured or improperly secured bracket can be thrown around inside the vehicle by a sudden steering or braking manoeuvre, or in an accident, and cause serious injury.

- Fit the mobile phone holder in the corresponding opening in the instrument panel.

WARNING

Always switch off your mobile phone in places where there is a risk of fire, e.g. fuel stations. Electromagnetic radiation can generate sparks and thus cause a fire.

NOTICE

Move the mobile phone holder carefully when adjusting it and do not move it any further than this point.

- An unsecured or improperly secured cradle may come loose from the cradle and be thrown around inside the vehicle, causing damage to the cellular phone.

NOTICE

Very high or very low ambient temperatures can affect the operation of the mobile phone or damage the device.

- Always carry your mobile phone when you leave your vehicle, to protect it from very high or very low temperatures or high sunlight.

NOTICE

The USB charger input is intended exclusively for charging mobile phone devices attached to the cradle and not for exchanging data with other devices in the vehicle. Data carriers such as pen drives have no function if they are connected to the USB charger input of the mobile phone cradle.

NOTICE

Moisture can damage the USB charger input of the mobile phone holder in the instrument panel.

- Wipe the mobile phone holder dry. Use a dry cloth

Volkswagen recommends that you always carry your mobile phone with you when you leave the vehicle.
to prevent it from being stolen.

The mobile phone holder has a 3-year warranty , with the exception of the vaslider (claw) → fig. 223 ④ which has **1 year** warranty.

Consumer information

Volkswagen Warranty

Volkswagen Dealer Warranty

Volkswagen Dealers grant a warranty against manufacturing defects on the vehicles they sell.

Volkswagen dealers guarantee that the vehicles they sell are free of manufacturing defects.

For further details on the conditions and terms of the warranty, please refer to your sales contract.

For more information, please contact your Volkswagen Dealer.

Natural abrasion, damage resulting from misuse of the vehicle, improper maintenance or inadmissible modifications are excluded from the warranty.

If your vehicle does not work properly, please contact your nearest Volkswagen Dealer.

Bodywork warranty

Volkswagen dealers guarantee their vehicles against corrosion damage to the bodywork.

In addition to the warranty conditions applicable to new Volkswagen vehicles, the Volkswagen Dealer grants a **6-year** warranty against corrosion perforations in the bodywork for a specified period of time in accordance with the purchase contract for the vehicle he is selling.

If such defects are nevertheless detected, any Volkswagen Dealer will repair them free of charge for labour and materials.

This warranty does not apply where:

– such defects are due to external influences res or lack of maintenance of the vehicle, or if
– any defects in the bodywork were not eliminated in due time, in accordance with the directrices de la fábrica o
– if the corrosion perforations are due to failure to comply with the manufacturer's requirements for body repairs.

After repairs have been carried out on the car body, your Volkswagen dealer will certify the warranty against corrosion perforation of the repaired

a

rea.

General information

Volkswagen has one of the largest and most efficient dealer networks for servicing your vehicle.

Volkswagen dealerships are equipped with modern equipment and tools specially developed for your vehicle, are staffed by highly qualified technicians and stock a wide range of parts.

All Volkswagen Dealers are governed by advanced, factory-recommended standards. These include the Service Instructions, which ensure that repairs are carried out to the highest standards of quality and at the right time to ensure the proper functioning and safe driving of your vehicle.

As you can see, Volkswagen Dealers are very well prepared to support your vehicle. Be sure to take advantage of this facility.

Additional service offers

Mandatory inspection service

Depending on the legislation in force, periodic mandatory inspections of the vehicle are required.

In many countries it is mandatory to have the vehicle inspected at regular intervals by a known competent authority, which must approve the efficient and safe operation in traffic and/or the condition of the exhaust system.

Volkswagen dealers know which inspections are mandatory and can carry out these checks in conjunction with the inspection service at any time. This saves you time and money.

They will point out the points that deserve special attention, so that your vehicle does not develop faults that would force you to have it re-inspected at a later date

Volkswagen® Original Parts

Volkswagen® Genuine Parts are specially designed for your vehicle and approved by Volkswagen, particularly with regard to safety. These parts correspond exactly to the factory specifications with regard to type, dimensional accuracy and materials. Volkswagen® Genuine Parts are the most suitable for your vehicle. We therefore recommend the use of Volkswagen® Genuine Parts.
Volkswagen cannot comment on the reliability, safety and suitability of non-original parts.

The most important Volkswagen® Genuine Parts are almost always available from stock. If a particular part is not in stock, it can usually be ordered quickly.

Volkswagen Dealers offer a warranty

f

or Volkswagen® Original Parts after installation or purchase. Via

21A.5L1.TCR.60

The invoice from the Volkswagen Dealer must always be kept as proof of commencement of the warranty.

For more information, please contact your Volkswagen Dealer.

Warranty claims for these parts can be submitted **to any Volkswagen Dealer**.

Volkswagen Genuine Accessories

We recommend that you use Volkswagen Genuine Accessories and brand-approved accessories in your Volkswagen vehicle.

If you wish to equip your vehicle with accessories, the following recommendations should be taken into account:

Use only Volkswagen Genuine Accessories or accessories expressly approved by Volkswagen whose reliability, safety and suitability have been specially tested for this model. Volkswagen cannot comment on the reliability, safety and suitability of non-original parts.

Volkswagen dealers offer a warranty on original accessories after installation or purchase. You should therefore always keep the invoice from the Volkswagen Dealer as proof of commencement of the warranty.

For more information, please contact your Volkswagen Dealer.

The Volkswagen Accessory Service offers not only the correct information, but also the installation of the equipment by qualified personnel, if desired.

In addition, you can find all products for the care and maintenance of your vehicle

a

t a Volkswagen dealership.

Stickers and platelets

The engine compartment and some vehicle parts contain factory safety certificates, stickers and plates with important information on the use of the vehicle.

such as on the fuel filler door, passenger sun visor, driver's door pillar or luggage compartment floor.

- Do not remove safety certificates, stickers and labels in any way, nor damage or render them illegible.
- If vehicle parts with safety certificates, stickers and badges are replaced, the new safety certificates, stickers and badges must be correctly applied to the new vehicle parts by the Volkswagen dealer or specialist company in the same positions on the new vehicle parts.

Safety certificate

A safety certificate on the driver's door pillar informs that all necessary safety standards and the specifications of the traffic safety authorities of the respective country were met at the time of manufacture. In addition, the month and year of manufacture as well as the chassis number may be re-presented.

High Voltage Warning Stickers

A sticker warning of high voltage in the vehicle's electrical system is located near the engine compartment cover lock.

WARNING

Improper vehicle operation increases the risk of accidents and injuries.

- Please note the legal provisions.
- Follow the instruction manual.

NOTICE

Improper operation of the vehicle can cause damage to the vehicle.

- Please note the legal provisions.
- Perform maintenance services according to as prescribed.

Radio reception and antenna

A radio antenna with radio reception is installed in factory-installed radio sets.
on the roof of the vehicle.

Reception failures may occur on the AM band of the radio when operating in the AM band.

electrical appliances, e.g. mobile phones, in the immediate vicinity of the antenna.

Installing the radio

If a radio is retrofitted or the factory-fitted radio is changed, the following recommendations must be observed.

- In some versions, the connection sockets already existing in the vehicle were provided for Volkswagen original radios, starting with the 2005 model year.
- Radio units with different connections must be connected with adapter cables, which are available from Volkswagen dealers.
- Radios **not** included in the Volkswagen Original Accessories Programme may require an additional adapter if the reception signal is weak.
- It is advisable to have the radio installed by a Volkswagen Dealer, whose staff are informed about the technical specifications of the vehicles and where to find the original radios and the necessary installation parts from the Volkswagen Accessory Programme, and to carry out the work in accordance with the factory guidelines. .
- The maximum power of the original factory speakers is 20 W (RMS).
- Volkswagen recommends that speakers, mounting kits, antennae and interference suppression kits from the Volkswagen Accessories Programme are also used. These parts are specially designed for each vehicle.

Never cut the connection cable, leaving it uninsulated. This may cause a fire.

NOTICE

- Poor connection of the radio may result in the destruction of important electrical components or impair the operation of the radio.

Possible interferences, e.g. in the speed signal, can lead to faults in the operation of the engine, ABS, etc.

- The simple connection of the speed signal to a radio with automatic volume adjustment from other manufacturers can cause this type of noise.

failures.

Volume of radio or navigation system

The radio or navigation system has a separate instruction manual with all information relevant to the operation of the radio or navigation system.

Operating the radio or navigation system at high volume levels, particularly at sound pressure levels above 85 decibels, can cause hearing damage.

- If the volume is set too high, acoustic signals from outside, e.g. warning signals from police, fire brigade or other vehicles, may not be heard and may lead to accidents.

Headphones

When using a mobile phone or other devices, observe the respective operating instructions, national legislation and regulations on the use of headphones. For example, in Brazil, the use of headphones by the driver during driving is prohibited.

WARNING

acoustic signals from outside, e.g. warning signals from police vehicles, fire engines or other vehicles, may not be heard and may lead to accidents.

21A.5L1.TCR.60

Declaration of conformity

The respective manufacturer declares that the products listed below comply with the basic requirements and other relevant regulations and standards in force at the date of manufacture of the vehicle :

Radio frequency equipment

– Electronic immobiliser.
– Vehicle key with remote control.
– Keyless Access locking and starting system.

Electrical equipment

– 12 V power socket.

Remote control key licence and radios with Bluetooth connection

The key with remote control and radios with Bluetooth connection, activated by radio frequency, meets all the criteria for approval and use in Brazil.

Such approval should be the basis for obtaining the licence for use in other countries.

Technical data

Notes on technical data

It is possible to check which engine a vehicle is equipped with by consulting the vehicle data label and the vehicle licence documents.

The information in the vehicle licence documents always takes precedence. All information in this manual applies to the basic model. The values given may vary depending on optional equipment or different model versions, as well as for special vehicles and vehicles for other countries.

Engine

On the vehicle data label or in the vehicle documents, you can check which engine the vehicle is equipped with.

Weight

The values indicated may differ due to optional equipment or different versions, as well as in the case of special vehicles.

The kerb weight values in the following tables apply to the vehicle ready to drive with fluids, including 90% fuel supply, plus tools and emergency wheel →⚠ . The indicated kerb weight increases due to optional equipment and retrofitting of accessories, reducing the permissible load proportionally.

The cargo consists of the following items:

– Passengers.
– Total baggage.
– Trailer drawbar load when driving with a trailer.
– Supporting load of the trailer on the coupling.

Performance

The performance figures correspond to the basic model. Small deviations are possible depending on the local fuel used, optional extras fitted to the vehicle, the load, tyre pressure, temperature, etc., as well as on the type of vehicle.
environment, altitude, route of use and mode of .

driving the vehicle. And they were determined without performance limiting equipment such as mudguards.

Weight of tractor-trailer combination

The specified permissible tractor-trailer combination weights are valid only for maximum altitudes of 1 000 m above sea level. At the beginning of each additional 1 000 m of altitude, the permissible weight of the tractor-trailer combination shall be reduced by approximately 10 %.

WARNING

Exceeding or failing to comply with the stated values for weights, load, dimensions and maximum speed can lead to accidents and serious injury.

WARNING

Exceeding the maximum permissible weight and axle loads can lead to vehicle damage, accidents and serious injury.

- The actual axle loads must never exceed the permissible axle loads.
- Both the load and its distribution on the vehicle influence the steering behaviour and braking efficiency. Adapt the speed to the requirements.
- Compliance with the maximum permissible axle weight and axle load limits is essential for the safety of the driver, passengers and other road users.

WARNING

Exceeding the specified maximum towable weight can lead to serious accidents and considerable damage to the vehicle.

- Never exceed the maximum towable weight specified.

NOTICE

Always distribute the load evenly and as far back in the luggage compartment as possible. When transporting heavy objects in the luggage compartment, these should be placed before or on the rear axle to minimise steering behaviour .

Information on fuel consumption

The fuel consumption values given do not refer to an individual vehicle, although they do serve for comparative purposes between the various vehicle types. The fuel consumption of a vehicle is not only dependent on fuel efficiency, but is also influenced by steering behaviour and other non-technical factors.

Determination of fuel consumption

The fuel consumption values were determined in accordance with EU guidelines 70/220/EEC in their current edition and are valid for the unladen weight of the vehicle. The figures **do not** refer to an individual vehicle. To determine the fuel consumption, two measurement cycles are carried out on a dynamometer. In this case, the following test conditions apply:

in the city The measurement of the city cycle starts with a cold start of the engine. Immediately after that, city driving between 0 and 50 km/h is simulated.

On the road In the road cycle measurement, the vehicle is accelerated and braked several times in all gears in a corresponding daily driving. In this case, the driving speed varies from 0 to 120 km/h.

The calculation of the **combined** fuel consumption is made with a weighting of approximately 37% for the city cycle and 63% for the on-road cycle.

The unladen weight may change depending on the respective version. This may slightly increase the fuel consumption values.
bustible.

In practice, this may result in fuel consumption values which differ from those of the
which were determined according to the guidelines EU 70/220/EEC.

21A.5L1.TCR.60

Identification data of vehicle

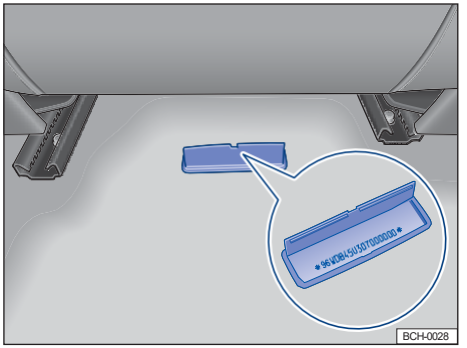


Fig. 224 In front of the front passenger seat: Vehicle identification number (chassis number) in front of the rear passenger seat on the right-hand floor.

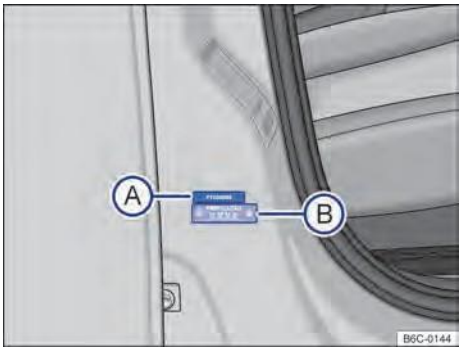


Fig. 225 In the lower area of the right front door pillar: label with the number ofpartial vehicle identification (VIS) the year of manufacture plate Ⓐ Ⓑ.

Vehicle Identification Number (VIN - chassis number)

The recording of the vehicle identification number (VIN) is located in front of the rear passenger seat on the right floor.
→ fig. 224.

Vehicle identification number (VIS - partial chassis number)

The plates (VIS) are located in the lower area of the right front door pillar.
→ fig. 225 Ⓐ and in the engine compartment
The plates on the driver's side of the driver's side of the vehicle, on the pillar of the suspension. These plates are destroyed when removed.

In addition, the VIS number is embossed on the windscreen, window and side windows.

Engine identification number

The engine identification number can be found on the engine block. To reach the manufacturer's label, open the engine compartment cover → p. 266.

In some regions, the engine identification number is part of the official vehicle documentation.

Manufacturer's label

The manufacturer's label is located on the front panel of the engine compartment. To reach the manufacturer's label, open the engine compartment cover → p. 266.

Year of manufacture identification plate

The nameplate with the identification number of the year of manufacture is located in the lower area of the right front door pillar.
→ fig. 225 Ⓑ. This plate is destroyed when removed.

NOTICE

If labels need to be replaced or vehicle components repaired, seek the advice of a Volkswagen Dealer.

NOTICE

The plastic film applied in the area of the chassis number (chassis number) engraving is a corrosion protection and does not prevent the number from being transferred to a sheet of paper (chassis decal). It must therefore not be removed in any way - risk of loss of the chassis number!
guarantee against corrosion perforation!

Identification number of the



Fig. 226 On the windscreen: vehicle identification number.

The vehicle identification number on the windscreen may not be available for some countries.

The vehicle identification number (chassis number) can be read from the outside through a display in the windscreen. The display is located mostly at the bottom of the windscreen.

On some models, depending on the radio system, the VIN can be displayed in the **Service** menu or in the vehicle

s

ettings.

Air conditioning information



Fig. 227 Air conditioning information

Legend for → fig. 227:

(1) Air conditioning lubricating oil specification.

(2) Specification of the air-conditioning coolant.

(3) Air conditioning charge level.

Symbol and description:

Warning: The air conditioning system must only be serviced by qualified personnel.

Type of coolant.

Type of lubricant.

See workshop information (available only for Volkswagen Dealers).

To ensure safe and secure operation, the air-conditioning system may only be serviced by qualified personnel.

21A.5L1.TCR.60

Dimensions

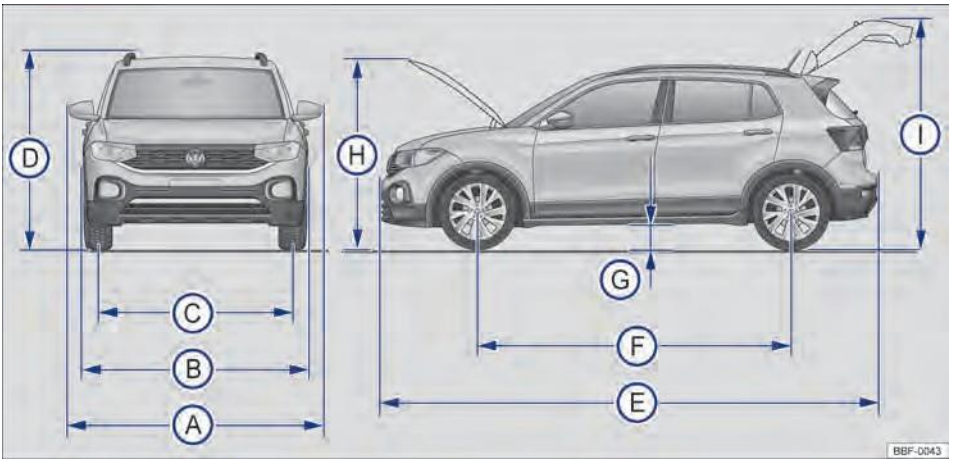


Fig. 228 Dimensions.

The information in the table applies to the basic model with basic equipment.

The values given may differ due to other wheel or tyre sizes, optional equipment, different model versions or with the retrofitting of accessories.

Legend for → fig. 228:		
A	Width of vehicle *(with exterior rear-view mirrors)*	1,977 mm
B	Vehicle width *(excluding exterior rear-view mirrors)*	1,760 mm
C	Front track gaugea)	1,531 mm
	Rear track gaugea)	1,516 mm
D	Maximum vehicle height (with longitudinal longitudinal members)a)	1,598 mm
E	Vehicle length	4.199 mm
F	Wheelbase	2,651 mm
G	Clearance height from floorb)	188 mm
H	Height with engine compartment lid opena)	1,791 mm
I	Height with tailgate openb)	2,003 mm
-	Minimum turning circle of the vehicle	approximately 10.9 m

(a) Data may vary according to wheel and tyre sizes.

(b) Weight in running order, without driver and without load.

NOTICE

- Drive carefully in car parks with overhanging curbs or fixed bollards. Objects higher than the ground can damage the bumper and other parts of the vehicle when parking or leaving the parking space.
- Drive carefully over driveways, ramps, curbs and other objects. Lower vehicle parts such as bumpers, trailers and parts of the chassis, engine or exhaust system can be damaged by the vehicle's own weight.

sar.

Capacities

Petrol engine

Glasswasher water tank (→ page 268)	3.1 litres
Fuel tank (→ page 240)	approximately 50 litres, of which approximately 7.5 litres are reservea)
Engine oil quantity (→ p. 271)	4.5 litres

(a) The reserve indication shall occur when the total fuel tank level is reduced to approximately 7,5 litres of fuel.

TOTALFLEX engine

Glasswasher water tank (→ page 268)	3.1 litres
Fuel tank (→ page 240)	approximately 52 litres, of which approximately 7.5 litres are reservea)
Engine oil quantity (→ p. 271)	4.0 litres

(a) The reserve indication shall occur when the total fuel tank level is reduced to approximately 7,5 litres of fuel.

21A.5L1.TCR.60

Petrol engine

1.6 petrol engine 81 kW

Power	81 kW (110 hp) @ 5,500 rpm	
Maximum tightening torque	155 Nm (15.8 kgfm) at 3,850 rpm	
Distinctive engine lettering	CWSA	
Cylinders, Displace ment	4 cylinders, 1598 cm^3	
Compression ratio	10,5:1	
Spark plugs	04C 905.616a[a)]	
Unleaded petrol or other metallic additives (e.g. manganese)	Super i.o. 95 Normal i.o. 91b[b)]	
	Valid only for Argentina Grade 2 or higher i.o. min 91	
Transmission type	5-speed manual (MQ 200) or 6-speed automatic (AQ 160)	
	Manual	**Automatic**
Maximum speedc[)]	176 km/h	
Acceleration 0 - 80 km/hc[)]	7,3 s	8,2 s
Acceleration 0 - 100 km/hc[)]	11,1 s	12,6 s
Weight in running order[)]	1,220 kg	1,263 kg
Gross permissible weight (GWW)	1,670 kg	1,720 kg
Permissible front axle load	880 - 890 kg	940 kg
Permissible rear axle load	830 kg	
Authorised roof load.	50 kg	
Braked trailer, gradients up to 8%.	400 kg	
Unbraked trailer, gradients up to 8%.	400 kg	
Weight of tractor-trailer combination (CMTe[)])	2,070 kg	2,120 kg
Valid only for Argentina Fuel consumption (f[)] - Combined Euro 5 Legislation	7.0 l/100 km	7.2 l/100 km
Valid only for Argentina CO_2 emissions	164 g/km	167 g/km

[a)] Volkswagen part number. Use only spark plugs recommended by Volkswagen in your vehicle in order to avoid engine damage and to comply with emission legislation.

[b)] With a small reduction in performance and increase in fuel consumption, with a gradual increase in engine noise up to the intervention of the detonation control.

[(c)] The values correspond to the basic model. Minor deviations may occur depending on the local fuel used, options fitted to the vehicle, load, tyre pressure, ambient temperature, altitude, route of use and the way the vehicle is driven.

[(d)] Weight for basic model without optional equipment.

[(e)] MLC = maximum permissible vehicle weight + maximum towable weight.

[(f)] For technical reasons of type approval or taxation, the fuel consumption values for some engines may d i f f e r from the following indications in other countries

Petrol engine

1.6 petrol engine 81 kW

Valid only for North Africa

Power	81 kW (110 hp) @ 5,750 rpm	
Maximum tightening torque	155 Nm (15.8 kgfm) at 3,850 rpm	
Distinctive engine lettering	CWSA	
Cylinders, Displace ment	4 cylinders, 1598 ^{cm3}	
Compression ratio	10,5:1	
Spark plugs	04C 905.616a[a)]	
Unleaded petrol or other metallic additives (e.g. manganese)	Super i.o. 95 Normal i.o. 91b[b)]	
	Valid only for Argentina Grade 2 or higher i.o. min 91	
Transmission type	5-speed manual (MQ 200) or 6-speed automatic (AQ 160)	
	Manual	**Automatic**
Maximum speedc[)]	176 km/h	
Acceleration 0 - 80 km/hc[)]	7,3 s0	8,2 s
Acceleration 0 - 100 km/hc[)]	11,1 s	12,6 s
Weight in running order[)]	1,221 kg	1,262 kg
Gross permissible weight (GWW)	1,670 kg	1,720 kg
Permissible front axle load	890 kg	940 kg
Permissible rear axle load	830 kg	
Authorised roof load.	50 kg	
Braked trailer, gradients up to 8%.	400 kg	
Unbraked trailer, gradients up to 8%.	400 kg	
Weight of tractor-trailer combination (CMTe[)])	2,070 kg	2,120 kg

[a)] Volkswagen part number. Use only spark plugs recommended by Volkswagen in your vehicle in order to avoid engine damage and to comply with emission legislation.

[b)] With a small reduction in performance and increase in fuel consumption, with a gradual increase in engine noise up to the intervention of the detonation control.

[(c)] The values correspond to the basic model. Minor deviations may occur depending on the local fuel used, options fitted to the vehicle, load, tyre pressure, ambient temperature, altitude, route of use and the way the vehicle is driven.

[(d)] Weight for basic model without optional equipment.

[(e)] CMT = maximum permissible vehicle weight + maximum towable weight.

TOTALFLEX engines

Engine 1.0 TOTALFLEX 85/94 kW - TSI

Power	**Petrol**	85 kW (116 hp) @ 5,500 rpm	
	Ethanol	94 kW (128 hp) @ 5,500 rpm	
Maximum tightening torque	**Petrol**	200 Nm (20.4 kgfm) at 2,000 - 3,500 rpm	
	Ethanol	200 Nm (20.4 kgfm) at 2,000 - 3,500 rpm	
Distinctive engine lettering		DHSB	
Cylinders, Displace ment		3 cylinders, 999 cm^3	
Compression ratio		10,5:1	
Spark plugs		04E.905.602.[Fa)]	
Fuel		Gasoline RON 95 / E24 (blue colour) or Ethanol	
Transmission type		6-speed manual (MQ 200) or 6-speed automatic (AQ 250)	
		Manual	**Automatic**
Maximum speed[b)]	**Petrol**	183 km/h	179 km/h
	Ethanol	189 km/h	184 km/h
Acceleration 0 - 80 km/h[b)]	**Petrol**	6,6 s	7,3 s
	Ethanol	6,5 s	7,0 s
Acceleration 0 - 100 km/h[b)]	**Petrol**	10,0 s	10,9 s
	Ethanol	9,6 s	10,4 s
Weight in running order[c)]		1,215 kg	1,252 kg
Gross permissible weight (GWW)		1,660 kg	1,710 kg
Permissible front axle load		880 kg	930 kg
Permissible rear axle load		830 kg	
Authorised roof load.		50 kg	
Braked trailer, gradients up to 8%.		400 kg	
Unbraked trailer, gradients up to 8%.		400 kg	
Tractor-trailer combination weight (CMTd[d)])		2,060 kg	2,110 kg

[a)] Volkswagen part number. Use only spark plugs recommended by Volkswagen in your vehicle in order to avoid engine damage and to comply with emission legislation.

[(b)] The values correspond to the basic model. Minor deviations may occur depending on the local fuel used, options fitted to the vehicle, load, tyre pressure, ambient temperature, altitude, route of use and the way the vehicle is driven.

[(c)] Weight for basic model without optional equipment.

[(d)] CMT = maximum permissible vehicle weight + maximum towable weight.

Engine 1.4 TOTALFLEX 110/110 kW - TSI

Power	**Petrol**	110 kW (150 hp) at 5,000 rpm
	Ethanol	110 kW (150 hp) @ 4,500 - 6,000 rpm
Maximum tightening torque	**Petrol**	250 Nm (25.5 kgfm) at 1,500 - 3,800 rpm
	Ethanol	250 Nm (25.5 kgfm) at 1,500 - 4,000 rpm
Distinctive engine lettering		CWLA
Cylinders, Displacement		4 cylinders, 1395 cm^3
Compression ratio		10,0:1
Spark plugs		04E 905 602 Aa[a]
Fuel		Gasoline RON 95 / E24 (blue colour) or Ethanol
Transmission type		6-speed automatic (AQ 250)
Maximum speed[b]	**Petrol/ethanol**	198 km/h
Acceleration 0 - 80 km/h[b]	**Petrol/ethanol**	5,9 s
Acceleration 0 - 100 km/h[b]	**Petrol/ethanol**	8,7 s
Weight in running order[c]		1,292 kg
Gross permissible weight (GWW)		1,740 kg
Permissible front axle load		960 kg
Permissible rear axle load		830 kg
Authorised roof load.		50 kg
Braked trailer, gradients up to 8%.		400 kg
Unbraked trailer, gradients up to 8%.		400 kg
Tractor-trailer combination weight (CMTd[d])		2,140 kg

[a] Volkswagen part number. Use only spark plugs recommended by Volkswagen in your vehicle in order to avoid engine damage and to comply with emission legislation.

[b] The values correspond to the basic model. Minor deviations may occur depending on the local fuel used, options fitted to the vehicle, load, tyre pressure, ambient temperature, altitude, route of use and the way the vehicle is driven.

[c] Weight for basic model without optional equipment.

[d] CMT = maximum permissible vehicle weight + maximum towable weight.

Abbreviations used

Abbreviation	Meaning
A	Ampere, unit of measurement for electric current.
A/h	Ampere hour.
A2DP	Universal technology for the transmission of audio signals via Bluetooth® common to several manufacturers (Advanced Audio Distribution Profile).
ABS	Anti-lock braking system.
AM	Amplitude modulation (medium wave, MW). 6-speed
AQ 160	automatic transmission.
AQ 250	TSI 6-speed automatic transmission. Traction control.
ASR	Auxiliary Input (Auxiliary Input).
AUX	Technology for remote control of audio sources via Bluetooth® common to several manufacturers (Audio Video Remote Control Profile).
AVRCP	Pressure measuring unit. Brake
bar	assistant.
BAS	Control Module (Body Control Module).
BCM	Distinctive engine lettering.
CDM	Cubic centimetres. Unit of measurement for the indication of cylinder capacity.
cm^3	Carbon monoxide.
CO	Steam horsepower, indication of engine power.
cv	German Institute for Standardisation.
DIN	Light emitting diode (Light Emitting Diode). Electronic
Light-emitting	brake force distribution.
diode EBV	Economic Commission for Europe (Economic Commission for Europe - Regelung).
ECE	Electronic differential lock.
	Supports other transmission networks (Enhanced Other Network).
EDS	Engine control unit (Electronic Power Control).
EON	Electronic Stability Control.
EPC	Emergency Stop Signal (Emergency Stop Signal).
ESC	Frequency modulated (ultra short wave, UKW).
ESC	Adaptation of the volume according to the speed.
ESS	Speed control system.
FM	Global System for Mobil Communications. Wireless telephony (Hands-Free-Profile).
GALA	Serial number for the unique identification of GSM terminal equipment (International Mobile Station Equipment Identity).
GRA	Kilogram, unit of mass in the International System of Units.
GSM	Kilo Pascal, unit of pressure and tension of the International System of Units.
HFP	Kilowatt, indication of engine power.
IMEI	
kg	
kPa	
kW	

Abbreviation	Meaning
l	Litre, metric unit of capacity.
m	Metre, unit of measurement of length in the International System of Units.
mm	Millimetre, unit of length equivalent to one thousandth of a metre.
MP3	Format for compressing audio file data. 5-speed manual
MQ 200	transmission.
Nm	Newton-metre, unit of measurement for engine torque indication.
or	Degrees Celsius, unit of measurement for temperature.
C	Personal identification number.
PIN	Pounds per square inch, tyre pressure indication. Radio Data System for
psi	additional services (Radio Data System). Engine speed per minute.
RDS	Seconds, the basic unit of time measurement in the International System of Units.
rpm	Subscriber Identity Module (Subscriber Identity Module).
s	Short Message Service (Short Message Service). Liquid crystal
SIM	display technology (Thin-film transistor). Direct fuel injection
SIM	with turbocharging.
SMS	Trade Wear Indicator (Trade Wear Indicator).
TFT	Mobile network standard (Universal Mobile Telecommunications System).
TFT	Universal Serial Bus.
TSI®	Volts, unit of measurement of electrical potential difference.
TWI	Variable bitrate.
UMTS	Vehicle Identification Number (VIN).
USB	Partial vehicle identification number with the last 8 final digits of the chassis (Vehicle Indicator Section).
V	Watt, unit of measurement of mechanical or electrical energy, heat flux and irradiation energy flux.
VBR	Format for compressing audio file data. Electronic
VIN	differential lock extension.
VIS	
W	
WMA	
XDS	

Alphabetical index

A

Supply
controls when supplying 30
ethanol 240
petrol 240
Supply
with ethanol 240
with petrol 240
Softening
engine 111
first kilometres 111
Soften
tyres 288
Open
doors 65
fuel tank cap 240
back cover 72
panoramic sunroof 75
glass 73
Open the station list 158
ABS
see brake assist system 143
Accessories 316
Volkswagen Genuine Accessories 324
Preparatory actions
vehicle battery 280
replacement of incandescent lamps 248
wheel change 299
Oil
see Engine oil 269
Engine oil 269
filler neck 271
exchange 270
check the engine oil level 271
consumption 271
specification 269, 270
resupply 271
measuring rod 271
Accommodating luggage volumes 226
Glass activation 73
Active Info Display 16
navigation map 17
information profiles 16
Preparatory activities
before each trip 30
check the engine oil level 271
replenishing the engine oil 271
working in the engine compartment 265
Vehicle data sticker 328
Speed warning 21
Glasswashing water
reload 268
check 268
Airbag
collision detection function 45
Front airbag
see airbag system 46
Front passenger frontal airbag
switch off with the switch operated by the key 47
Passenger frontal airbag
see airbag system 42
Head airbags
see Airbag system 49
Side airbags
see airbag system 48
Air conditioning 98, 99
water under the vehicle 102
switch off 100
AUTO (automatic mode) 100
commands 99
tips 102
glass defroster 100
air distribution 100
malfunctioning 102
operating instructions 102
air recirculation mode100 , 101
cooling mode 100
regulating the temperature 100
water vapour under the vehicle 102
fan 100
Adjust
FRONT SEAT 79
time 23
correct seating posture 33
Setting the clock
digital clock 15
Set date 224
Adjust timetable 224
Setting the time 23
Setting
headrest 82
steering wheel 77
Headlamp range adjustment 89
Seat belt height adjustment 40
Rear seat backrest tilt adjustment 80
Radio system settings
driving profile 128
Sound alert
belt not in place 35
Sound alerts
light 85
Sound alerts
warning and control lamp 13
Carpets 103

Alterations 316, 324
AM 166, 188
Android Auto™
disconnect connection 165
establishing a connection 165
main menu 164
particularities 165
Antenna 151, 324
Outdoor antenna 318
Emergency shutdown 116
Switch off
radio 158
Transmission apparatus 318
Opening
sunblind for panoramic sunroof 97
Comfort opening
sunroof 76
electric windows 73
Individual door opening 67
Central armrest 83
Headrest 82, 83
App-Connect 162
MAIN MENU 163
Apple CarPlay™
disconnect connection 164
establishing a connection 163
menu 163
particularities 164
Apps
command with apps 225
configurations 225
Front towing eye 262
Settle
brake pads 108
Seating the brake pads
see also brakes 108
Seat 80
Front seat 78
Child seat 50
disconnect the front passenger frontal airbag.
front tea 47
airbag sticker 53
to be fixed with top tether strap Top Tether 56
standard 51
Seats 32, 78
FRONT SEAT 79
Child seats
classification by weight 52
seatbelt protection 57
fastening systems 51
types of child seats 51
transporting children in the vehicle 52
Rear seats 79
Rear seat 80
Parking steering assistant
(Park Assist) 138
parking conditions 140
parking in line 140
side-by-side parking 140
ending early 139
automatic interruption 139
leaving the car park 141
problem solving 141
Brake Assist (BAS) 143
ASR
on and off 144
see Brake Assist Systems 144
see brake assist systems 142
Bluetooth Audio
select 197
see External audio sources 176, 201
Headphones 325
AUX-IN
see External audio sources 175
Start-up aid 258
auxiliary jumper cable 259
run 259
starting aid point (point of contact)
xion to earth) 258
earthing point 258
External starting aid
see Start-up help 258
Parking aid 134, 138
command 134
representation on the display 135
problem solving 135

B

Balance 187
Frequency band
AM 166, 188
change 166, 188
FM 166, 188
select 166, 188
BAS
see brake assist systems 143
Battery
see Vehicle battery 278
Vehicle battery 278
preparatory actions 280
START-UP AID 259
upload 281
check the electrolyte level 280
connect 281
download 282
disconnect 281
automatic disconnection of the consumption
res 281
battery electrolyte 280
explanation of symbols 278

is unloaded 60
meaning of the alerts on the vehicle battery 279
replace 281
location 278
Vehicle battery (12 V)
earthing point for earthing aid for starting aid 258
Block
with Keyless Access 64
Lock the front passenger door and the rear doors in case of emergency 68
Selector lever lock
automatic transmission 120
Differential lock
see Electronic Differential Lock (EDS) 143
Child safety lock 58
Electronic differential lock (EDS) 143
Bluetooth
configurations 185, 223
profiles 178, 215
Horn 10
Position light bulb 249, 251
High lantern bulb 249
Low lantern bulb 249
Fog lamp bulb 250
Direction indicator bulb 251
Front direction indicator bulb 249
Delete
USER ENTRY 224
all entries 224
Start button
emergency start function 116
Buttons 156
Function buttons
command 159
main menu PHONE 180, 217
pop-up window 159
Rotary knobs 156
Rubber weather-stripping 309
Search lists
see Command 160
Automatic search (SCAN)
RADIO 169, 191
Search for stations
see Automatic search (SCAN) 191

C

Towing cable 233, 234
Water box 309
Manual gearbox 118
see also Shifting gears 118
Selection boxes
see Function surfaces 159
Heating 98, 99
Heating and air conditioning 98
Fuel quality 243
Reversing camera 136
configurations 138
switch on and off 136
parking 137
CHECKLIST 137
operational guidelines 138
premises 138
representation on the display 136
Shifting gears
emergency unlocking of the selector lever 123
warning and control lights 123
Changing the wheel
changing the wheel 303
Changing light bulbs
of the headlamp 249
Bulb replacement
on the front bumper 250
Replacement of incandescent lamps
preparation actions 248
CHECKLIST 248
Wheel change
preparatory actions 299
after changing the wheel 304
Bulb replacement
on the bodywork 251
rear torch 251
Gear change
with Tiptronic 121
gear (automatic transmission). ca) 120
engage gear (manual transmission) 118
recommendation for walking 104
automatic transmission 120
manual transmission 118
Wheel change 298
lift the vehicle 302
wheel bolts 300
Tyre load capacity 296, 297
Capacities
ENGINE OIL 273, 331
windscreen washer water tank 268
glasswasher water tank 331
FUEL TANK 240, 331
Supporting load
loading the trailer 234
Upload
accommodating luggage volumes 226
driving with the tailgate open 110
fuel level indicator 17
control light 17
boot 227

roof boxes 231
trailer 234
Catalyst 242
malfunctioning 243
Hollow cavities 309
CD
place 199
with defect 199
unreadable 199
operation 198
remove 199
select 197
Ignition lock
lock 115
Ignition lock
removing the key from the ignition 116
Close
doors 65
fuel tank cap 240
panoramic sunroof 75
glass 73
Closing
sunblind for panoramic sunroof 97
Central locking 65
individual door opening 67
unlock or block from inside 67
description 67
Keyless Access 64
burglar alarm system 70
central locking key 67
Comfort locking
sunroof 76
electric windows 73
Emergency shutdown
front passenger door 68
rear doors 68
Emergency closing or opening
emergency unlocking of the selector lever 123
tailgate 73
driver's door 68
Ignition cylinder
blocking 112
Safety belt
belt status indicator 35
warning light 35
seat belt pretensioner 41
Safety belts 34
seat belt height adjustment 40
twisted belts 38
place 38
automatic safety belt winder 41
anti-rush function 41
cleaning 312
CHECKLIST 37
management 37
not in place 36
position of the band 39
remove 38
Anti-theft code 155
Radio code
see Anti-theft code 155
Speed code 297
Command
accessing and searching lists 160
apps 225
function buttons 159
selection boxes 159
voice command 211
go to 160
display 159
basic command information 159
text insertion 160
insertion mask 160
PHONE 180
sliding regulator 160
display keyboard 160
pop-up window 159
Voice command 211
Android Auto™ 165
Apple CarPlay™ 164
command 212
voice command 212
configurations 213
supported languages 211
instruction 212
guidelines 211
Fuel 237
ethanol 239
petrol 239
information on fuel consumption ble 327
note on environmental impact 238, 239, 241
problems 242
Engine compartment
ENGINE OIL 269
preparatory activities 265
vehicle battery 278
WATER BOX 309
cleaning 309
engine coolant 274
Compartment for documentation on board do 147
Engine compartment 263
Check engine oil level 271
Driving
with trailer 235
with automatic transmission 122
fuel level indicator 17
very low fuel level 18
trailer 262
route through flooded sites 110

Driving with a trailer
see Trailer 232
Winter driving
mirror 93
winter tyres 298
panoramic sunroof 75
Driving
starting on slopes 122
environmentally conscious 104
economically 104
in salt water 111
parking on slopes 131
parking on inclines 131
stopping on slopes 122
travel arrangements 30
data records 318
international travel 30
Eco-conscious driving 104
Driving economically 104
Fuel-efficient driving 104
Diagnostic connector 319
Connection
with cables 174, 200
wireless 174, 200
USB 174, 200
USB connection 174, 200
unreadable 174, 200
disconnecting the connection 174, 200
Configurations 186
Apps 225
Bluetooth 185, 223
factory settings 186, 224
date 224
timetables 224
images 202
media 174, 198
main menu 224
navigation 210
user profile 186, 224
PHONE 185, 223
radio 170, 192
system 186, 224
data transmission from mobile equipment 225
volumes 187
Factory settings 224
Vehicle configurations
radio 27
Sound settings 187
Initial settings 186
Setting the date 186
Setting the time 186
Conservation
see vehicle maintenance 307
Vehicle preservation 307
glass antenna 151, 324
rubber weatherstrips 309
replacement of wiper blades 246 hollow cavities 309
engine compartment 309
plastic components 312
natural leather 312
defrosting the door lock cylinder 309
wooden decorative elements 312
exterior rear-view mirrors 309
outside 307
inside 312
hand washing 307
high pressure washer 307
washing the vehicle 307
cleaning the wheels 309
cleaning seat belts 312
cleaning the wiper blades of the wiper blades drios 246
manipulation of the coating of the seats cough 312
NT - microfibre nonwoven 312
instrument panel 312
chrome-plated parts 309
aluminium parts 309
vehicle paintwork 307
operating position of windscreen wipers 245
protection of the underside of the vehicle 309
fabric coverings 312
automatic washing system 307
upholstery 312
glass 309
Preservation of chrome-plated parts 309
Preservation of aluminium parts 309
Consult the service period 24
Electric consumer 150, 234
Electricity consumers 150
Fuel consumption
driving economically 104
information 327
how is it determined? 327
what increases consumption? 243
Automatic driving light control 86
Parking distance control
use of high pressure washer 307
Engine control
control light 116
problem solving 116
Telephone control
see PHONE 177
Traction control (ASR) 142, 144
Electronic engine power control - Electronic engine power control EPC 241
Controls on supply 30
Copyright
information 186, 225

Panoramic sunshade sunroof sunblind
open and close 97
Panoramic sunroof sunshade and sun protection curtain
anti-rush function 97
Crystallisation of paint 307
General table 156
menu structure 25
Overview of comfort consumers 151
General control panel 156
Luggage compartment cover 228
Cursor 160

D

Tyre damage 292
Vehicle identification data 328
Engine data 332, 333, 334, 335
Navigation data
update, use 204
Travel data 20
Technical data 326
vehicle data sticker 328
capacities 240, 268, 273, 331
load on the roof 231
displacement 332, 333, 334, 335
ENGINE DATA 332, 333, 334, 335
dimensions 330
engine oil specification 269, 270
petrol engine 332, 333
TOTALFLEX engines 334
factory plaque 328
power 332, 333, 334, 335
tyre pressure 290
Declaration of conformity 326
Copyright 170, 192
Unblock
with Keyless Access 64
Emergency unlocking of the selector lever - ra 123
Automatic disconnection of consumers 281
Defrosting the lock cylinder of the door locks 309
Defrosting the locks 309
Windscreen defroster 100
De-fogging
glass 100
Tyre wear 293
Go to
see Command 160
Dimensions 330
Address
warning light 126
control light 126
Power steering 125
Display 16, 19, 156, 157
command 159
combined instrument 19
clean 157
Temperature display
engine coolant 18
Electronic Brake Force Distribution (EBV) 143
During a phone call 181, 218

E

EBV
see Brake Assist Systems 143
EDS
see Brake Assist Systems 143
Battery electrolyte 280
Elimination
seat belt pretensioner 41
Broadcasters
memorise 168, 190
In case of emergency 59
case of failure 59
checklists 59
warning lights 59
protect yourself and the vehicle 59
safety triangle 60
In case of failure
protect the vehicle 59
Cigarette lighter 149
Switch on 158
Switching the high beacon on and off 87
Switching the parking light on and off 87
Switching the direction indicators on and off 84
Ignition 112
vehicle key not enabled 112
see engine and ignition 112
Trailer hitch
assembly 236
Engage gear
automatic transmission 120
Automatic seat belt reel 41
SD card input 199
Multimedia input 174, 200
USB input 146, 147
iPad control 175
iPhone control 175
iPod control 175
USB input
iPad control 200
iPhone control 200
iPod control 200
Delivery of the vehicle 305
Think Blue Trainer. 107

EON 336
EPC - Electronic Power Control of the motor 241
Security equipment 45
Electricity consuming equipment 60
ESC
on and off 144
see Brake Assist Systems 144
Wiper blade
exchange 246
cleaning 246
Windscreen wiper blades
exchange 246
cleaning 246
Windscreen wiper blades 245
exchange 246
cleaning 246
Mirror
unseen area 93
blind spot 93
Rear-view mirrors 93
fold 96
external 95
folding the right-hand exterior rear-view mirror 95
Exterior rear-view mirrors
driving with a trailer 233
vehicle maintenance 309
External rear-view mirrors 95
memorise for reverse 95
fold 95
ESS - Emergency Stop Signal 59
Station
automatic search (SCAN) 169, 191
search by station 169
Parking 131
with Park Assist (parking assistance) 140
Parking and manoeuvring 131
Economic driving style 104
Ethanol 239
fuel level indicator 17
Adhesive labels 324
Exclude data 224
Exclude entries 224
Expel
see CD 199
Outside
longer stay with the vehicle, and lo 111
sale of the vehicle 111
Fire extinguisher 60

F

Fader 187
Malfunction
air conditioning 102
parking assistance 134
catalyst 243
immobiliser 116
radio reception152 , 325
electric exterior mirrors 96
rain sensor 92
tyre control system 285
fatigue recognition system 23
panoramic sunroof 75
electric windows 74
Lantern
washers 92
international travel 89
Low lantern 85
Haze lantern 86
Favourites (speed dial keys) 184
see PHONE 222
Attachment with ISOFIX
CHILD SEAT 54
LATCH attachment 54
Activated carbon filter 242
Pollutant filter 102
Pollen filter 102
Dust filter 102
Fluids 268
FM 166, 188, 336
Brake
seating brake pads 108
brake fluid change 278
parking brake 132
emergency brake indicator 59
brake fluid 277
brake pads 108
brake servo 108
brake assist system 142
Parking brake 132
Brakes
fault 111
External audio source
adapt the playback volume 187, 226
External audio sources
USB connection 200
External audio sources
Bluetooth audio 176, 201
USB connection 174
AUX-IN multimedia jack 175
Media sources 197
Bluetooth audio 197
CD 197
select 197
SD card 197
USB 197

Anti-impingement function
sunblind for panoramic sunroof 97
sunroof 76
electric windows 74
Safety belt anti-trapping function 41
Coming Home function 88
Emergency start function 116
Manoeuvring brake function 135
Repeat function (Repeat) 172, 195, 198
Collision detection function
airbag 45
Comfort functions
reprogramming 319
Seat functions 83
Kick-down function 122
Leaving Home function 88
Fuses 252
fuse box in the compartment of the motor 255
fuse box in the compartment of the motor in the battery 256
fuse box in the instrument panel 253
change 257
engine compartment 255
colour identification 257
instrument panel 253
preparations for change 257
recognise blown fuses 257
versions 257

G

GALA 225
Frequency range
change 158
select 158
Garment hook 148
Bag hooks 229
Bodywork warranty 322
Volkswagen Dealer Warranty 322
Petrol 239
additives 239
fuel 239
fuel level indicator 17
types 239
Cat 298
GRA 130
Glove compartment
light 90
see Slides 147

H

Cabin 10
Tools
see On-board tools 244
On-board tools 244
access to tools 244
components 245
location 244

I

Ignition off
post operation (Timeout) 158
Lighting 84
high lantern 87
management indicators 84
Driving light 85
daytime running light 85
troubleshooting 89
Ambient lighting 90
Outdoor lighting 247
Interior lighting 90
Images
Configurations 202
exhibition 202
MAIN MENU 202
Indications for use 154
Notes on technical data 326
tyre control indicator 284
Tyre control indicator
changing tyres 288
Travel data indicator 20
Emergency brake indicator 59
Temperature display
off-road indicator 128
Service interval indicator 24
Fuel level indicator 17
gasoline or ethanol 17
control light 17
Temperature indicator
outside temperature 19
Outdoor temperature indicator 19
Tyre wear indicators 292
Display indicators
time 23
doors, engine compartment lid and boot lid open 19
warning and information texts 21
Indicators on the display of the combi- nated instrument 25
Multi-function display 20
Off-road indicator 128
altimeter 128
compass 128
steering angle indicator 128
oil temperature gauge 128

coolant temperature indicator 128
selecting the instruments 128
Consumer information 322
Information stored in the con- Information stored in the con-trol 318
Air conditioning information 329
General information 323
Information on fuel consumption 327
Information on conditions of use 305
System start-up 155
Immobiliser
malfunctioning 116
Electronic immobiliser 115
Installing the radio 325
Combined instrument 15
display 15, 16, 19
menu structure 25
service interval indicator 24
indicators 25
instruments 15, 16
warning lights 13
control light 13
Control via the wiper lever 26
control via the multifunction steering wheel 26
symbols 13
Analogue combination instrument 15
Digital combination instrument
see Active Info Display 16
Instruments 15, 16
Additional instruments
off-road indicator 128
Key-operated switch
disconnect the front passenger frontal airbag. front tea 47
iPad 175, 200
iPhone 175, 200
iPod 175, 200
ISOFIX 54

K

Keyless Access 64
unlock or lock with Keyless Access 64
START KEY 113

L

LATCH
CHILD SEAT 54
Washing 307
with high pressure washer 307
manual 307
High pressure washer 307
Windscreen washer / window washer
windscreen washer / window washer lever 91
Washing the vehicle 307
bending the rear-view mirrors 96
Glasswasher 91
Raise the vehicle
with the cat 302
cat 302
CHECKLIST 302
Remote control key licence 326
Licence for the use of radios with Blue- tooth connection 326
Limitations
Navigation 203
Window cleaner
problem solving 92
Windscreen wipers
raising the wiper arm 245
service position 245
folding out the windscreen wiper arm 245
Windscreen wipers / window wipers
windscreen wiper/windshield wiper lever 91
Cleaning the display 157
Window cleaner 91
functions 92
heated windscreen washer nozzles 92
rain sensor 92
automatic lantern washing system 92
Cleaning
see vehicle maintenance 307
Rear torch
replacement of light bulbs 251
Brake fluid 277
specification 277
Antifreeze protection fluid 274
Engine coolant
temperature indicator 18
warning light 18
Engine coolant
specifications 274
Coolant
see Engine coolant 274
Engine coolant 274
filler neck 275
check engine coolant level 275
resupply 275
Checklist
before work in the compartment of the engine 265
reversing camera 137
replacement of incandescent lamps 248
safety belts 37
topping up the engine oil 272
check the engine oil level 272

controls when supplying 30
in case of emergency 59
in case of failure 59
lifting the vehicle with the jack 302
MirrorLink™ premises 166
preparations for wheel change 299
travel arrangements 30
driving safety 30
trips abroad 30
Playlist
see MEDIA 197
List of titles 173
Call lists 184
see PHONE 221
Broadcaster logo
save, delete 191
Seat belts protect 37
Warning lights 59
Emergency brake lights 59
Places with special indications 152, 178, 215
Places at risk of explosions
phone 152, 178, 215
Light
sound alerts 85
automatic position light cut-off or parking 88
switch off 85
AUTO 86
Coming Home 88
switch on 85
fog lamp 86
low lantern 85
functions 86
illumination of instruments and switches 90
light switch 85
Leaving Home 88
reading lights 90
interior lights 90
permanent parking light in am- both sides 87
fog light 86
position light 85, 86
high lantern lever 85
direction indicator lever 85
Warning light
change gear 123
safety belt 35
engine coolant 18
engine compartment cover 267
overview 13
Warning light
braking system 145
braking assistance systems 145
Daytime running light 85
Control light
ABS 145
change gear 123
upload 17
central locking 66
safety belt 35
engine control 116
on the driver's door 66
ESC 145
bulb failure 89
management indicators 89
FUEL LEVEL 17
tyre control system 285
airbag system 43
braking assistance systems 145
Start-Stop system 117
overview 13
Parking light 87
Permanent parking light 87
Turning light 86
with reverse gear engaged 86
Glovebox light on front passenger side 90
Reading light 90
Position light 85, 86
Interior light 90

LL

Call voicemail 182, 219
Rims
clean 309
Wheels and tyres
SPEED CODE 296
older tyres 288
Key
refer to the vehicle key 61
Vehicle key 61
changing the battery 62
refer to the vehicle key 61
spare key 61
unauthorised 116
problem solving 63
Spare key
refer to the vehicle key 61

M

Boot 227
see roof boxes 230
cover 228
luggage compartment light 90
variable luggage compartment floor 229
roof boxes 230
use the brackets 230

Command
parking assistance 134
additional exhibits 161
basic information on the control 156
PHONE 177
RADIO 166, 188
Instrument panel control 25
Radio control and instructions 27
Controls 156
Door handles
outdoors 7
Maintenance 304
Vehicle maintenance
synthetic leather 312
cleaning the slide 312
airbag module (instrument panel) 312
Insertion mask
see Command 160
Insertion mask (Cursor) 160
MEDIA
MP3 files 171, 193
WMA files 171, 193
areas of function 198
Bluetooth audio 176, 201
forward and backward movement 173
Forward and reverse 197
bitrate 171, 193
change media source 196
change the title 173
Change title 197
change the media source 173
CD with defect 199
Audio data CD171 , 193
Unreadable CD 199
place CD 199
configurations 174, 198
copyright 170, 192
audio data structure 171, 194
exhibitions 172, 194
exhibits and symbols 195
repeat function (Repeat) 172, 195
title information 195
iPod, iPad, iPhone 175, 200
limitations 170, 192
playlist 197
media source selection menu 173, 196 main menu 172, 194
playback mode172 , 195 CD operation 198
media operation 170, 192
Playlists 170, 192
prerequisites 171, 193
remove CD 199
random play (Mix) 172, 195
playback sequence 171, 194
select track 197
select data carrier 173, 196
select title 173
external data carrier to USB 200
external data carrier to USB 174
function surfaces 172, 194, 195
SD card 199
AUX-IN multimedia jack 175
Menu
Apple CarPlay™ 163
Menu of services 24
Main menu
Android Auto™ 164
App-Connect 163
configurations (SETUP) 224
images 202
MEDIA 172, 194
Mirror Link™ 165
navigation 205
PHONE 180, 217
RADIO 166, 188
Mirror Link™
disconnect connection 166
establishing a connection 166
main menu 165
MirrorLink™
premises 166
Mirror Link™
function surfaces 166
views and symbols 166
Modifications 316
Vehicle modifications 316
adhesive labels 324
platelets 324
Technical amendments 316
adhesive labels 324
platelets 324
Air recirculation mode 101
air conditioning 100
disconnect 101
operation 101
Assemblies and couplings 316
Rear mounting
transmission device 318
vehicle telephone 318
Engine
softening 111
irregular engine operation 242
noises 114
Petrol engine 332, 333
Engine and ignition
automatic ignition shutdown 113
TOTALFLEX engines 334
New engine 111
Engine and ignition 112
emergency shutdown 116
ignition lock 112
start the engine with Keyless Access 113

switch off the engine 114
emergency start function 116
electronic immobiliser 115
unauthorised vehicle key 115
vehicle key not enabled 112
engine start-up 113
Multi Collision Brake
see Automatic post-collision braking system 143

N

Navigation
limitations 203
NAV (navigation)
current status of the data 204
update, use navigation data 204
main menu 205
NAV (Navigation)
Configurations 210
Tyres
see wheels and tyres 286
see Wheels and tyres 284
Winter tyres 298
speed limit 298
Older tyres 288
One-way tyres 297
Name of the station
see RDS 167, 189
Note on environmental impact
fuel 238, 239, 241
NT - microfibre nonwoven 312
Number of seats 32
Chassis number 328
Identification number 328
Engine identification number
determine 328
Vehicle identification number 329
Chassis number 328

O

Service objectives 306
Octane rating 239
Odometer 15, 16
Additional service offers 323
Operation
switch on and off 158
Winter operation
fuel consumption 106
Fuel Handling Safety Guidance 237
General guidelines 30
Guidance for driving 103
emergency wheel 294
Guidelines for the maintenance of the vehicle 307

P

High lantern lever 85
Lever of the direction indicators and the fa-high role 85
Instrument panel 10
cleaning 312
airbag system 42, 312
Standing in traffic
protect the vehicle 59
Parasol 96
Tightening torque
wheel bolts 301
Park Pilot
see Parking assistance 134
Particularities
Android Auto™ 165
Apple CarPlay™ 164
absence of functions 154
voice command211 , 213
driving with trailer 235
decrease in volume 155
bending the rear-view mirrors 96
the engine shakes 242
parking 132, 330
exhibitions 161
irregular engine operation 242
save, delete station logos 191
AUX operation 176
radio reception 151, 324
towing 260, 261
removing the key from the vehicle 112
removing the key from the vehicle 115
proximity sensors 158
water vapour under the vehicle 102
Pedals 33, 103
Driving profile
adapt to personal preferences 128
User profile
configurations 186
see PHONE 224
Information profiles 16
Maximum towable weight
loading the trailer 234
PHONE
A2DP 178, 215
mobile phone coupling 179, 216
phone book 183, 220
function buttons 181

place telephone number 219
configurations 185, 223
Bluetooth settings 185, 223
user profile settings 186, 224
contacts 183, 220
phone control 177, 180
switch off the phone control 179, 217
functional description 178, 215
during a phone call 181, 218
displays and symbols 181, 218
favourites (speed dial keys) 184, 222
HFP 215
HPF 178
general information 214
enter phone number 182
call lists 184, 221
places with specific indications les 152, 178, 215
explosion risk areas 152, 178, 215
call voicemail 182, 219
main menu 180, 217
Bluetooth profiles 178, 215
GSM network 215
select 182, 183, 219, 220
mobile phone synchronisation 178, 216
function surfaces 217
Spare parts 316
Stack
changing the vehicle key 62
Boot floor 229
Variable luggage compartment floor 229
Model plate 328
Factory plaque 328
Platelets 324
Folding the right-hand exterior rear-view mirror 95
Beverage holder 148
beverage bottles 148
front centre console 149
rear centre console 149
Glasses holder 148
Slides 146
front centre armrest 147
front centre console 146
roof console 148
on-board documentation 147
in the lower part of the centre console 146
glove box 147
front passenger side 147
Glovebox light 90
other slides 148
spectacle holder 148
Fuel tank door
see fuel filler flap 240
Tailgate 71
emergency opening or closing 73
driving with the tailgate open 110
Position of the belt webbing 39
Service position
windscreen wipers 245
Post operation (timeout) 158
Seating posture
incorrect posture 32
Premises
reversing camera 137
Travel arrangements 30
Prerequisites
of memory cards 171, 193
of the USB databank 171, 193
of the CDs 171, 193
of the data medium and archives 171, 193
Tyre pressure 290
check 291
Press & Drive
see Keyless Access 64
Seat belt pretensioner 41
Seat belt pretensioner
deletion 41
service and disposal 41
First service 305
Physical principle of a head-on collision 35
Preparation procedures
check engine coolant 275
replenish engine coolant 275
Profile depth 292
Depth of profile and wear indicators te 292
Electronic Stability Programme (ESC) 142, 144
Protection of the underside of the vehicle 309
Sun protection 96
Driver's door
overview 9
Doors 65
child safety lock 58
emergency opening or closing 68
Polishing 307
Grounding point 258

R

Radio 325
open the station list 158
Composition Touch (R 340G) 166
vehicle configurations 27
Discover Media 188
indication 27
command 27
RADIO 166, 188
function areas 168, 190
automatic search (SCAN) 169, 191
frequency change 166, 188
configurations 170, 192
displays and symbols 189
save, delete station logos 191

indications and symbols 190
Indications and symbols 168
main menu 166, 188
station names displayed 167, 189
radio operation 166, 188
RDS radio data system 167, 189
function surfaces 166, 188
station keys 167, 189
memory keys 168, 190
radio text (RDS) 167, 189
Radios 151
SD card slot
external 196
RDS 167, 189
station name 167, 189
RDS Regional 167, 189
radio text 167, 189
Rear View
see Reversing camera 136
Volkswagen® Original Spare Parts 323
Radio reception
antenna 151, 324
malfunctioning 152, 325
Reserve container 238
Interval recommendation 22
command 22
connect 22
disconnect 22
operation 22
Walking recommendation 104
Security recommendations 152
Resources 268
Exhaust gas reduction
problems 242
Register data 318
Failure log 319
Data logging while driving 318
Sliding regulator
see Command 160
Watch 15, 23
Digital clock 23
Towing
rigid tow bar 261
the vehicle itself 261
particularities 260, 261
prohibition of towing 261
automatic transmission 261
manual transmission 261
Trailer 232
adjustment of headlamps 235
front towing eye 262
tow rope 233, 234
support load 234
upload 234
driving 235
driving with a trailer 235
connect 234
driving tips 262
hook 234
exterior rear-view mirrors 233
rear lights 233, 234
mounting of the trailer hitch 236
maximum towable weight 234
technical requirements 233
Removing ice 309
Snow removal 309
Removing wax residues 309
Repairs 316
adhesive labels 324
platelets 324
airbag system 317
Repeat 172, 195, 198
Representation on the display
parking assistance 135
Reproduction
AUX-IN 175
CD 198
MEDIA 172, 194
track 197
RADIO 166, 188
external data carrier (USB) 174, 200
memory card 172
SD card 194
title 173
Shuffle (Mix) 172, 195, 198
Multimedia playback
SD card 174
Reprogramming of control units 319
Rear seat backrest
rebut forward 80
backwards refutation 80
Restore delivery conditions 224
Rear-view mirrors 94
interior rear-view mirror 94
Exterior mirrors
malfunctioning 96
Interior rear-view mirror 94
Seat coverings 312
preserving and cleaning natural leather 312
synthetic leather 312
cleaning the upholstery 312
clean the fabric layer 312
clean NT - microfibre nonwoven 312
manipulation of the coating of the seats
cough 312
Engine rotation 17
Emergency wheel 293
driving directions 294
remove 293
Emergency wheel with different dimensions
tes of the wheel of use of the vehicle 300

Wheels 289
screwed decorative elements 290
identification 290
Wheels and tyres 284, 286
soften 288
storing tyres 288
wheel balancing 293
changing the wheel 298
tyre load capacity 297
SPEED CODE 297
see Wheels and tyres 287
tyre damage 292
technical data 295
tyre wear 293
avoid damage 288
lack of balance 293
wheel assembly failure 293
saving the changed wheel 293
identification 295
tyre wear indicators 292
tyre registration 295
winter tyres 298
new tyres 288
one-way tyres 297
tyre registration number (TIN) 295
serial number 295
penetration of foreign bodies 293
tyre pressure 290
profile depth 292
wheel rotation 287
emergency wheel 293
emergency wheel with dimensions different from the wheel used on the vehicle 300
wheels 289
replacing tyres 288
valve covers 291
type of tyres 295
Noises
engine 114
tyres 298
brake assist system 144
brake assist system 145
Alternative routes 209

S

Exiting a parking space with Park Assist (Park Assist) 141
SCAN
radio 169
see Automatic search (SCAN) 191
Driving safety 30
Select number 219
Select (phone number) 182, 219
Selection of the driving profile 126
operation 127
manoeuvre 127
Tilt selector
Tiptronic 121
Volume selector 158
Rain sensor 92
malfunctioning 92
Approach sensors 158
activate, deactivate 224
Sitting
adjusting the head restraint 82
adjust the position of the steering wheel 77
disassembly of the head restraint 83
mounting the head restraint 83
number of seats 32
correct seating posture 33
rear seat backrest 80
Comfort flashing signals 84
Service 304
Mandatory inspection service 323
Maintenance services and digital maintenance and warranty 304
Brake servo 108, 142
SETUP
see Configurations 224
Fixed key symbol 24
Symbols
see Warning light 13
see Control light 13
Synchronising the vehicle key 63
System
ABS 143
anti-lock braking system (ABS) 143
Anti-lock braking system (ABS) 143
Airbag system 42
front airbag 46
head airbags 49
side airbags 48
vehicle maintenance 312
switch off with the switch operated by the key 47
disconnect the front passenger frontal airbag. front tea 47
differences between frontal airbag systems and frontal airbag systems
front passenger's seat 43
instrument panel cleaning 312
use of child seat 47
Alarm system 70
risks of alarm failure 71
monitoring of the passenger compartment 70
Burglar alarm system 70
description 70
Assistance system
anti-lock braking system (ABS) 143
Brake assist system 142

Climb assist system 124
Key-locking and keyless ignition system Keyless Access 63
Keyless Access locking and starting system
see Keyless Access 64
Exhaust gas emission control system 241
Tyre control system 284
malfunctioning 285
tyre control indicator 284
control light 285
Tyre pressure monitoring system
changing tyres 288
Automatic braking system after a collision sion 143
Brake system 142
problem solving 111
see brakes 111
Airbag system
description 44
in case of airbag deployment 45
function 44
limitations 317
control light 43
repairs 317
Automatic washing system 307
Roof rack system
guidelines for use 232
Radio system
off-road indicator 128
Fatigue recognition system 22
command 22
connect 22
disconnect 22
malfunctioning 23
operation 22
Ventilation and heating system
commands 99
regulating the temperature 100
Speed control system 130
Speed governor system (GRA)
command 130
Systems
Brake Assist (BAS) 143
ASR 142
BAS 143
electronic differential lock (EDS) 143
automatic driving light control 86
traction control (ASR) 142
electronic brake force distributor do (EBV) 143
EDS 143
EVB 143
GRA 130
climb assist system 124
speed control system 130
XDS 143
Assistance systems
Park Assist (Park Assist) 138
Brake Assist (BAS) 143
parking assistance134 , 138
Electronic Differential Lock (EDS) 143
reversing camera 136
traction control (ASR) 142, 144
electronic brake-force distribution (EBD)144, 144 electronic brake-force distribution (EBD)142, 144 electronic brake-force distribution (EBD)
do (EBV) 143
GRA 130
tyre control indicator 284
electronic stability programme (ESC) 142, 144
interval recommendation 22
selection of the driving profile 126
climb assist system 124
tyre control system 284
automatic braking system after a collision 143
fatigue recognition system 22
speed control system 130
Start-Stop system 116
Brake Assist Systems
ABS 142
ASR 142
BAS 142
EDS 142
ESC 142
XDS 142
Brake Assist Systems 142
Start-Stop System 116
in driving with a trailer 232
control light 117
Softkeys
see Function buttons 159
Troubleshooting
address 126
Troubleshooting69 , 73
front passenger front passenger frontal airbag co-nnected 44
front passenger front airbag deactivated 44
Park Assist (Park Assist) 141
parking assistance 135
automatic locking 69
ignition lock 115
check the engine oil level 273
engine control 116
airbag triggering 69
bulb failure 252
directional indicators 65, 69
immobiliser 115
Keyless Access 65, 69

battery warning light (12 V) of the vehicle 282
generator warning light 282
engine oil pressure 273
resetting the automatic closing and opening function of the windows 75
engine oil sensor 273
airbag system 44
speed governor system (GRA) 131
braking assistance systems 145
Start-Stop system 118
sensor surfaces 65
START KEY 115
sunroof 77
double clutch transmission 123
Troubleshooting
driver's door control light 69
Lambda sensor 242
External data support
USB connection 174, 200
Mobile phone holder and USB charger input 320
Subwoofer 151
Function surfaces
selection boxes 159
main menu images 202
main menu MEDIA 172, 194
main menu RADIO 166, 188
Mirror Link™ 166
Replacement of parts 316

T

Tachometer (rev counter) 16, 17
Engine compartment cover
open 266
close 266
display indication 267
warning light 267
Fuel tank cap
ethanol 240
petrol 240
Luggage compartment lid
see Tailgate 71
Valve covers 291
Rear cover
open 72
unlock 72
SD card
compatibility and technical data171 , 193
eject or insert 199
unreadable 199
prepare to withdraw 199
select 197
SD cards supported 171, 193
USB card
prerequisites 171, 193
Start button 113
emergency shutdown 116
Locking key
automatic transmission 120
Selection key 158
Keyboard
see Command 160
Display keyboard
see command 160
Speed dial keys
see PHONE 222
Station keys 167
Station keys
save, delete station logos 191
Radio keys 158
Memory keys 168, 190
Glass roof
see Sunroof 75
see Panoramic sunroof 75
Sunroof
comfort opening 76
comfort locking 76
anti-rush function 76
Panoramic sunroof 75
open 75
close 75
sun protection curtain 97
malfunctioning 75
Electric panoramic sunroof
see Glass roof 75
Mobile phone
use without external antenna 319
Mobile phone
use without external antenna 319
Vehicle telephone 318
Radio text (RDS)
see RDS 167, 189
Think Blue. 107
Timeout 158
TIN 295
Fuel types and supply 238
Tiptronic 121
Take
12 Volts 150
Power socket 149
AUX-IN multimedia jack
see External audio sources 175
Anti-theft wheel bolt 245
Wheel bolts 298, 300
tightening torque 301
Traction 296
Automatic transmission 120
starting on slopes 122
ignition key lock112 , 115
gear shift 120

driving 122
kick-down function 122
stopping on slopes 122
towing 261
Transmission of data from mobile equipment
see Configurations 225
Manual transmission 118
towing 261
see also shifting gears 118
Transport 226
accommodating luggage volumes 226
loading the trailer 234
driving with a trailer 235
driving with the tailgate open 110
Bag hook 229
roof box230 , 231
driving directions 109
Transporting children in the vehicle 52
Transport
trailer 232
Transport of children in the vehicle 50
Saltwater route 111
Flooded route 110
Treadwear 295
Safety triangle 60

U

UKW 336
CD drive
external 196
Engine control unit 241
Control units 318
reprogramming 319
Multimedia units 196
USB
USB databanks supported 171, 193
connect an external data carrier 174, 200
select 197

V

Oil dipstick 271
Vehicle
unlock or lock with Keyless Access 64
unlock or block from inside 67
stopping on slopes 131
stop on climbs 131
failure protection 59
Sale of the vehicle 5
in other countries / continents 111
Pop-up window
see Function buttons 159
Ventilation 99
Resupply verification 263
See Inserting text
see Command 160
International travel
lantern 89
CHECKLIST 30
Glass
see glass activation 73
Electric glass 73
Glass
defrost 100
Electric windows
open 73
comfort opening 73
close 73
comfort locking 73
malfunctioning 74
anti-rush function 74
keys 73
Mechanical glazing
open 73
close 73
Monitoring of the passenger compartment 70
Overview
centre console 11
instruments 15, 16
front passenger side 12
driver's side 10
warning lights 13
control lights 13
lever of the direction indicators of the high lantern 85
driver's door 9
inner lining of the roof 12
FRONT VIEW 7
rear view 8
Equipment overview 156
Vehicle overview
FRONT VIEW 7
rear view 8
Steering wheel 77
tilting selector (Tiptronic) 121
unilateral traction 292
vibration 292
Steering wheel
adjustment 77
Multifunction steering wheel 10, 26
Volume
Bluetooth audio 187
AUX-IN 187
traffic announcement 187
define external audio sources 187, 226
decrease 155
maximum volume when switching on 187
Radio volume 325
Volume in relation to speed 225

21A.5L1.TCR.60

X

XDS
see Brake Assist Systems 143

Other signs

What happens to unbelted occupants? 36